

THE CATHOLIC UNIVERSITY OF AMERICA

*Cantus ad introitum:*  
The Entrance Song in Roman Catholic Worship

A DISSERTATION

Submitted to the Faculty of the  
School of Theology and Religious Studies  
Of The Catholic University of America  
In Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements

For the Degree  
Doctor of Philosophy

By  
Jason J. McFarland

Washington, D.C.

2010

*Cantus ad introitum:*  
The Entrance Song in Roman Catholic Worship

Jason J. McFarland, Ph.D.

Director: The Rev. Msgr. Kevin W. Irwin, S.T.D.

Abstract:

This study explores the history and theology of the entrance song by means of a contextual method. It considers how the entrance song functions within the Roman Rite, what its purpose is, and what can be expressed theologically by means of the text and melody of an entrance song. Part one of the study explores the development of the entrance song throughout history—in particular the Roman Rite introit—and delineates the theology and ritual function of the entrance song from ecclesiastical documents. Part two begins by proposing several models of the entrance song for present-day use. The models address two questions: what should Roman Rite Catholics sing at the beginning of Mass, and what influence should the proper chant tradition have upon contemporary entrance song practice? The study concludes with a contextual theological analysis of the entrance song in terms of ritual/theological function, text, and liturgical enactment, focusing upon the entrance song of the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper *Nos autem gloriari*, including a detailed analysis of the chant and its liturgical context. Several principles for choosing an entrance song are articulated, concluding with a consideration of what the dissertation as a whole might imply for the discipline of liturgical studies and pastoral practice concerning the entrance song.

This dissertation by Jason J. McFarland fulfills the dissertation requirement for the doctoral degree in Liturgical Studies approved by The Rev. Msgr. Kevin W. Irwin, S.T.D., as Director, and by The Rev. Dominic Serra, S.L.D., and The Rev. Michael G. Witczak, S.L.D. as Readers

---

The Rev. Msgr. Kevin W. Irwin, S.T.D., Director

---

The Rev. Dominic Serra, S.L.D., Reader

---

The Rev. Michael G. Witczak, S.L.D., Reader

To my parents  
James and Cynthia,  
who have heartened my every step.



## Table of Contents

List of Examples .....	ix
List of Figures .....	xi
List of Tables .....	xi
Acknowledgments.....	xii
<b>Introduction to the Study and Its Methodology</b> .....	<b>1</b>
The Topic and Its Significance .....	6
The Theological Interpretation of Liturgical Music .....	10
Methodological Foundations .....	13
Outline of the Study .....	13
Foundations of a Contextual Method.....	14
The Contextual Method of This Study.....	17
 <b>PART ONE      CONTEXTUAL STUDIES OF THE ENTRANCE SONG</b>	
 <b>Chapter One:</b>	
<b>The Entrance Song in Its Historical Context</b> .....	<b>22</b>
Introduction.....	22
Foundational Contexts .....	26
The Origins of Christian Culture and Music.....	27
Early Christian Singing.....	30
<i>Terminus post quem &amp; ante quem</i> for the Origin of a Gregorian Proper Chant Tradition .....	33
The Toleration and Adoption of Christianity in the Roman Empire .....	33
The Psalmodic Movement and the Selective Singing of Psalms .....	35
The Incorporation of Litany and Acclamatory Forms in the West.....	37

Liturgical Homogenization .....	37
Early Christian Liturgical Language in the West .....	39
The Transition from Psalms as Readings to Psalms as Chant .....	40
A Fixed Corpus of Proper Texts and the Addition of Thursdays to the Liturgical Year .....	41
The Fully-developed Roman Rite Introit.....	44
The <i>Ordines Romani</i> .....	46
The Manuscript Tradition .....	54
Terminology.....	54
Mode and Performance .....	61
Sources of the Antiphon Texts.....	63
How Source Texts Are Used.....	65
The Elaboration of the Entrance Song Tradition .....	71
Introit Tropes .....	72
Harmonic Embellishment of Chant Melodies.....	76
Polyphonic Settings of Proper Chants .....	77
The Dis-integration of the Form and Function of the Introit in Liturgical Praxis .....	86
The Transition from Using a Variable Number of Verses to Using Only One .....	87
The Separation of the Choir's Liturgical Role from That of the Presider .....	88
Instrumental Intros.....	90
The Beginnings of the Reform and Renewal of the Roman Rite Entrance Song.....	92
The Council of Trent.....	92
Precursors to the Vatican II Reform of the <i>Graduale Romanum</i> .....	95
Conclusion .....	98

## **Chapter Two:**

### **The Entrance Song of the Roman Rite**

<b>in Recent and Contemporary Ecclesiastical Documents .....</b>	<b>101</b>
The Nature and Interpretation of Liturgical Norms after Vatican Council II .....	101
The Sources of Ecclesiastical Norms after Vatican Council II .....	110
Ecclesiastical Documents Pertaining to the Entrance Song.....	114
Pre-Conciliar Documents.....	114
Conciliar and Post-Conciliar Documents.....	118
The Liturgy Constitution.....	118
The Post-Conciliar Gradual .....	119
The Roman Missal .....	129
Other Documents .....	131
Foundational Norms for the Post-Conciliar Entrance Song .....	133
The Importance of Singing in the Liturgy .....	134
The Active Participation of the Faithful .....	137
Which Texts of the Mass Should Be Sung?.....	139
Translating the Latin Proper Texts and Composing New Texts in the Vernacular .....	143
Official Sources of the Entrance Song.....	147
Conclusion .....	148

## **PART TWO     IMPLICATIONS OF THE CONTEXTUAL STUDIES**

### **Chapter Three:**

<b>Models of the Entrance Song .....</b>	<b>151</b>
Introduction.....	151
Model One: The Proper Antiphon and Verses of the <i>Graduale Romanum</i> .....	157
Sources, Texts, and Music .....	158
Performance .....	161

Functional Strengths and Weaknesses .....	162
Model Two: The Proper or Seasonal Antiphon and Verses of the <i>Graduale Simplex</i> .....	166
Model Three: Alternative Musical Settings of the Proper Antiphon and Verses .....	170
Sources, Texts, and Music .....	175
Performance .....	175
Functional Strengths and Weaknesses .....	176
Model Four: Musical Settings of Texts Other than the Proper Antiphons and Verses .....	178
Sources, Texts, and Music .....	180
Performance .....	183
Functional Strengths and Weaknesses .....	185
Model Five: The Spoken Proper Antiphon of the <i>Roman Missal</i> .....	187
Source and Text .....	187
Performance .....	187
Functional Strengths and Weaknesses .....	188
Conclusion .....	189
 <b>Chapter Four:</b>	
<b>Toward a Theology of the Entrance Song at Eucharist</b> .....	191
Introduction.....	191
Foundations for a Theology .....	191
Methodological Perspectives on the Theology of Liturgical Music .....	193
The Theology of the Entrance Song: Function, Text, and Facilitation .....	198
The Theological Function of the Entrance Song in Its Ritual Context.....	198
The Theology of the Entrance Song as Text: <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> .....	208
The Origins of the Feast.....	209

The History of the Triduum and Its Restoration .....	214
The Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> .....	217
The Antiphon's Use of the Biblical Text .....	226
Theological Themes and Ideas Expressed by the Chant in Context .....	230
Choosing an Entrance Song: the Principle of Facilitation .....	233
Is the Song Functionally Appropriate? .....	234
Is the Song Aesthetically Appropriate? .....	235
Is the Song Pastorally Appropriate? .....	237
Is the Song Faithful to the Broad Tradition of the Roman Rite?: Creative Fidelity .....	239
Choosing an Entrance Song for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper .....	241
 <b>Chapter Five:</b>	
<b>Conclusion—A Way Forward</b> .....	245
 <b>Appendices:</b>	
Appendix A: Instrumental Introits .....	252
Appendix B: Polyphonic Settings of <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> .....	258
 <b>Bibliography</b> .....	267

## List of Examples

<b>Example 1</b>	Twelfth-century Manuscript Excerpt of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper .....	44
<b>Example 2</b>	Sixteenth-century Manuscript Excerpt of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper .....	45
<b>Example 3</b>	Polyphonic Setting of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> in Trent Codex 1375 .....	78
<b>Example 4</b>	Polyphonic Setting of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> in the <i>Choralis Constantinus</i> (Heinrich Isaac) <i>In Festo Inventionis S. Crucis</i> .....	81
<b>Example 5</b>	Organ Mass Introit Versets from the <i>Buxheimer Orgelbuch</i> (c. 1470) .....	100
<b>Example 6</b>	Organ Mass Introit Versets from Girolamo Frescobaldi's <i>Fiori Musicali</i> (1635) .....	101
<b>Example 7</b>	Improvisatory Organ Introit from Olivier Messiaen's <i>Messe de la Pentecôte</i> (1949-50) .....	103
<b>Example 8</b>	The Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper in the Post-Conciliar <i>Graduale Romanum</i> .....	163
<b>Example 9</b>	The Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper in the <i>Graduale Simplex, editio typica altera</i> .....	172
<b>Example 10</b>	Vernacular Chant Adaptation of the Text and Melody of the <i>Graduale Simplex</i> Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper from <i>By Flowing Waters</i> (Paul Ford, 1999) .....	173

<b>Example 11</b>	Metrical Strophic Hymn Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper from <i>Hymn Introits for the Liturgical Year</i> (Christoph Tietze, 2005) .....	176
<b>Example 12</b>	Metrical Refrain Hymn Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper (WAREHAM / Anthony Corvaia, 2002) .....	177
<b>Example 13</b>	Responsorial Setting of a Vernacular Translation the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper from “Newly-composed Eucharistic Entrance Antiphons” (David Farr, 1986) .....	178
<b>Example 14</b>	Responsorial Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper from <i>The Simple Gradual for Sundays and Holy Days</i> (Clifford Howell, S.J., 1969) .....	179
<b>Example 15</b>	Responsorial Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper from <i>Psallite: Sacred Song for Liturgy and Life</i> (Collegeville Composers Group, 2008) .....	180
<b>Example 16</b>	Metrical Refrain Hymn “Lift High the Cross” for use as the Entrance Song at the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper (CRUCIFER, Nicholson / Kitchin, Newbolt, 1916) .....	184
<b>Example 17</b>	Metrical Strophic Hymn “In the Cross of Christ I Glory” for use as the Entrance Song at the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper (RATHBUN, Conkey / Browning, 1849) .....	185
<b>Example 18</b>	Polyphonic Setting of <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> from Giovanni Pierluigi da Palestrina’s <i>Motecta festorum totius anni cum Communi sanctorum</i> <i>quarternis vocibus liber primus</i> (1563) .....	254
<b>Example 19</b>	Polyphonic Setting of <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> from Manuel Cardoso’s <i>Libro de varios motetes</i> (1648) .....	259

## List of Figures

<b>Figure 1</b>	Application of the Synthetic Model.....	21
<b>Figure 2</b>	<i>Terminus post quem</i> and <i>terminus ante quem</i> for the Origin of a Gregorian Proper Chant Tradition at Mass .....	43

## List of Tables

<b>Table 1</b>	The Introit as Described in the <i>Ordines Romani</i> .....	49
<b>Table 2</b>	The Introit <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper as Found in the <i>Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex</i> Manuscripts .....	56
<b>Table 3</b>	Core Repertoire Source Texts .....	64
<b>Table 4</b>	Latin Text and English Translations of <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> .....	216
<b>Table 5</b>	The Liturgical Uses of <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> .....	228
<b>Table 6</b>	Source Texts of the Antiphon <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> .....	234



## Acknowledgements

The individuals and organizations that have facilitated the completion of this project are too numerous to mention. You know who you are; you have my heartfelt gratitude. There is a short list, however. Without their assistance, bringing this dissertation to its finishing point would have been impossible:

- My dissertation director Msgr. Kevin W. Irwin, along with my readers Frs. Dominic Serra and Michael Witczak.
- My family, especially James, Cynthia, Patrick, Brian, Sara, Darlene, Isaac, and Elijah, McFarland, Melissa Chavez, and Pamela Janssen.
- Past and present members of the distinguished Liturgical Studies faculty of The Catholic University of America, in particular Fr. Gerard Austin, O.P., Sr. Mary Collins, O.S.B., Sr. Catherine Dooley, O.P., Msgr. Stephen Happel, Msgr. Kevin W. Irwin, Sr. Margaret Mary Kelleher, O.S.U., Fr. David N. Power, O.M.I., and Professor James White.
- The faculty of the former Department of Religion and Religious Education.
- Dr. Ruth Steiner of the Benjamin T. Rome School of Music.
- Dr. C. Kristy Lisle.
- The National Association of Pastoral Musicians for their financial support.
- The Dom Mocquereau, Magi, Msgr. John Quasten, and Walter J. Schmitz scholarship funds for providing tuition assistance during my studies.
- The Choir of the Basilica of the National Shrine of the Immaculate Conception, which provided both an artistic diversion from my research and a source of income during my studies.
- Various coffee house haunts in Washington which on innumerable occasions have allowed me to sit all day working on this project, using their electricity and precious table space while sipping one cup of coffee.
- All of my friends, but particularly Brian, Christopher, Edward, and John who assisted me with the copyediting of the manuscript.
- The International Commission on English in the Liturgy, in whose employ I have been since 2005. I thank especially Msgr. Bruce Harbert, Mr. Peter Finn, Fr. Andrew Wadsworth, and the Bishops of the Commission for their support, encouragement, and patience. My time at ICEL has been a treasure of insight into the liturgical life of the Church, and not least a unique opportunity to see the world.

## Introduction to the Study and Its Methodology

Throughout the history of Christianity, many different types of music have accompanied the entrance of the presider and his ministers during celebrations of the Eucharist. This great variety is the result of a number of factors that include, among other things, the social contexts in which Christianity developed and continues to develop, for example, Palestinian Judaism, Hellenic culture, Roman culture, and today nearly every culture on the globe; the development of diverse musical styles; the liturgical sphere of influence of a particular rite, for example, Rome, Antioch, Jerusalem, and so forth; the arrangement of church buildings and the processional routes therein; the type, availability, and use of musical instruments; and the degree to and manner in which the assembled faithful participated in the liturgy. Insofar as this variety has helped to adapt the liturgy to the needs of worshipping communities and faithfully passed on the Christian tradition, it is among the many praiseworthy developments in Christian worship since the beginning. In this study, the goal is to discover within this variety an emerging theology of the entrance song. The goal is to discern, through a careful consideration of the tradition, a theological paradigm or archetype for the entrance song. In a broad sense, how does the entrance song *function* within the Roman Rite; what is its *purpose*? And, in a narrower sense, what is or should be *expressed* theologically by means of the text and melody of any particular entrance song?

Most basically, the entrance song is the first ritual song of the celebration of the Eucharist or Mass, which for most of the history of the Roman Rite has been the introit.

**Introit** (from Latin *Introitus*). The first in the series of Gregorian chants that make up the proper of the Mass. It consists of an antiphon, a psalm verse or verses, and the doxology or *Gloria Patri*. The psalm verse(s) and doxology are sung to a simple formula. Both this simple formula and the more complex antiphon melody are in one of the ecclesiastical modes.<sup>1</sup> The choir sings the chant, as its name suggests, during the entrance of the celebrant and his ministers at the beginning of the Mass.<sup>2</sup> The introit antiphon texts are found in the *Missale Romanum*, while the *Graduale Romanum* and *Graduale Simplex* contain the antiphon melodies, psalm verses, and psalm/doxology formulas.<sup>3</sup>

It is important to recognize, however, that the introit, which came into use in the Roman Rite sometime between the late fifth and late seventh centuries, does not encompass the entirety of the entrance song tradition. One can discern certain historical precursors to the introit, for example, such as the ancient pagan and Jewish practice of singing at the start of common ritual meals, or short sung acclamations from the assembly during the entrance of the presider at Mass in the fourth century. And, while one can certainly give examples of entrance songs during present-day celebrations of the Eucharist, rarely are these songs the proper text and melody of the introit.

In addition, one must recognize that in practice the entrance song's enactment never has been nor is it now uniform among all Christian communities. This assertion would be

---

<sup>1</sup> See *The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians* (hereafter *New Grove*), s.v. "Introit (i)" (by Ruth Steiner). The eight tones, or ecclesiastical modes, in order, include Dorian, Hypo-Dorian, Phrygian, Hypo-Phrygian, Lydian, Hypo-Lydian, Mixolydian, and Hypo-Mixolydian. A chant in mode 3, for example, is in the Phrygian mode. These modes are not exactly the same as the ancient Greek modes, and the creation of early ecclesiastical chant took place before any systematic practice of composing within the eight church modes had developed. The earliest ecclesiastical chants, therefore, often do not reflect perfectly the characteristics of any one mode. Only later chants fit the modes precisely. For more on the history and function of the ecclesiastical modes see *Grove Music Online* (hereafter *Grove Online*), s.v. "Mode" (by Harold S. Powers, et al.), <http://www.oxfordmusiconline.com/subscriber/article/grove/music/43718> (accessed July 1, 2008).

<sup>2</sup> See *The New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. (hereafter *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed.), s.v. "Introit (i)" (by James W. McKinnon).

<sup>3</sup> However, not all of the antiphon texts of the current *Missale Romanum* are contained in the *Graduale Romanum*. In fact, the *Missale* and the *Graduale* sometimes supply different texts for the same Mass.

supported by a survey of any handful of parishes.<sup>4</sup> Furthermore, while in the West most families of liturgical rites adopted something similar to the introit of the Roman Rite,<sup>5</sup> in the East the entrance of the ministers has taken a different form since at least the sixth century.<sup>6</sup> One limitation of this study and the study of liturgy in general is that it is impossible to determine to what degree the theology put forward by a particular introit or other form of the entrance song might or might not have been integrated into the spiritual lives of members of particular Christian communities at any given period in the history of the Church.<sup>7</sup> Nevertheless, it is possible to discern an over-arching theology of the entrance song in Roman Catholic worship, and specifically, present-day Roman Catholic worship in the

---

<sup>4</sup> To be sure, there were periods during which a normative form of enactment prevailed: the introit as defined above in the Middle Ages, the recitation of the introit text by the priest after the prayers at the foot of the altar from 1570 until 1970, and today, the use of an entrance hymn. Methodologically speaking, however, one must recognize that there were in practice innumerable local variations in terms of the way in which the normative forms were enacted, even if these variations were often minute. The size and resources of a particular congregation would be two of the most prominent factors that influenced enactment, and one should not underestimate the influence of cultural context on performance practice.

<sup>5</sup> The Burgundian *antiphona ad prelegendum*, Ambrosian *ingressa*, and Mozarabic *officium*, for example. See *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit (i).” For more information on non-Roman liturgical rites in general, see Cyrille Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy: An Introduction to the Sources* (Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1986), *passim*; and Eric Palazzo, *A History of Liturgical Books from the Beginning to the Thirteenth Century*, trans. Madelein Beaumont (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998), *passim*.

<sup>6</sup> “It was not until the late 5<sup>th</sup> or early 6<sup>th</sup> century that an entrance chant, the *Trisagion* [Ἄγιος ὁ Θεός, Ἄγιος ἰσχυρός, Ἄγιος ἀθάνατος, ἐλέησον ἡμᾶς], was introduced at Constantinople. In subsequent centuries the *Trisagion* came to be preceded by a set of three Ordinary antiphons, and was itself replaced on feasts of the Saviour by the antiphon *Hosoi eis Christon*, and on feasts of the Holy Cross by *Ton stauron*, but Constantinople never adopted the Roman practice of a Proper chant that varied with each date in the calendar.” *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit (i).”

<sup>7</sup> This limitation is inherent in the quest for meaning in a text. In the jargon of hermeneutics, one would say that it is nearly impossible to access the “deep structure” and “ontological force” of a text in terms of systematic study (here “text” has the broadest possible meaning, and includes much more than the written word—one might use the term “artifacts”) even if it is possible to access its “residue of meaning” or “surface structure.” One can never guarantee that a particular liturgical text, ritual, song, and so on, has any effect at all on the participants in a particular liturgical celebration. The best one can do is enable and encourage effective and integral enactment of the liturgy. See Joyce Ann Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999), 17-18.

United States. It is the delineation and interpretation of this theology that is the overarching goal and guiding question of this study.

Liturgical history reveals that the music of the liturgy has taken many forms. The presence of some type of music at the entrance procession of the Mass—in contrast to the introit in particular—dates to as early as the fourth century, when the celebration of the ritual moved into basilica buildings and incorporated elements of imperial ceremonial. Asserting these early origins can be only tentative, however, given the lack of direct historical evidence. What is certain is that in the Roman liturgy the use of a specific musical form known as the introit came to be common practice by at least the end of the seventh century. In the centuries after its introduction to the Mass, the form of the introit dis-integrated in terms of actual ritual practice in some places. Certain communities truncated the introit very early on to include only one psalm verse, for example. In the late Middle Ages, the preparation and prayers of the presider came to dominate the beginning of the Mass. Organ versets or improvisation often replaced part or all of the introit, furthermore, beginning around the fifteenth century. And, it is likely that the rather elaborate introit antiphon melodies have always been too difficult for most worshipping communities.

While, given the sparseness of the historical record, it is impossible to assert a universal use of the introit in smaller parish churches, after its introduction into the Roman Rite, it is likely the introit continued to be sung at Mass in a majority of major liturgical centers, given the number of manuscripts and printed books that have survived to the present

day.<sup>8</sup> Indeed, the introit remained and still remains the official musical form for the Roman entrance procession. The important point, however, is that the antiquity and universality of the integral performance of the introit at Mass should not be idealized or overstated. It is to be expected that once the liturgy began to be celebrated outside the introit's original liturgical and cultural context—the urban liturgy of Rome in the early Middle Ages—significant variations, adaptations and deviations from the original form would take place.

In the reformed liturgy promulgated after the Second Vatican Council the introit remains the preferred musical form for the entrance song, even though several other forms are also permissible.<sup>9</sup> For a number of reasons, including the transition to the vernacular, a lack of vernacular settings of the introit, and a concern for active participation by the assembly, however, many worshipping communities often replaced the introit with other musical forms, melodies, and texts.

Most of the basic histories of the introit are written from a musicological perspective. In recent years, though, a handful of authors have attempted more comprehensive studies.<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> See chapter 1.

<sup>9</sup> Ecclesiastical legislation and documents prefer the introit. This is not to say it is the form actually used in most parishes today.

<sup>10</sup> The major contributions to date include the following: David Farr, “Newly-composed Eucharistic Entrance Antiphons, with Commentary,” (PhD diss., Graduate Theological Union, 1986). Farr’s 1,201-page study presents a good historical sketch of the introit, but its focus is quite broad. For example, he includes three chapters on psalmody and a consideration of all pre- and post-Reformation Western liturgical traditions. Mark R. Francis, “Uncluttering the Eucharistic Vestibule: The Entrance Rites through Time,” *Liturgical Ministry* 3 (1994): 1-12; and “Well Begun Is Half Done: The New Introductory Rites in the Revised Sacramentary,” in *Liturgy for the New Millennium: A Commentary on the Revised Sacramentary*, ed. Mark R. Francis and Keith F. Pecklers (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000), 65-76. Both of Francis’s studies focus on the introductory rites in general and not specifically upon the entrance song. David Hiley, *Western Plainchant: A Handbook* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1993). A musicologist, Hiley’s focus is primarily the melodic characteristics of introit chants. He draws upon Josef Jungmann, *The Mass of the Roman Rite: Its Origins and Development*, trans. F. A. Brunner (New York: Benzinger Bros., 1951; repr., Allen, TX: Christian Classics, 1986; and Andrew Hughes, *Medieval Manuscripts for Mass and Office: A Guide to Their Organization and Terminology* (1982; repr., Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1995). Marc-Daniel Kirby, “The Proper Chants of the Paschal

While such work is foundational to this dissertation, the particular methodology of this study, delineated below, offers a new perspective on the subject. Certainly, one's approach to history and theology matters, and a central assertion of this dissertation is that the study of the entrance song, and indeed liturgy in general, is best served by a contextual method.

### The Topic and Its Significance

A study of the entrance song is especially pertinent for Roman Catholic liturgical studies today because of the promulgation of the new *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* and *Missale Romanum, editio typica tertia* (2002), and because there is a movement, though still nascent, to restore the important theological “residue of meaning”<sup>11</sup> of the introit

---

Triduum: A Study in Liturgical Theology” (STL thesis, The Catholic University of America, 1996). Kirby’s concern is limited to a particular part of the liturgical year, but his detailed analysis of the Triduum chants is an important theological and methodological contribution. James W. McKinnon, *The Advent Project: The Later-Seventh-Century Creation of the Roman Mass Proper* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 2000). The problems with this impressive study will be discussed in chap. 1. Joseph P. Metzinger, “The Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song: An Examination of Introits and Introit Tropes of the Manuscript Piacenza, Archivio Capitolare, 65” (DMA diss., The Catholic University of America, 1993). Metzinger’s historical work in contrast to his manuscript work, which focuses on introit chants, focuses on the introductory rites in general. Christoph Tietze, *Hymn Introits for the Liturgical Year: The Origin and Early Development of the Latin Texts* (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2005). The primary dictionary and encyclopedia articles include the following: *The New Catholic Encyclopedia*, s.v. “Introit” (by F. A. Brunner and Michel Huglo). *The New Catholic Encyclopedia*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. (hereafter *NCE* and *NCE*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., respectively), s.v. “Introit” (by F. A. Brunner and eds.). These articles are not detailed enough for use by a specialist, though they do raise some interesting questions. *Dictionnaire d’archéologie chrétienne et de liturgie*, s.v. “Introit” (by Henri Leclercq). This article must be taken as authoritative for its time, but there has been substantial research on the introit since the year of its publication. The most authoritative contributions are *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit;” *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit;” *Grove Online*, s.v. “Introit;” and *Die Musik in Geschichte und Gegenwart*, s.v. “Introitus.”

<sup>11</sup> Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 17. She states, “A text endures in time, and therefore it enjoys a certain autonomy, something that is not true for fleeting human discourse. A text embodies a residue of meaning originating in the discourse but surpassing it. The task of hermeneutics is to uncover this residue of meaning. . . . Rituals are rule-governed; they are executed according to a written or unwritten set of rules. This is the fixed meaning enabling the ritual to be repeated—so the encoded meaning is recoverable. With respect to liturgical texts, the residue of meaning recoverable by its fixation remains constant throughout liturgical tradition, even though the specific ceremonial that concretely shapes it changes from time to time” (ibid.).

<sup>11</sup> Ibid.

to the celebration of the Eucharist by encouraging its more frequent use.<sup>12</sup> Without a doubt, in most local parishes this meaning has long been untapped.

From the outset, it is important to assert that any attempt to regulate the entrance song too strictly or to restore an exclusive use of the introit is misguided. Nevertheless, the question of its theological significance is crucial. An unmediated return to the introit of the Middle Ages is not possible, as the context in which it developed is no longer today's context, and because other musical forms have taken root in its place. Indeed, there needs to be room for local liturgical, pastoral, musical, and theological creativity<sup>13</sup> in the Mass if it is to remain meaningful and effective in the lives of worshipping communities,<sup>14</sup> and the entrance song is a good and even traditional place for such creativity. To this end, this study will explore the parallel between present-day alternatives to the introit, particularly vernacular liturgical songs, and the medieval practice of adding tropes and improvised harmonies to the introit chants. The pervasiveness throughout history of musical creativity couched in a fidelity to tradition offers a model for present-day practice. It is worthwhile, therefore, to examine the entrance song tradition, not to argue for or against specific musical forms or genres, but to plumb the depths of the tradition for a solution to a contemporary pastoral problem. Namely, what should Roman Catholics sing at the beginning of the Mass?

---

<sup>12</sup> See chapter 3 for examples of the many new collections of settings of the proper chants of the Mass.

<sup>13</sup> Here "creativity" refers to creativity *within* the bounds of tradition, which encompasses liturgical law, sound doctrine, appropriate pastoral sensitivity, and so forth. It pertains to how the "universal" liturgy is effectively expressed in "particular" contexts. It is not the same thing as "improvisation." Gregorian chant is the creative product of a particular culture (Frankish), for example.

<sup>14</sup> See Vatican Council II, Constitution on the Liturgy *Sacrosanctum Concilium* (1963) 37-40, and the Congregation for Divine Worship and the Discipline of the Sacraments, Instruction *Varietates Legitimae* (1994) 40. In this study, "local" has a broad meaning and refers to a variety of non-universal spheres of liturgical enactment: particular parish communities, dioceses, regions, Rites, nations, language groups, and so forth.



The traditional axiom *lex orandi, lex credendi*<sup>15</sup> grounds this study, which presupposes a liturgical-theological stance that takes for granted the importance of the enacted liturgy as the primary source of liturgical theology,<sup>16</sup> and from which liturgical history and tradition have something important to offer to the study and enactment of liturgy today. It also highlights the value of music as an important locus for liturgical theology. The axiom values the contexts of a ritual's constitutive parts and of a rite as a single cohesive ritual structure. This recognition of the importance of context is crucial to understanding the entrance song's historical development and theology, since a rite only exists "in context," and the primary—in other words, the most immanent or most accessible through experience, even if not the most easily systematically interpreted—context is the enacted liturgy, which in turn is the primary source of the Church's liturgical theology.

Another important consideration pertains to whether or not liturgical scholars have been asking the right questions about the entrance song. It is true, at least, that some questions concerning it have not yet been pursued adequately. This situation may exist because scholars presuppose the insignificance of the entrance song and the other processional chants of the Mass in comparison to other elements such as the Eucharistic Prayer, or because scholars do not consider the study of liturgical music to be integral to the discipline of liturgical studies. It might also be true that many liturgical scholars perceive

---

<sup>15</sup> This axiom loosely translates as "what we pray is what we believe," or as stated by Prosper of Aquitaine (c. 390 – c. 455), "legem credendi lex statuat supplicandi" or "the rule of belief is established by the rule of prayer." See his *Capitula Coelestini* 8, in *Patrologia Latina* 51, p. 210.

<sup>16</sup> This theological "stance" is in contrast to, for example, liturgical-theological reflection that focuses solely upon the texts found in liturgical books. In addition, while it is difficult to find fault with Prosper's axiom, one must admit that "prayer" (worship) and "belief" (doctrine) interact on many levels; one cannot be said to pre-date the other.

themselves to lack the skills necessary to study the musical component of the liturgy.<sup>17</sup> In the past, the entrance song was usually explored from manuscript-based musicological and historical perspectives, rather than from a theological one. For this reason, an approach rooted in contextual theology is helpful, as it is open to a variety of sources. This contextual theological framework provides a lens for focusing beyond musicological or manuscript concerns to the broader context of Christian ritual practice and its significance.

In sum, then, there are several specific problems that motivate this study and that this study will in some way address:

- Much work still needs to be done in terms of gaining a more complete knowledge about the history, development, and theology of the entrance song. Such work needs to be contextual, needs to take the music of the liturgy seriously, and needs to move beyond exclusively musicological or manuscript-based concerns.
- Not making use of the texts of the introit tradition in liturgical celebrations deprives Roman Catholics of its substantial theological riches.
- There is debate today as to the most appropriate musical form (antiphon/psalm, responsorial psalm, strophic hymn, refrain hymn, and so forth) to accompany the liturgical processions of the celebration of the Eucharist.

---

<sup>17</sup> A similar problem occurs among musicologists, who sometimes do not take into account the insights of liturgical studies. As Christian Troelsgård says, “Comparative liturgy and chant studies are intimately related. If we describe liturgy as a ‘language’ of religious expression and communication that go beyond the spoken word, chant is one of the non-verbal dimensions that accompanies the liturgical texts.” Christian Troelsgård, “Methodological Problems in Comparative Studies of Liturgical Chant,” in *Comparative Liturgy Fifty Years after Anton Baumstark (1872-1948)*, ed. Robert F. Taft and Gabriele Winkler (Rome: Pontifical Oriental Institute, 2001), 981. Troelsgård’s article “is . . . an invitation for collaboration between chant scholars and historians of liturgy, an invitation to work out a new and more detailed picture of . . . history” (ibid., 992). Peter Jeffery argues strongly for the interaction of musicological, liturgical, and ritual studies throughout his *Re-envisioning Past Musical Cultures: Ethnomusicology in the Study of Gregorian Chant* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1992). In a recent article Jeffery assesses what he sees as an excessively rationalistic, anti-archaeological, and anti-ritual bias in liturgical studies in the first half of the twentieth century. “It was because the reformers of Jungmann’s generation could not ‘read’ the non-semantic languages of ritual . . . ritual objects and spaces, imagery and music . . . that they produced a liturgy so top-heavy with verbiage . . . The dreaded ‘archaeological’ side of liturgy [has its] own forms of historical continuity, which (properly understood) can lead us reliably through gaps in the textual evidence.” “The Meanings and Functions of *Kyrie Eleison*,” in *The Place of Christ in Liturgical Prayer: Trinity, Christology, and Liturgical Theology*, ed. Bryan D. Spinks (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008), 143.

- The implications of the additions and changes to the GIRM (USA)<sup>18</sup> have not yet been fully explored—especially the regulation of the entrance song suggested in nos. 46-48.
- It is unclear as to what is the most appropriate or contextually-conscious means by which to encourage and effect a re-appropriation of the introit tradition's theological treasures in the day-to-day celebration of the Eucharist in the United States. Creative fidelity to tradition, which has many historical precedents, might be the basis for a solution to this problem.

### **The Theological Interpretation of Liturgical Music**

In liturgical theology today, music and the other arts employed in the enactment of Christian worship play an important role. In fact, any liturgical theology that systematically ignores the music of the liturgy is by definition incomplete. Music, especially singing, is an “integral” part of the liturgy.<sup>19</sup> As Kevin Irwin states, liturgical music is not only a “complementary element of the experience of liturgy” and a “complementary source” for liturgical theology that is intrinsic to liturgical celebration, but it is also “required for the integrity of the act of worship.”<sup>20</sup> Like all elements of liturgical celebration, the enacted music of the liturgy is “a complexus of sign-events,”<sup>21</sup> and through it, worshipping communities “express their existence before God.”<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>18</sup> GIRM (USA) refers to the U.S. adaptation of the 2002 *Institutio Generalis Missalis Romani*.

<sup>19</sup> See *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112; and GIRM (USA) 39-41.

<sup>20</sup> Kevin W. Irwin, *Context and Text: Method in Liturgical Theology* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1994), 219.

<sup>21</sup> Jan Michael Joncas, “Hymnum tuae gloriae canimus. Toward an Analysis of the Vocal Expression of the Eucharistic Prayer in the Roman Rite: Tradition, Principles, Method” (SLD diss., Pontifical Liturgical Institute, 1991), 378.

<sup>22</sup> Mary E. McGann, *Exploring Music as Worship and Theology* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2002), 7.

During the emergence of liturgical theology as a serious component of academic theological study in the wake of the twentieth-century liturgical renewal,<sup>23</sup> there have been an unprecedented number of explicit explorations into the theology of the liturgy.<sup>24</sup> Still, while there have been many contributors to the discipline of liturgical theology, the number concerned simultaneously with the study of the *musical component* of the liturgical experience and with *methodology* are few. Of late, however, there has been substantial work focusing on the means by which one can interpret the theology of liturgical music from a variety of perspectives.<sup>25</sup> These scholars work to answer the question of *how* one reflects

---

<sup>23</sup> Teresa Berger observes that “in the last half-century, the liturgy has (re-)emerged as a distinctive source for theological reflection. Theologians from a broad spectrum of ecclesial commitments now claim that liturgical practices are a fundamental site for understanding, interpreting, and configuring the Christian faith.” Teresa Berger, “The Challenge of Gender for Liturgical Tradition,” *Worship* 82:3 (May 2008): 243.

<sup>24</sup> See, for example, the works of Mary Collins, I. H. Dalmais, Peter E. Fink, Albert Houssiau, Kevin W. Irwin, Aidan Kavanagh, Margaret Mary Kelleher, Edward J. Kilmartin, Gerard Lukken, Salvatore Marsili, David N. Power, Alexander Schmemmann, Cypriano Vagaggini, Geoffrey Wainwright, and Joyce Ann Zimmerman. For descriptions of the work of some of the central figures in the discipline, see Kevin W. Irwin, *Liturgical Theology: A Primer* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990), and his extensive bibliography in *Context and Text*, 352-88. See also Catherine Vincie, *Celebrating the Divine Mystery: A Primer in Liturgical Theology* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008); and Dwight W. Vogel, ed., *Primary Sources of Liturgical Theology: A Reader* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000).

<sup>25</sup> See Joncas, “Hymnum tuae gloriae canimus;” Judith M. Kubicki, *Liturgical Music as Ritual Symbol: A Case Study of Jacques Berthier’s Taizé* (Louvain: Peeters, 1999); Mary E. McGann, *Exploring Music as Worship and Theology and A Precious Fountain: Music in the Worship of an African American Catholic Community* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2004); Mark David Parsons, “‘With Sighs Too Deep for Words’: Liturgical Song as Metaphor (PhD diss., Graduate Theological Union, 2003); William T. Flynn, “Paris, Bibliothèque de L’Arsenal, MS 1169: The Hermeneutics of Eleventh-Century Burgundian Tropes, and Their Implications for Liturgical Theology” (PhD diss., Duke University, 1992); Willem Marie Speelman, *The Generation of Meaning in Liturgical Songs: A Semiotic Analysis of Five Liturgical Songs as Syncretic Discourses* (Kampen, The Netherlands: Kok Pharos, 1995); and K. Irwin, *Context and Text*. Zimmerman, in *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 87-88, elaborates on the nature of K. Irwin’s book: “He seeks to relate liturgy and theology by paying close attention to the relationship of various aspects of liturgy. The subtitle of this volume [*Method in Liturgical Theology*] is misleading; Irwin’s is more a theoretical framework than a work in method as such and is groundbreaking in this regard.” To be sure, the number of relevant studies multiplies significantly when one removes the explicitly methodological component. There have been many recent theological studies on the music of the liturgy. For the most important works in this regard, see the bibliography. See also Mark David Parsons, “Text, Tone, and Context: A Methodological Prolegomenon for a Theology of Liturgical Song,” *Worship* 79:1 (January 2005): 54-69. Parsons provides a review and synthesis of recent efforts at “Christian music theology.”

theologically upon liturgical music, or better, how one *gains access to* its theological meaning.

It is crucial that the discipline of liturgical theology pay close attention to the music of the liturgy. Music aids the full, conscious, and active participation of the assembly, and many ritual texts are most fully expressed when sung. K. Irwin reminds us that music supports and enhances how the primary elements of liturgy—namely Word, euchology, and symbol—“are expressed and experienced in the act of liturgy.”<sup>26</sup> It is “intrinsically connected” to these primary elements in that “music is normatively the medium through which Word and euchology are communicated,”<sup>27</sup> and because, as Judith Kubicki and others have shown,<sup>28</sup> music functions symbolically in liturgical celebrations.

Specifically, this intrinsic and normative function of liturgical music means, methodologically, an emphasis on *lex agendi*—that the enacted rites are a theological source—above all else when the goal is to gain access to the theology of the musical elements of the liturgy. This is true, first, because, as K. Irwin says, “theologizing from *lex agendi* recognizes that the way the *lex orandi* is experienced depends to a large degree on the way the arts facilitate, enhance, or hinder *how* scripture, symbols, and euchology are heard, understood, and appreciated in the act of liturgy.”<sup>29</sup> Thus, focusing on the enacted rites opens the musical *lex agendi* to critique, assessment, and revision.<sup>30</sup> This openness allows

---

<sup>26</sup> K. Irwin, *Context and Text*, 219, 221.

<sup>27</sup> *Ibid.*, 219.

<sup>28</sup> Kubicki, *Music as Ritual Symbol*, *passim*.

<sup>29</sup> K. Irwin, *Context and Text*, 229.

<sup>30</sup> *Ibid.*

worshipping communities to maintain quality and effectiveness, and indeed helps them to understand how to judge quality in liturgical music.<sup>31</sup>

Ritual music's function, generally speaking, then, is to facilitate the assembly's appropriation of Word, symbol, and eucharist. Specifically, this function facilitates the appropriation of the meaning of particular liturgical readings, prayer texts, feasts, and so forth. It not only facilitates this appropriation, however, but also shapes it. Thus, it is crucial to understand how ritual music "shapes" in order to determine whether or not specific music is ritually appropriate for any given assembly in its particular context.<sup>32</sup>

## **Methodological Foundations**

### Outline of the Study

The study is in two parts. Part 1 includes a contextual study of the entrance song focusing on two areas of inquiry: the development of the entrance song throughout history (chapter 1), and an exploration of the theology and ritual use of the entrance song grounded in liturgical law and ecclesiastical documents (chapter 2).<sup>33</sup>

---

<sup>31</sup> Ibid.

<sup>32</sup> For example, does a specific type or piece of ritual music facilitate the appropriation of the theology of a specific rite? To be sure, the determination of how ritual music functions and of how to judge its ritual appropriateness is a complex task, the details of which have yet to be worked out fully in the field of liturgical studies. Liturgical scholars would need to appropriate findings in the fields of cognitive neuroscience, aesthetics, acoustics, aural hermeneutics and systematic musicology, to name a few, in order to reach a better understanding of how ritual music "works." See Jerry Tabor, ed., *Otto Laske: Navigating New Musical Horizons* (Westport, CT & London: Greenwood Press, 1999) for one example of a methodological move in the requisite direction.

<sup>33</sup> This, of course, is only one of many possible windows into the theology of the entrance song. It is true, nonetheless, that liturgical theologians have long recognized the foundational nature of liturgical law or "competent authority" in the interpretation of liturgical "texts." Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 11-14.

Part 2 begins with a delineation of several models<sup>34</sup> of the entrance song (chapter 3), which serve jointly as a new lens through which to view the history and theology of the entrance song. These models are grounded in the preceding contextual studies. The last section (chapter 4) is a contextual theological analysis of the entrance song, focusing on the entrance song of the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper. This chapter builds upon the insights of chapter three and concludes with a consideration of what the dissertation as a whole might imply for the discipline of liturgical studies and pastoral practice concerning the entrance song.

#### Foundations of a Contextual Method

Since the post-modern turn to the subject<sup>35</sup> in Western philosophical discourse, most theologians have taken for granted that, as Stephen Bevans notes, “the contextualization of theology—the attempt to understand faith in terms of a particular context—is really a theological imperative.”<sup>36</sup> A contextual theology recognizes a dialectical, or more accurately, analogical relationship between present human experience and the Christian tradition—between context and meaning.<sup>37</sup> It recognizes that theology and all human discourse must be “unabashedly subjective” in that reality is mediated by meaning—a meaning given in the

---

<sup>34</sup> Several scholars have tried and tested the use of models in liturgical theology. See, for example, Adrian Burdon, “‘Till in Heaven’—Wesleyan Models for Liturgical Theology,” *Worship* 71 (July 1997): 309-317; James Empereur, *Models of Liturgical Theology* (Bramcote, England: Grove Books, 1987); Maxwell E. Johnson, *Images of Baptism* (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2001); Kevin W. Irwin, *Models of the Eucharist* (Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 2005); and Paul Turner, *Confirmation: The Baby in Solomon's Court*, rev. ed., (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2006).

<sup>35</sup> See Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 43.

<sup>36</sup> Stephen B. Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology* (Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books, 1992), 1. There has been a parallel movement in Christology over the past half-century evidenced by the increasing emphasis on Christology “from below” in contrast to Christology “from above.” See William P. Loewe, *The College Student's Introduction to Christology* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996), passim.

<sup>37</sup> Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 11.

context of a particular culture and historical period, interpreted from within one's particular horizon and way of thinking.<sup>38</sup> Thus, "we can only speak about a theology that makes sense at a certain place and in a certain time."<sup>39</sup>

Contextual theology, in essence, is nothing new. Every theologian throughout history wrote within his or her particular context.<sup>40</sup> The difference today is the self-conscious recognition of this context and the realization that a truly objective and universal theological discourse is impossible.<sup>41</sup> Moreover, as one would expect, this realization, or at least this new systematic articulation of this theological reality, has led to new methodological approaches in the theological enterprise.

There are several underlying assertions or foundations to a consciously contextual theology: Christianity is incarnational, reality is sacramental, and revelation is contextual. In

---

<sup>38</sup> See Bernard Lonergan, *Method in Theology* (1973; repr., Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1996), 28, 76-77, 238.

<sup>39</sup> Bevens, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 2. See also the concept of "World Church" in Karl Rahner, "Towards a Fundamental Theological Interpretation of Vatican II," *Theological Studies* 40 (1979): 716-27. The contextual situation becomes increasingly complex as time goes on. A theologian today must not only recognize his or her own cultural context, but also the fact that one is continually assailed by other cultural contexts, which can result in a kind of overlap of cultural matrices. In this age of the "World Church," theological discourse must attempt to negotiate this evermore complex and instantaneous interaction between cultures. See also Lonergan, *Method in Theology*, xi. The fact that the way in which theology is articulated must differ from context to context in no way denies the existence of universally relevant truth, ideas, and principles.

<sup>40</sup> For example, historical era, culture, gender, socio-economic status, spiritual tradition, and so forth. See Bevens, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 3-4. D. J. Hall makes the point well: "Contextualization . . . is the sine qua non of all genuine theological thought, and always has been." Hall, *Thinking the Faith: Christian Theology in a North American Context* (Minneapolis: Augsburg Press, 1989), 21. The effects of the unavoidably contextual nature of human discourse are easily seen in the influence of certain philosophies and movements on the aesthetics and principles of the Second Vatican Council (for example, Minimalism and Social Justice), though one would not want to deny that the Council also adapted, advanced and shaped such philosophies and movements. The current retreat from the idea of post-modernism in the neo-traditionalist movement in the Western Church—even though such a retreat is actually undeniably post-modern because it requires recognition of that from which it turns away—is also reflective of a general trend toward cultural conservatism, though there is not yet enough historical distance to accurately delineate a motivating philosophy as such.

<sup>41</sup> The use of the term "theological discourse" rather than "theology" allows for the fact that some contextual theological methods recognize a universal Christian revelation. The articulation of this revelation in a particular place and time, however, is the methodological problem.



other words, if salvation is God's personal self-offering to human beings (individually and communally), revelation must take place in a humanly comprehensible and therefore contextual manner.<sup>42</sup> "These internal factors, brought to light by the forces of history and the movements of the times, are really dynamics within Christianity itself, and are particularly strong arguments for a theology that takes culture and cultural change seriously as it attempts to understand Christian faith," states Bevans.<sup>43</sup>

For the theologian today, this new stance has some practical implications. First, an important methodological principle in contextual theology is that a theologian must in some way limit his or her field of inquiry. This principle acknowledges the interdisciplinary nature of modern scholarship, which by its very nature and breadth does not allow any one person to have the expertise to paint an exhaustive or comprehensive picture of a given topic. It recognizes the methodological difficulties of attempts at comprehensive histories and universal methodologies<sup>44</sup> and aims to shed a clearer, more accurate, and more specific light on a narrow field of study by focusing on a particular idea or question. Specificity and focus is necessary given the great and increasing speed at which knowledge expands in the present

---

<sup>42</sup> Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 7-10. To clarify, he goes on, "Incarnation is a process of becoming particular, and in and through the particular, the divinity could become visible [in Jesus of Nazareth] and in some way . . . become graspable and intelligible. It follows quite naturally that if that message is to continue to touch people through our agency, we have to continue the incarnation process. . . . Christianity, if it is to be faithful to its deepest roots and most basic insight, must continue God's incarnation in Jesus by becoming contextual. . . . The ordinary things of life are so transparent of God's presence, one can speak of culture and events in history—of contexts—as truly sacramental, and so revelatory" (ibid., 8-9). Kevin W. Irwin emphasizes similar points in terms of a "theology of creation" and "sacramentality." He says that "it is here and now that, because of Christ, our lives are supremely human and profoundly divine at the same time." Liturgy, and the Christian life in general, "presume a sacramental world view." Kevin W. Irwin, "A Sacramental World—Sacramentality as the Primary Language of Sacraments," *Worship* 76:3 (May 2002): 197, 199.

<sup>43</sup> Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 7.

<sup>44</sup> Zimmerman emphasizes that "the plurality of methods suggests that in spite of our propensity to search for the meaning of a text, at best the process of interpretation produces only a viable meaning." Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 47.

day. Resultantly, the interdisciplinary nature of all academic pursuit requires deliberate collaboration between specialists in various fields of study.<sup>45</sup> Second, this new stance also implies that there must be a critical edge in theological reflection, one that approaches reality with suspicion or a “dialectical imagination.”<sup>46</sup> It recognizes that human motives, cultural forms, and even creation itself are not “all holy” and can be corrupted and thereby distort the Christian message.

### The Contextual Method of This Study

The employment of theoretical models is foundational to this study in two ways. First, chapter 3 articulates several models of the entrance song. Second, a theological model also comprises the foundational methodology of the dissertation as a whole. This approach to theology has found many proponents in the past few decades<sup>47</sup>—most famously, Avery Dulles in his *Models of the Church*.<sup>48</sup>

---

<sup>45</sup> Lonergan, *Method in Theology*, 125-48.

<sup>46</sup> Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 17.

<sup>47</sup> See, for example, Gerald A. Arbuckle, *Earthing the Gospel: An Inculturation Handbook for Pastoral Workers* (1990; repr., Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock, 2002); Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*; Stephen Bouma-Prediger, *The Greening of Theology: The Ecological Models of Rosemary Radford Ruether, Joseph Stiller, and Jürgen Moltmann* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1995); Steven Chase, *The Tree of Life: Models of Christian Prayer* (Ada, MI: Baker Academic, 2005); Raymond F. Collins, *Models for Theological Reflection* (Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 1984); George E. Demacopoulos, *Models of Spiritual Direction in the Early Church* (Notre Dame, IN: University of Notre Dame Press, 2006); Thomas J. Hastings, *Practical Theology and the One Body of Christ: Toward a Missional Ecumenical Model* (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 2007); David J. Hesselgrave and Edward Rommen, *Contextualization: Meanings, Methods, and Models* (1989; repr., Pasadena, CA: William Cary Library, 2003); Julian Kunnie, *Models of Black Theology: Issues in Class, Culture, and Gender* (Philadelphia: Trinity Press International, 1994); Sally McFague, *Metaphoric Theology: Models of God in Religious Language* (Philadelphia: Fortress Press, 1982), and *Models of God: Theology for an Ecological, Nuclear Age* (Minneapolis: Augsburg Fortress Press, 1975); Christopher F. Mooney, *Theology and Scientific Knowledge: Changing Models of God's Presence in the World* (Notre Dame, IN: University of Notre Dame Press, 1996); John F. O'Grady, *Models of Jesus* (Garden City, NY: Doubleday, 1981), and *Models of Jesus Revisited* (Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1994); Thomas F. O'Meara, “Philosophical Models in Ecclesiology,” *Theological Studies* 38:1 (March 1978): 3-21, and *Theology of Ministry* (Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1999); Duncan Reid, *Energies of the Spirit: Trinitarian Models in Eastern Orthodox and Western Theology* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1997); Peter Schineller, “Christ and the Church: A

K. Irwin's *Models of the Eucharist* is a recent example of the liturgical-theological employment of models. Irwin recognizes that models allow for an "integral understanding" of diverse theological principles, and that models should be "understood as mutually enriching and as presuming each other to be adequate," each with its own strengths and weaknesses, each relying on different "footing theologically, liturgically, or historically."<sup>49</sup>

In terms of what Dulles names heuristic models, complex theological realities such as the church, God's grace, or human redemption [and, as the present study argues, the music of the liturgy] can be opened up to expression, reflection, and critique. These kinds of models suggest, [and] disclose . . . a number of associations or possibilities. No one model is able to capture the Reality under consideration; each, however, can help a person enter into the Reality's mystery in a kind of supra-rational way.<sup>50</sup>

Such models give an incomplete glimpse into reality, but still authentically reveal it. Each provides a lens through which to view the world, the reality of which can only be articulated metaphorically. Their defects require the articulation of not just one model, but several, if one is to paint an adequate picture of the real world.<sup>51</sup>

The methodology of this study, then, is best articulated in terms of what Bevens calls a "synthetic model."<sup>52</sup> Such a model embraces the methodological middle ground. In essence, it is a hybrid model in that it takes up the insights and methods of other models and

---

Spectrum of Views," *Theological Studies* 37:4 (December 1976): 545-66; and David Tracy, *Blessed Rage for Order: The New Pluralism in Theology* (1975; repr. with new intr., Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1996).

<sup>48</sup> Avery Dulles, *Models of the Church* (New York: Doubleday, 1974). See also his *Models of Revelation* (New York: Doubleday, 1983). For information on the authors who influenced Dulles' concept of models, see Bevens, 23-24.

<sup>49</sup> K. Irwin, *Models of the Eucharist*, 33-34.

<sup>50</sup> Bevens, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 24.

<sup>51</sup> *Ibid.*, 26.

<sup>52</sup> This is one of five models delineated by Bevens. *Ibid.*, 81-96.

utilizes them as necessary.<sup>53</sup> The primary motivators in this model are questions. The theologian begins by deciding which questions he or she intends to answer and then determines the best way to do so.<sup>54</sup> It is not a compromise model, but one that develops by means of “a creative dialectic, something that is acceptable to all standpoints,” and believes theology to be an “ongoing dialogue.”<sup>55</sup>

Put another way, the synthetic model suggests a method that recognizes the particularity that must accompany any successful interpretation. Sible De Blaauw puts forth three “layers” for the interpretation process: contextual—“the historical situation in which a liturgical service is enacted”—functional—concerning the causal and consequential relationships between the rite and other factors, such as musical style, personal experience, and so on—and spiritual/abstract—“certain contents, ideas, social and political values, conscious as well as unconscious” that liturgy expresses.<sup>56</sup>

The synthetic model is especially useful for the task of this study in that it is open to all types of sources, and thus can address sources musicological, historical, paleographical, legal, theological, linguistic, pastoral, and so on. Because it is open to all sorts of data, it is also open to all sorts of means of interpretation. Through a “thick description” of the data,

---

<sup>53</sup> This implies not only openness to the insights of the other models articulated by Bevens, but also openness to all sorts of hermeneutical methods—likely post-critical, but possibly certain critical methods. This model is a successful articulation of the theoretical framework for liturgical theology suggested by K. Irwin in *Context and Text*. As Zimmerman notes, “Rarely can an interpreter commit herself or himself to a single method and use only that method. . . . We must have a dialogue of interpretations if we are to understand liturgy as a divine/human encounter.” Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 47-81, especially 80-81.

<sup>54</sup> In other words, Zimmerman says, “Different questions, different method.” Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 47.

<sup>55</sup> Bevens, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 83.

<sup>56</sup> Sible De Blaauw, “Architecture and Liturgy in Late Antiquity and the Middle Ages: Traditions and Trends in Modern Scholarship,” *Archiv für Liturgiewissenschaft* 33 (1991): 32-33. Even though de Blaauw is concerned primarily with the relationship between worship space and liturgy, one can critically apply his insights to other areas of inquiry, such as liturgical music.

basic conclusions and theological themes emerge, which must be put in dialogue with the Christian tradition, the ideal result of which is mutual transformation.<sup>57</sup> Such a model recognizes that insights gained from an historical study of the entrance song and a study of the tradition of its interpretation in Church legislation and documents—or indeed a study of any window into the reality that is the residue of meaning disclosed by the ritual enactment of the entrance song—do not result in a disjointed set of findings, but, if the findings are brought into dialogue, produce new insights.

This process of dialogue provides access to the meaning of the text and the event of the entrance song. In terms of liturgical rites, two objects are involved: ritual/event and text/fixed meaning.<sup>58</sup> Because one might interpret ritual and text using different methods<sup>59</sup> the synthetic model seems appropriate. As Joyce Ann Zimmerman recognizes, “A hermeneut chooses a method because it promises to deliver an answer to a particular set of questions. This necessarily implies that the interpreter must let go of other questions, or address them in another interpretive moment”<sup>60</sup> using another method. Figure 1 below is a graphic illustration of this study’s specific application of the synthetic model.

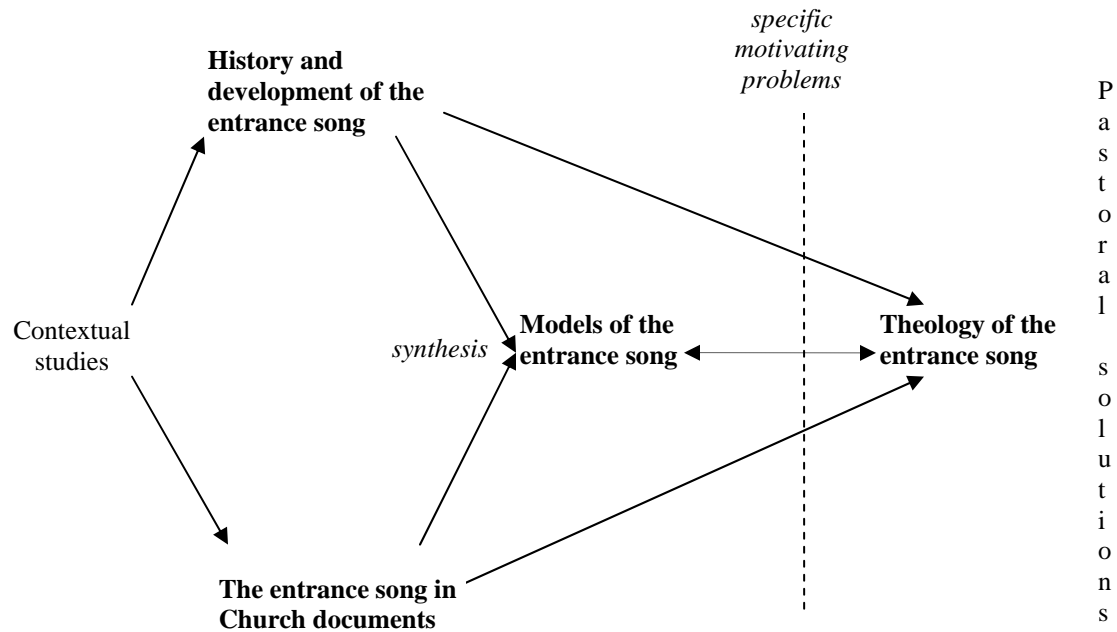
---

<sup>57</sup> Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 86. Zimmerman says, “Authentic interpretation plumbs liturgy’s multivalent richness at the same time that it remains faithful to its tradition, doctrinal content, and ritual expression.” Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 6. “Thick description” is a term brought into use in the field of ethnography by Clifford Geertz, and used today in many other disciplines. See Clifford Geertz, “Thick Description: Toward an Interpretive Theory of Culture,” in *The Interpretation of Cultures: Selected Essays* (New York: Basic Books, 1973), passim. This type of description takes into account not only an action or a behavior, but also its context. Without a consideration of this context, an action’s meaning is easily misinterpreted or even inaccessible.

<sup>58</sup> Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 19.

<sup>59</sup> Ibid.

<sup>60</sup> Ibid., 20.



**Figure 1** Application of the Synthetic Model

As with all academic studies, then, it is crucial to note the limitations of this dissertation. It should be taken for granted that certain questions must be bracketed as outside the study's scope and that certain aspects of the entrance song tradition must be explored more thoroughly than others if one is to put forth a focused and coherent contribution. This introduction has set out clearly the direction and parameters for this study. The available evidence or lack thereof and the study's foundational questions and goals have been the primary delimiting factors with regard to the length and content of each chapter.

## **PART ONE: CONTEXTUAL STUDIES OF THE ENTRANCE SONG**

### **Chapter 1**

#### **The Entrance Song in Its Historical Context**

##### **Introduction**

In the historical study of Christian liturgy, several qualifications and methodological principles are paramount, as the introduction has sketched above. Such qualifications are even more important when the goal is to consider such a broad span of time—for the purpose of this chapter, from the time of the first Christians until the time when the insights of the Liturgical Movement<sup>1</sup> began to be taken up in official church documents. The goal cannot be, then, a comprehensive history of the entrance song for all eras, in all geographical regions and within all ritual traditions. Instead, the purpose of this study, in dialogue with the extant evidence, frames and delimits the specific goal of this chapter, which is to paint a historical picture of the evolution, form and function of the entrance song in the Roman Rite,<sup>2</sup> particularly in light of liturgical tradition and liturgical sources. For the purposes of this chapter, these sources include the texts and melodies of the proper chants of the Mass, liturgical books and manuscripts, as well as certain ecclesiastical documents cited throughout.

---

<sup>1</sup> For a brief history of the Liturgical Movement, see *New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*, s.v. “Liturgical Movement, The (1830-1969)” (by Virgil C. Funk).

<sup>2</sup> For more on the importance of frames in historical writing, see Philip Weller, “Frames and Images: Locating Music in Cultural Histories of the Middle Ages,” *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 50:1 (Spring 1997): 17-54.

The focus here on a particular musical form (the introit) does not deny the historical significance of other musical forms or traditions. Indeed, a great variety of forms have been part of the liturgical tradition in the West, and today in practice there are a variety of songs that accompany the entrance procession in the Mass of the Roman Rite. At the same time, however, one must recognize that entrance chants came to be the usual way—but certainly not the only way—to begin celebrations of the Eucharist in the West from very early on. In the Roman Rite, this chant was the introit, and thus one can say this form has a prominence within the tradition and a privileged status. And for the past half-millennium, one can say that the introit has been part of the normative form of the Roman Rite. This study recognizes a dialectical or dialogical relationship between official sources and actual practice in which actual practice is evaluated in terms of a normative form. Here the dialectic is between “normative” and “non-normative” ritual-musical forms, not necessarily between “high quality” and “low quality” or degrees of effective ritual enactment.

For centuries people cited an excerpt from the sixth-century *Liber Pontificalis* of Pope Celestine I (422-32) as proof that this Pope introduced the introit into the Roman liturgy:

[Hic multa constituta fecit,	[He issued many decrees,]
et constituit ut psalmi David CL	and he decreed that the 150 psalms of David
ante sacrificium psalli	should be sung before the sacrifice
[antephanatim ex omnibus],	[antiphonally from all];
quod ante non fiebat,	this used not to be done,
nisi tantum epistula beati Pauli recitabatur	but only the epistle of the blessed Paul was recited
et sanctum evangelium,	and the holy gospel,
(et sic missae celebrabantur).	(and in this way Masses were celebrated). <sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> This redaction of the text is taken from Joseph Dyer, “The Introit and Communion Psalmody of Old Roman Chant,” in *Chant and Its Peripheries: Essays in Honour of Terence Bailey*, ed. Bryan Gillingham and Paul Merkley (Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998), 110-12. Dyer notes that “the two passages enclosed



This interpretation originates in the interpretation of the passage by Amalar of Metz (ca. 775-ca. 850).<sup>4</sup> “Introitus” for Amalar had a broad meaning.<sup>5</sup> Walahfrid Strabo (ca. 808-49) also interpreted the passage as referring to the introit.<sup>6</sup> More recently, however, a number of scholars have convincingly discredited this view and instead see the passage from the *Liber Pontificalis* as referring to the gradual (responsorial psalm).<sup>7</sup> Indeed, both Jungmann (1949) and Lamb (1962) already view with suspicion the idea that the *Liber Pontificalis* refers to the introit.<sup>8</sup> One can still find scholarly works of relatively recent provenance, nevertheless, that either disagree with these scholars or are unaware of this development in historical understanding.<sup>9</sup> While the argument against the *Liber Pontificalis* as a record of the introduction of the introit into the Roman rite is quite convincing, scholars have not settled the matter beyond a shadow of a doubt and, for lack of historical evidence, probably never will.

---

within square brackets occur only in the second edition of the *Liber Pontificalis* (ca. 550); the phrase in parenthesis occurs in the first edition (ca. 530), but not in every manuscript of this recension” (ibid., 112). Dyer relies upon the classic edition of the *Liber Pontificalis*, ed. Louis Duchesne (Paris: Boccard, 1955-57), 1:172-87. Lamb also notes that the “antiphonatum ex omnibus” is likely “a gloss whose antiquity is suspect.” J. A. Lamb, *Psalms in Christian Worship* (London: Faith Press, 1962), 87. See also *DACL*, s.v. “Introit.”

<sup>4</sup> See his ninth-century *Liber officialis* 3.5.2, ed. I. M. Hanssens, *Amalarii episcopi opera liturgica omnia* (Rome 1948).

<sup>5</sup> He states, “Officium quod vocatur introitus missae habet initium a prima antiphona, quae dicitur introitus, et finitur in oratione quae dicitur a sacerdote ante lectionem.” Ibid., 3.5.1.

<sup>6</sup> See Alice Harting-Correa, ed. and trans., *Walahfried Strabo’s Libellus de exordiis et incrementis quarundam in observationibus ecclesiasticis rerum: A Translation and Liturgical Commentary* (Leiden: Brill Academic, 1996), 128-33.

<sup>7</sup> See Peter Jeffrey, “The Introduction of Psalmody into the Roman Mass by Pope Celestine I (422-432): Reinterpreting a Passage in the *Liber Pontificalis*,” *Archiv für Liturgiewissenschaft* 26:2 (1984); and *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit.”

<sup>8</sup> See Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:322; and Lamb, *Psalms in Christian Worship*, 86.

<sup>9</sup> See, for example, John F. Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison and the Entrance Rite of the Roman Eucharist,” *Worship* 60 (July 1986): 340; Peter G. Cobb, “The Liturgy of the Word in the Early Church,” in *The Study of Liturgy*, ed. Cheslyn Jones, et al., rev. ed (London: SPCK / New York: Oxford University Press, 1992), 221; and *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. “Music” (by Everett Ferguson).

Another debated passage is Augustine of Hippo's *Liber retractationem* II, 27:

Meanwhile a certain Hilary . . . attacked the custom which had begun then in Carthage . . . of singing [*dicerentur*] at the altar hymns from the Book of Psalms both before the oblation [*ante oblationem*] and while what had been offered was distributed to the people.<sup>10</sup>

It is possible the first reference to singing a psalm refers to an entrance psalm or an offertory psalm, but experts generally agree that the passage describes the gradual and communion.<sup>11</sup>

It would be an understatement, to be sure, to say with Dyer that “the date at which singing during the entry of the clergy was introduced to the Roman Mass is difficult to determine.”<sup>12</sup> Indeed, the purpose of this chapter is not to discover the precise origins of the introit. The extant historical record is simply insufficient for the task. To assert a precise origin for the introit would be to harmonize sparse, sporadic, divergent and geographically/culturally specific evidence, and thus highly problematic, methodologically speaking.<sup>13</sup> Doing so could result in a false or unfounded historical picture of early Christian practice. While a uniform way of beginning the celebration of the Eucharist did develop in Rome after Constantine, one must be careful, therefore, not to project this uniformity of practice back to prior centuries or to assume complete uniformity of practice in the West after the fourth century. Any historical reconstruction of early Christianity must take into

---

<sup>10</sup> See *Corpus Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum Latinorum* 36, 144. Trans., James W. McKinnon, “The Fourth-Century Origin of the Gradual,” *Early Music History* 7 (1987): 103.

<sup>11</sup> See McKinnon, “Fourth-Century Origin of the Gradual,” 103.

<sup>12</sup> Dyer, “Introit and Communion Psalmody,” 110.

<sup>13</sup> Paul Bradshaw has summarized well the care one must take when researching the early history of the liturgy: “First, we no longer generalize on the basis of very limited evidence. . . . Secondly, we no longer assume a high degree of continuity from one century to another. . . . [Third,] we do not always assume that what [the extant sources] claim to be the case is necessarily a simple and reliable statement of fact.” Paul Bradshaw, “The Changing Face of Early Liturgy,” *Music and Liturgy* 33:1-2 (2007): 23-24. For more on this issue, stated in terms of archaeology, see Gradon F. Snyder, *Ante-Pacem: Archaeological Evidence of Church Life Before Constantine* (Macon, GA: Mercer University Press, 2003), 15; and, in terms of liturgical chant, see Troelsgård, “Methodological Problems in Comparative Studies of Liturgical Chant,” 981-84.

consideration the late emergence of liturgical orthopraxis, the pluralistic character of the earliest faith communities, and possible literary suppression of heteropraxis.

### **Foundational Contexts**

The question of the origins of Christian music is a question of foundational contexts. There is no compelling evidence for a deliberate program of music composition for the worship of the earliest Christian communities. How the contemporaries of the earliest followers of the risen Christ employed music is an intriguing question. Could these proto-Christians, who, as pagans or Jews, were ritual beings and part of a ritual culture, escape the ancient musical traditions of their day: the ancient uses and significance of music associated with the pagan cult, and the Jewish worship of the temple, synagogue, and home? To be sure, it is difficult to speak of a specifically Christian culture prior to what Snyder calls the new cult's "cultural break with Judaism."<sup>14</sup> Before this time—roughly the late first century and early second century—Christianity, though in many ways unique, was simply one of several movements within Judaism and one of many new religious movements in the Roman Empire at the time.<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>14</sup> Snyder, *Ante-Pacem*, 1.

<sup>15</sup> It is only in the late second century, with the cultural break with Judaism in the recent past, that we find evidence of a distinctively Christian culture. This cultural break was brought about through the eventual self-identification of Christians as a religious group in their own right, rather than as a sect within Judaism. The key here is that Christianity became distinct as a visible culture. Snyder notes, "This is not to say there was no Christian culture prior to 180 C.E. It is only to say that the nascent Christian culture either was not yet distinguishable from society in general, or the first Christians lacked sufficient self identity to establish for itself symbols, language, art and architecture. From the beginning there had to have been social practices peculiar to the life of the first Christians." Ibid., 2. On the surge of new religious movements and the success of Christianity during the first centuries A.D., see Donald F. Logan, *A History of the Church in the Middle Ages* (New York: Routledge, 2002), 3-12; and Rodney Stark, *The Rise of Christianity* (San Francisco: HarperSanFrancisco, 1997), passim.

### The Origins of Christian Culture and Music

Fundamentally, one can locate the foundations of Christian worship music<sup>16</sup> within a first- and early second-century simultaneously Greek, Jewish, and Roman cultural matrix.<sup>17</sup> Because of its dominance in the Near East and in the Roman Empire, Greek music theory and philosophical understandings of music necessarily underpinned any music of the early Christians, even if not on a self-conscious level.<sup>18</sup> The typical Greek sense of musical propriety regarding music used in religious rites was also influential—for example, a general preference for vocal music over instrumental music.<sup>19</sup> The music of first-century imperial Roman culture also influenced the music of the first Christians, but in a negative sense. Early Christians were concerned that what they sang was intelligible. In this characteristic, their music differed—probably deliberately—from pagan Roman music, which utilized archaic texts that had become incomprehensible.<sup>20</sup>

The music of the Jews in Palestine was also significant. All three traditional categories of Jewish music (Temple, synagogue and home) had varying degrees of influence

---

<sup>16</sup> According to Jan Michael Joncas, “Describing primitive Christian worship music practices is quite difficult due to the scarcity of sources. No surviving musical artifacts, visual representations, or acoustic environments unassailably dated to the first century of the Christian movement survive. Only the twenty-seven documents that make up the New Testament and a handful of other ‘subapostolic’ writings (e.g., the *Didache*, the *First Letter of Clement to Rome*, the *Letter of Barnabas*) allow us to reconstruct in some way the liturgical life of the first generation of Christians.” Jan Michael Joncas, “Liturgy and Music,” in *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, vol. 2, *Fundamental Liturgy* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998), 287.

<sup>17</sup> *Ibid.*, 284.

<sup>18</sup> See, for example, Philo *Noah as Planter* 2.126; Plato *Republic* 399E and *Laws* 669E; Plutarch *On Music* 26-27, 33, 41; and Porphyry *De abstinence* 2.34.

<sup>19</sup> See Herbert M. Schueller, *The Idea of Music: An Introduction to Musical Aesthetics in Antiquity and the Middle Ages* (Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 1988), passim; and *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. “Music.”

<sup>20</sup> Joncas, “Liturgy and Music,” 285.

on early Christian music.<sup>21</sup> At Temple, a group of hereditary musical professionals or Levites performed the music, but in the synagogues the entire assembly would have taken part in spontaneous or unprogrammed singing under the leadership of the *sheliach tsibbur* or emissary of the people. This congregational participation implies a simple form of music that was easy to sing. At times, the assembly would have heard the reader cantillate excerpts from the Hebrew sacred texts.<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>21</sup> For a contextual study of the music of the Temple and of synagogues in the first century, see Edward Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music: The Music of Pre-Constantinian Christianity* (1992; rev. ed. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996), 25-50. See also Joncas, "Liturgy and Music," 287. Over recent years, the prevailing opinion as to the type and degree of influence Jewish worship had upon early Christianity has changed. See *Grove Online*, s.v. "Christian Church, Music of the Early" (by James W. McKinnon), <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005). A survey of scholarship over the past century shows a gradual trend away from studies that ignore the Jewish roots of Christianity and toward a historical viewpoint that emphasizes increasingly the Jewish origins of Christian ritual practices. Today, scholarship tends to take the link between first-century Jewish practices and those of the early Christians as an *a priori* fact, while at the same time recognizing that a direct evolutionary relationship can only be asserted with serious qualifications. For example, a more careful analysis of the evidence has revealed, as the majority of liturgical scholars agree, that the earliest Christian forms of worship actually predate the development of what we today think of as Jewish worship. See, for example, Joan E. Taylor, *Christians and Holy Places: The Myth of Jewish-Christian Origins* (Oxford: Clarendon, 1993), passim; and Bradshaw, "Changing Face of Early Liturgy," 25-26. Perrot reminds us, however, that "we cannot forget the phenomenon of re-Judaisation which quickly took place, even in Helleno-Christian communities (thus Col. 2:16-18, 23). Sometimes the allegedly Jewish origin of this or that Christian practice is merely a secondary historical phenomenon." Charles Perrot, "Worship in the Primitive Church," *Concilium* 162 (1983): 3.

<sup>22</sup> Bradshaw recognizes among scholars a "growing consensus that in the first century there was no such thing as the Sabbath synagogue liturgy, in the sense that we can speak of it in later centuries. There were certainly regular synagogue assemblies on the Sabbath, which might last for hours, but they were for the primary purpose of reading and studying the Law and the Prophets rather than for liturgy in the sense that we might understand that expression. . . . They were classes rather than services. Hence the notion of psalms being sung or formal prayers being offered are anachronism. It was only after the Temple had been destroyed that synagogues assumed the role of centres for worship and many of the former practices of the Temple liturgy were transferred to this context. The only possible synagogal influence on the origins of Christian worship, then, would have been the practice of reading publicly important texts." Bradshaw, *Changing Face of Early Liturgy*, 25. See also Daniel K. Falk, "Jewish Prayer Literature and the Jerusalem Church in Acts," in *The Book of Acts in Its Palestinian Setting*, ed. Richard Bauckham (Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1995), 267-301; and Heather McKay, *Sabbath and Synagogue: The Question of Sabbath Worship in Ancient Jerusalem* (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1994), passim. In larger buildings, however, public reading suggests that the readers cantillated/chanted the texts.

The music of the typical Jewish home, particularly singing at meals, also must have influenced early Christian practice.<sup>23</sup> It is true, nevertheless, that evidence about such an influence is sparse.<sup>24</sup> This is not to say there were exact parallels in either the pagan or Jewish tradition; the assertion that the music of the Jewish home was influential on early Christian liturgy only recognizes that the practice of singing at meals was so prevalent in the cultural context of the first Christians that it is more likely than not to have influenced the development of their own musical practices. In any case, the logogenic (or “word-born”) style of music in the Jewish tradition was particularly influential in early Christian music.<sup>25</sup> In addition, the Davidic psalms and Greek melodies probably also influenced Christian singing.<sup>26</sup> Finally, it is important to remember that pagan and Jewish festivals and holy days influenced the development of many of the earliest Christian feasts.<sup>27</sup>

---

<sup>23</sup> Fassler and Jeffery tentatively assert that “the earliest Christian musical tradition developed from a variety of sources, [including] the Jewish and Pagan customs of singing at gatherings around a meal. . . . Held in private homes during the first two centuries, such meals typically included Scripture reading, religious instruction, prayer, and singing. We find examples in the literature of Qumran, the *Letter of Aristaeas* 175-215, and especially Philo’s *The Contemplative Life*.” Margot Fassler and Peter Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music from the Bible to the Renaissance,” in *Sacred Sound and Social Change: Liturgical Music in Jewish and Christian Experience* (Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 1992), 84-85. See also G. Vermes, *The Dead Sea Scrolls in English*, rev. complete edition (London: Penguin Books, 2004), 32, 83-84. Foley offers some useful insight into this issue: “Early Christian practice reflects patterns which are as meticulously different from as they are broadly grounded on, Jewish tradition. There is, for example, much continuity in terms of texts, musical forms, styles of ‘musical’ leadership and melodic building blocks—especially between Jewish synagogue, home rituals and emerging Christian cult. Many of the texts that were part of the lyrical horizon of early Christian worship (like the Infancy Canticles) were borrowed from Judaism, the practice of publicly cantillating readings is distinctively Jewish, and even the priority of vocal music to the exclusion of instruments was a synagogal innovation. Yet, the tonal landscape of early Christianity cannot be understood simply in terms of continuity with Jewish synagogal or domestic worship. Texts were borrowed and adapted, the nature of public reading was redefined in terms of gospel and epistle, and the traditional patterns of Jewish chants—already under the influence of Hellenism—were increasingly influenced by the musical traditions of Gentile believers.” Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 67-68.

<sup>24</sup> Joncas, “Liturgy and Music,” 287. There is some evidence of early antiphonal Jewish religious singing. See Philo *Contemplative Life* 80: 83-87.

<sup>25</sup> Joncas, “Liturgy and Music,” 287.

<sup>26</sup> *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. “Music.”

<sup>27</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 85.

## Early Christian Singing

Christian assemblies have at all times and in all places read the scriptures, prayed, and sung. The Christian liturgy was born in singing, and it has never ceased to sing. Singing must be regarded as one of the fundamental constituents of Christian worship.

-Joseph Gelineau<sup>28</sup>

A modest meal should sound with psalms, and if you have a good memory and a pleasant voice, you should take upon yourself the singer's office.

-St. Cyprian of Carthage<sup>29</sup>

What one can gather from Patristic sources and from early-Christian liturgical sources is that during primitive Eucharistic gatherings, the most common types of music were spontaneous responses or short acclamations.<sup>30</sup> These were performed either by an individual

---

<sup>28</sup> Joseph Gelineau, "Music and Singing in the Liturgy," in *The Study of Liturgy*, ed. Cheslyn Jones, et al. (New York: Oxford University Press, 1992), 494. See this article for a useful if somewhat dated history of the development of Christian liturgical music. When worship is framed in terms of Gelineau's three broad categories (scripture reading, praying, and singing) it becomes clearer how integral music was to the Christian liturgical experience from the earliest times.

<sup>29</sup> Cyprian *Ad Donatum* 16. The original Latin text reads, "Sonet psalmos convivium sobrium; et ut tibi tenax memoria est, vox canora, aggredere hoc munus ex more." Quasten notes that "in this way Christianity wholly retained the customs of antiquity, which made use of solo singing at meals." J. Quasten, *Music in Pagan and Christian Antiquity*, trans. Boniface Ramsey (Washington, DC: National Association of Pastoral Musicians, 1983), 131-32. In this context "psalm" is a generic term that does not refer specifically to the Hebrew psalms. For more on Cyprian, as well as Clement and Origen, and music, see Paul F. Bradshaw, *Eucharistic Origins* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2004), 106-14.

<sup>30</sup> Justin Martyr's *First Apology* (ca. A.D. 150) is an important piece of historical evidence regarding the entrance song, but only indirectly. In the *Apology*'s two descriptions of mid-second century celebrations of the Eucharist (paras. 65-66, 67), there is no account of an entrance song or of any introductory rites other than the assembling or gathering of the participants at the start of the liturgy, which in essence is a type of primitive and spontaneous introductory ritual movement. See Bradshaw, *Eucharistic Origins*, 47-77. One cannot necessarily take Justin's account at face value, however. Bradshaw emphasizes that "the idea that there was a single church in Rome at this period seems to be anachronistic: instead, there appears to have been a somewhat loose collection of Christian communities distinguished from one another by significant ethnic—and probably also liturgical—differences" (ibid., 63-64). See also A. Hamman, "Valeur et signification des renseignements liturgiques de Justin," *Studia Patristica* 13 (1975): 364-74; and Peter Lampe, *From Paul to Valentinus: Christians at Rome in the First Two Centuries* (Minneapolis & London: Fortress Press, 2003), 9-22. Christian singing, both inside and outside the Eucharistic liturgy, receives a fair amount of attention in other writings of the Church Fathers. For specific Patristic examples, see *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. "Music;" Quasten, *Music and Worship in Pagan and Christian Antiquity*, 89, 131; and *Grove Online*, s.v. "Christian Church, Music of the Early." Such references, however interesting and enlightening in terms of Patristic

or by a group inspired to acclaim popular phrases.<sup>31</sup> Thus, one can say that the earliest Christian singing was usually responsorial in that these spontaneous acclamations were individual or communal responses to the liturgical celebration.<sup>32</sup> Congregational responses would have been perhaps a single word, such as *Alleluia* or *Amen*, or a verse such as *His mercy endures forever*—something akin to improvisatory antiphons.<sup>33</sup> Individual responses could have been the same, or as complex as an improvised hymn of praise. One can imagine that primitive Christian worship music was interactive and participatory, ecstatic and joyous.<sup>34</sup>

While music was certainly a part of Christian worship from the beginning, specific historical evidence of such music is scarce. One of the few traits of the earliest Christian

---

thinking about music, reveal nothing of an entrance song, and have received substantial treatment by a number of other authors. See, for example, Schueller, *Idea of Music*; James W. McKinnon, “The Meaning of the Patristic Polemic against Musical Instruments,” *Current Musicology* 1 (1985): 69-82; McKinnon, *Music in Early Christian Literature* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1987); and Quentin Faulkner, *Wiser than Despair: The Evolution of Ideas in the Relationship of Music and the Christian Church* (Westport, CT & London: Greenwood Press, 1996).

<sup>31</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early.” See also Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 81-82; and Augustine *De civitate Dei* 22:8. In a description of his entrance into the church on Easter morning in A.D. 426, Augustine recalls that he was greeted by shouts from the people: “Procedimus ad populum, plena erat ecclesia, peronabat vocibus gaudiorum: Deo gratias, deo laudes! Nemine tacente hinc atque inde clamantium. Salutaui populum, et rursus eadem feruentiore voce clamabant. Facto tandem silentio scripturarum divinarum sunt lecta sollemnia.” It is possible these shouts were spontaneous musical ejaculations, though the evidence as it stands cannot prove and does not necessarily suggest such a hypothesis.

<sup>32</sup> *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. “Music.” See also Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 61-63; Tertullian *De oratione* 27, in *Patrologia Latina*, 1:1194, and *Corpus Christianorum Latinorum* 1:273; John Chrysostom *Homily 36 in 1 Cor. 14:33*, in *Patrologia Graeca* 61:315; *Constitutiones apostolicae* 2.57.6, in *Sources Chrétiennes* 320, 329, 336; *Testamentum Domini* 2.11.22, ed. Grant Sperry-White (Cambridge: Grove Books Ltd, 1991); and Pliny the Younger *Epistula* 10.96, in *Complete Letters*, trans. P. G. Walsh (New York: Oxford University Press, 2009).

<sup>33</sup> Ferguson records that “one report attributed the introduction of antiphonal singing to Ignatius of Antioch (Socrates, *H.E.* 6.8), but other testimony placed its introduction in Antioch at the middle of the fourth century (Theodoret, *H.E.* 2.19).” *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. “Eucharist” (by Everett Ferguson). See also Victor Saxer, *Vie liturgique et quotidienne Carthage vers le milieu du IIIe siècle* (Vatican City: Pontificio Istituto di Archeologia Cristiana, 1969), 220.

<sup>34</sup> See Klaus-Peter Jörns, “Proclamation und Akklamation: Die antiphonische Grundordnung des frühchristlichen Gottesdienstes nach der Johannesoffenbarung,” in *Liturgie und Dichtung*, vol. 1 (St. Ottilien: EOS Verlag, 1983), *passim*.



music that one can assert with confidence is that it was predominantly vocal and monodic.<sup>35</sup> We hear of “psalms, hymns, and spiritual canticles” in the New Testament (Ephesians 5:18). One should not interpret these three terms as a list of distinct musical genres or forms, however, but as referring to a variety of musical forms in use in the first century—a broad range of music that was characteristically text-centered, often popular, probably similar in structure to the Davidic psalms and Old Testament canticles, but usually explicitly Christological and newly composed.

A desire to define themselves over and against the Jewish tradition meant that early Christians tended to avoid the direct incorporation of the Davidic psalms into their worship.<sup>36</sup> It is not until around A.D. 200 that there is explicit evidence of the use of these psalms in Christian liturgy, and only in the early third century does the Christian re-appropriation of these psalms as a core set of musical texts begin.<sup>37</sup> Later in the third century, as Foley notes, “patterns for their usage develop and clarify.”<sup>38</sup>

Musical expression was ever-present in and central to religion and culture in the first century. The term “worship music” in this early-Christian context does not refer to what

---

<sup>35</sup> *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.v. “Music.” Quasten states that “the primitive Church rejected all heterophony and polyphony.” Quasten, *Music in Pagan and Christian Antiquity*, 66-67. See also, *ibid.*, 72.

<sup>36</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early.” See also Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 85-86; Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 59; and Joncas, “Liturgy and Music,” 289.

<sup>37</sup> See the apocryphal *Acts of Paul*, ed. Wilhelm Schubart and Carl Schmidt (Hamburg: J. J. Augustin, 1936), 50-51. Note that “worship” here can refer to a variety of practices, not only the celebration of the Eucharist.

<sup>38</sup> Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 74. See, for example, Clement of Alexandria *Stromata* 7.7.49, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, vol. 2., ed. Alexander Roberts, James Donaldson, and A. Cleveland Coxe, trans. William Wilson (Buffalo, NY: Christian Literature Publishing Co., 1885); *Apostolic Tradition* 25, *The Apostolic Tradition: A Commentary*, ed. Paul F. Bradshaw, Maxwell Johnson, L. Edward Phillips, Harold W. Attridge (Minneapolis: Augsburg Fortress Press, 2002); *Didascalia Apostolorum* 6.5, *The Didascalia Apostolorum: An English Version with Introduction and Annotation*, ed. Alistair Stewart-Sykes (Turnhout: Brepols, 2009); and Tertullian *On the Flesh of Christ* 20.3, in *Patrologia Latina* 2:786, and *On the Soul* 9, in *Patrologia Latina* 2:660.

would be called music today, but rather, what Foley calls “the aural aspect of that cult”<sup>39</sup>—except perhaps for newly composed popular hymns<sup>40</sup> and psalms. It was primarily simple, logogenic, and lacking musical form and preconceived melody—in other words, a variety of musical interjections within a stable yet flexible ritual structure. Indeed, there were no defined roles for musical specialists in early Christian communities—no cantors, psalmists, and so on.<sup>41</sup> From the beginning through the early Middle Ages Christian singing was a collection of musically and geographically diverse oral traditions. As McKinnon says, “Variety might very well have been its single most constant quality.”<sup>42</sup>

### ***Terminus post quem & ante quem for the Origin of a Gregorian Proper Chant Tradition***

#### **The Toleration and Adoption of Christianity in the Roman Empire**

In the fourth century, a monumental and irreversible transition takes place in the history of the liturgy, which signals the beginnings of a unified and specifically Roman Rite. The Edict of Toleration (A.D. 311), Emperor Constantine’s conversion to Christianity (A.D. 312), the Edict of Milan (A.D. 313), and the Emperor Theodosius’s declaration of Christianity as the official religion of the Roman Empire (A.D. 392)<sup>43</sup> were catalysts for this transition in that they thrust Christianity into the center of the public sphere as the *cultus*

---

<sup>39</sup> Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 84. It is worth noting that our contemporary Western society is a culture of seers—a visual culture. We believe what we see. The first Christians and their Roman and Jewish contemporaries, however, “lived in a world where hearing was believing” (ibid., 5). Categories that we would employ today, “such as distinctions between [singing] and speech—are anachronistic frameworks that the ancients did not employ” (ibid.). See also ibid., 18-25; and Paul Achtemeier, “*Omne Verbum Sonat*: The New Testament and the Oral Environment of Late Western Antiquity,” *Journal of Biblical Literature* 109:1 (Spring 1990):12

<sup>40</sup> For the earliest extant physical evidence of a Christian song, see A. W. J. Holleman, “The Oxyrhynchus Papyrus 1786 and the Relationship between Ancient Greek and Early Christian Music,” *Vigiliae Christianae* 26 (1972): 1-17.

<sup>41</sup> Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 84.

<sup>42</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early.”

<sup>43</sup> Logan, *History of the Church in the Middle Ages*, 9.

*publicus*. Larger crowds for the Sunday Eucharist and for other liturgical and para-liturgical gatherings required larger church buildings. In Rome, the standard liturgical space came to be the long, rectangular public building or basilica. Imperial privileges for bishops meant that some of the ceremonial that surrounded Roman dignitaries began to surround the episcopal role of liturgical president as well.<sup>44</sup>

These fourth-century developments show forth a trend toward elaboration, formalization, and imperialization in Roman liturgy.<sup>45</sup> The elaboration of Christian ceremonial through the adoption of elements of the imperial Roman ritual, the new basilica setting of many liturgical celebrations, and the development of stational liturgy created an environment in which the development of a formal entrance ritual seems inevitable.<sup>46</sup> The shape of the building created, first, the potential for long processional routes<sup>47</sup> from the

---

<sup>44</sup> Pietri asserts that “court ritual inspired a whole symbolism of gesture.” Charles Pietri, “Liturgy, Culture and Society: The Example of Rome at the End of the Ancient World (Fourth-Fifth Centuries)” *Concilium* 162 (1983): 44.

<sup>45</sup> See Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 87.

<sup>46</sup> The Eucharist would also have been celebrated in other types of worship spaces. The most prominent spaces, however, were basilicas, and thus the basilica space was the most likely to have influenced the structure and content of the official liturgy. For the most substantial studies on early Christian worship spaces, see Richard Krautheimer, *Early Christian and Byzantine Architecture*, 4th ed. (New Haven & London: Yale University Press, 1986); Krautheimer, *Rome: Profile of a City, 312-1308* (1983; repr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2000); Krautheimer et al., *Corpus basilicarum Christianarum Romae: The Early Christian Basilicas of Rome (IV–IX Centuries)* (Vatican City: Pontificio Istituto di Archeologia Cristiana, 1937–1977); L. Michael White, *The Social Origins of Christian Architecture*, volume 1: *Building God’s House in the Roman World: Architectural Adaptation Among Pagans, Jews, and Christians* (repr. of 1990 edition, Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press), volume 2: *Texts and Monuments for the Christian Domus Ecclesiae in Its Environment* (Valley Forge, PA: Trinity Press International, 1997); and *Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*, s.vv. “Architecture,” “House Church” (by L. Michael White).

<sup>47</sup> The earliest Christian worship spaces, in contrast, facilitated gathering more so than processing. At the outset, the earliest Christians would have gathered in spaces owned by adherents to the new religious movement. The house church at Dura-Europos is the most famous example. See Foley, *Foundations of Christian Music*, 71, for a diagram of the building. See also Snyder, *Ante-Pacem*, 5-21. It is important to exercise caution, however, when implying that the structure of a worship space directly correlates to the rites enacted therein. “In theory, Christian worship could take place in any room sheltered by walls and a roof, or even in the open air. The connection of liturgy with a special structure is due to historical developments in Early Christianity. In the course of time this structure acquired the status of a sacred place, but from the liturgical point of view it was

entrance or sacristy to the sanctuary, and, second, what McKinnon calls a “new acoustical environment,” which would have required certain characteristics of music sung therein.<sup>48</sup>

### The Psalmodic Movement and the Selective Singing of Psalms

Two other crucial developments occurred during this period, in terms of the eventual development of the proper chants of the Mass: the “psalmodic movement” and the selective singing of psalms. In the fourth century, an unprecedented wave of enthusiasm for the Davidic psalms swept across the Church.<sup>49</sup> The useful point in this regard is that this movement occurred in the later fourth century and that this movement instigated the inclusion of new psalmodic elements into the liturgy. It is certain that by this time psalms,

---

nothing more than a monumental shell.” De Blauuw, “Architecture and Liturgy in the Late Antique and the Middle Ages,” 31.

Similarly, Pietri warns, “We should not try to establish too close a connection between architecture and ritual. It is not possible to distinguish in the building of the Episcopal basilica the influence of clergy with a clear programme and that of the architects creating a synthesis out of diverse elements in which technical constraints were as important as the desire to use a grandiose imperial language for this monument. Nevertheless, such a building did mark out a new space for the liturgy. It made possible processions.” Pietri, “Liturgy, Culture and Society,” 38.

<sup>48</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early.” Pietri elaborates: “From the beginning of the fourth century, the liturgy had received a new setting in which to mount its rites and assemble its people in prayer. The building of this church [the Lateran Basilica] transformed the setting of the liturgy. It gave it a permanent establishment, capable of containing for the first time in Rome the people gathered round their bishop in a single collective act of prayer. The monumentalism of the liturgical setting changed the style of worship.” Pietri, “Liturgy, Culture and Society,” 38.

<sup>49</sup> See James W. McKinnon, “Desert Monasticism and the Later Fourth-Century Psalmodic Movement,” *Music & Letters* 75:4 (November 1994): 505-521. Jeffery argues that “the psalmodic movement was motivated not only by monastic practices, but by a monastic way of reading the psalms.” Peter Jeffery, “Monastic Reading and the Emerging Roman Chant Repertory,” in *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, ed. Sean Gallagher, et al. (Burlington, VT: Ashgate, 2003), 59. “While the reading and singing of the psalms probably had a place in Christian worship from the beginning, the rise of monasticism in the fourth century provoked a renewed interest in psalm-singing, at first in the East, but spreading to the West by the 380s” (ibid., 82). For an effective critique of McKinnon’s thesis in this article, see Joseph Dyer, “The Desert, the City and Psalmody in the Late Fourth Century,” in *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, ed. Sean Gallagher, et al. (Burlington, VT: Ashgate, 2003), 11-44. McKinnon locates the source of the enthusiasm for the psalms with the rise of desert monasticism in the later fourth century. Dyer disagrees and believes one must look to the urban communities of ascetics that existed at that time for the origins of the psalmodic movement.

sung responsorially,<sup>50</sup> were already part of the Mass at the gradual and communion.<sup>51</sup> This enthusiasm also resulted in the frequent use of the psalms at vigil services<sup>52</sup> These popular psalmodic vigils could have led to a type of “entrance” or “opening” song practice, which would have developed to connect the psalmodic vigil to the subsequent celebration of the Mass.<sup>53</sup>

Through this wave of enthusiasm, it is as if the singing of Davidic psalms found a place in the Eucharistic liturgy at every possible point—first, at the gradual, then at the communion, and then perhaps at the entrance and offertory.<sup>54</sup> Indeed, transitional points during the liturgy like the entrance, offertory, and communion processions are perfectly suited to this phenomenon of psalmodic elaboration.<sup>55</sup> One sees in the psalmodic movement the inspiration for and beginnings of the eventual development of the cycle of proper chants

---

<sup>50</sup> Jeffery, “Monastic Reading,” 45. “Responsorially” means that the psalm verses were sung by a soloist, and after each verse the congregation responded with an antiphon or refrain. The person singing the gradual would more accurately be called a lector or reader than a cantor. He was typically an adolescent boy rather than an adult professional singer. See James W. McKinnon, “Lector Chant vs. Schola Chant: A Question of Historical Plausibility,” in *Labore fratres in unum*, ed. David Hiley (Hildesheim: Georg Olms Verlag, 1995), 201-11.

<sup>51</sup> McKinnon, “Desert Monasticism,” 519. The primitive gradual was a full-fledged reading rather than a psalm sung between readings. In support of this assertion, McKinnon states, “There is no ancient evidence, Jewish or Christian, that readings were customarily paired with complementary psalms.” *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early.” The primitive communion psalm probably predated the psalmodic movement and functioned more as a part of the Mass Ordinary than as a proper chant. The evidence suggests that Psalm 33:8 (*Gustate et videte*) was the psalm used at this point in the service from the earliest times. See *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early;” and McKinnon, “Desert Monasticism,” 519.

<sup>52</sup> McKinnon, “Desert Monasticism,” 509. This use might predate the development of the gradual in the Eucharistic liturgy (*ibid.*). See also Jeffery, “Monastic Reading,” 45.

<sup>53</sup> McKinnon, “Desert Monasticism,” 513.

<sup>54</sup> There are also examples of “ante-evangelio” and “post-evangelio” chants, which might have served as accompaniment to the procession with the Gospel book to and from the ambo.

<sup>55</sup> See Robert F. Taft, *Beyond East and West: Problems in Liturgical Understanding*, 2nd rev. enlarged ed. (Rome: Pontifical Oriental Institute, 1987), 168. According to Taft, the “action points” of the liturgy are the most likely candidates for ritual expansion. And Baldovin notes that “the vacuum at the beginning of the Eucharistic liturgy was filled in by the addition of an entrance psalm.” Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison,” 343. The tendency of ritual points of transition or ritual ‘vacuums’ to be filled in with music is a phenomenon that has occurred in other religious traditions. See J. H. Kwabena Nketia, “Musical Interaction in Ritual Events,” in *Music and the Experience of God*, ed. Mary Collins, et al. (Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1989): 111.

for the Mass. The development of the selective rather than continuous singing of the psalms in the embryonic cathedral Office, and later in the proper chants of the Mass, furthermore, reflects the conscious intervention and creativity of what would become in Rome the *schola cantorum*—a group of musical professionals capable of filling out the liturgical year with the vast corpus of liturgical chant that has come down to us.

### The Incorporation of Litany and Acclamatory Forms in the West

The first clear evidence of the use of *Kyrie Eleison* as an acclamation in the liturgy is from the late fourth century in Jerusalem and Antioch.<sup>56</sup> Its adoption reveals a liturgical situation in which litany<sup>57</sup> and acclamatory forms, which are similar to the antiphonal form of the introit, were replacing other forms in the liturgy. Such forms are more well-matched to the circumstances of the fourth century than earlier forms, especially forms involving silent prayer by the assembly. During this period large assemblies, church buildings, and processions were becoming the norm.<sup>58</sup>

### Liturgical Homogenization

There also began during the fourth century what Bradshaw calls a “liturgical homogenization” throughout the Church.<sup>59</sup> Before this time, variety had been the rule.<sup>60</sup> The

---

<sup>56</sup> Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison,” 336. See also John Wilkinson, ed. and trans., *Egeria’s Travels to the Holy Land*, 3rd ed. (Warminster, England: Aris & Phillips, 1999), 143; and *Apostolic Constitutions* 8: 6, 9. In Rome its use became standard by the sixth century, and perhaps in the fifth. See Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison,” 337.

<sup>57</sup> As Baldovin says, “Litanies represent a developed form of [intercessory] prayer with acclamations or responses.” Baldovin, *Kyrie Eleison*, 336.

<sup>58</sup> Ibid.

<sup>59</sup> See Bradshaw, “Changing Face of Early Liturgy,” 7-9; and Bradshaw, “The Homogenization of Christian Liturgy—Ancient and Modern,” *Studia Liturgica* 26:1 (1996): 1-15.

<sup>60</sup> Bradshaw explains that there “tends to be *variety* between different groups and regions, and not *uniformity*; and that the large measure of agreement in liturgical practice that can be seen in late sources is more often the result of a conscious movement towards standardization that did not begin until the fourth century – and frequently only in the second half of that century – rather than the survival of an ancient way of doing things

reasons for this homogenization were many and complex—primarily a concern for orthodoxy and orthopraxis.<sup>61</sup> The liturgical practices within larger cities and monasteries began to be taken up in less influential areas more so than before. Also, a degree of mutual influence occurred between these larger cities and monasteries. Roman processions at Mass, for example, including the entrance song, have ancestors in the East, as “all of the processional terminology—*antiphona*, *litania*, *Kyrie Eleison*—is taken from the Greek.”<sup>62</sup> This trend toward incorporative homogeneity continued through the eighth century. During these four centuries, many local chant traditions developed, but then were eventually replaced, or at best absorbed, by the traditions of more influential places, especially those of Rome.<sup>63</sup> Early

---

that all Christians shared from the beginning, although that is not to deny that there may well be at least some instances where the latter is the case.” Bradshaw, “Homogenization of Christian Liturgy,” 3. See also Bradshaw, *Eucharistic Origins*, 69-75.

<sup>61</sup> See Bradshaw, “Homogenization of Christian Liturgy,” 6-8. He cites a concern for orthodoxy in the face of heretical movements and the phenomenon of an increasingly mobile population, which resulted in extensive travel throughout the empire and the consequent exposure to liturgical traditions other than one’s own. He continues, “Any tendency to persist in what appeared to be idiosyncratic liturgical observance was likely to have been interpreted as a mark of heterodoxy” (ibid., 7). Another reason for the homogenization was an increasing openness to Pagan ritual practices that came with Christianity’s move into the center of the social and political sphere—“because the character of pagan religion was very similar throughout the Roman Empire, the nature of the Church’s response [within the Empire] tended to be similar everywhere” (ibid., 8). See also Bradshaw, *Eucharistic Origins*, 139-57. It is possible that the development of Mass Proper chants was related to a catechizing or didactic trend that began in the fourth century, which was contemporaneous with the expansion of the faith to a larger and generally less fervent and less well-informed population. See ibid., 140-42.

<sup>62</sup> Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison,” 343. This is not to assert an Eastern origin of Roman chant melodies or proper chant texts. According to Huckle, “None of the forms of Western chant can be traced back to Jewish liturgy or even to early Christian times. The forms of Western chant were developed in the West, even if they were sometimes stimulated from the Orient.” Helmut Huckle, “Toward a New Historical View of Gregorian Chant,” *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 33:3 (Autumn 1980): 439. While there have been many developments and new insights since 1980, for the most part Huckle’s view still stands. See also Huckle, “Die Entwicklung des christlichen Kultgesangs zum Gregorianischen Gesang,” *Römische Quartalschrift* XLVIII (1953): 152ff.

<sup>63</sup> Jeffery explains that “between about the fourth and the eighth centuries A.D., each major city or region seems to have developed its own local repertory of texts and melodies, although some common material circulated widely (with variations), and a few texts were known almost everywhere. Gradually, internal and external pressures provoked movements toward uniformity, and the traditions of the more influential centers began to replace or merge with some of the weaker ones. . . . Most [chant traditions] did not develop music notation, and only some adopted the theory of the eight Byzantine modes. By about the eighth century [the other major chant traditions of the Latin West] had begun to lose ground to the more prestigious liturgy and chant associated with

liturgical homogenization had to do with larger liturgical forms and structures, but during later centuries, the process involved specific prayer texts and chants, which eventually led to the hegemony of the Gregorian chant tradition in the West.

### Early Christian Liturgical Language in the West

When we speak of Roman liturgical chant, we presume the use of the Latin language. Christians also sang in Greek and Syriac, however. Indeed, the language of the Roman Christians was Greek for some time.<sup>64</sup> Christians in the west of North Africa had spoken Latin from the earliest times,<sup>65</sup> but it was not until the third century that it became a *lingua franca* in the Roman West. Indeed, Clement of Rome and Justin Martyr were writing in Greek and quoted a Greek Bible in the mid-first and mid-second centuries, respectively.<sup>66</sup> By the end of the fourth century, however, Ambrose quotes an early form of the Latin Roman Canon in *De Sacramentis*,<sup>67</sup> and by the late second century, some Christians in Rome were using a Latin Bible.<sup>68</sup> The transition to Latin as the primary liturgical language was gradual, but nearly complete by the late fourth century. It was probably finalized during the reign of

---

the city of Rome. The central importance of Rome increased as missionaries pressed the boundaries of the Latin world outward into the lands of the Anglo-Saxons, the Germans and the Scandinavians, the Balts and the West Slavs, and the Finns and the Magyars, establishing Roman-derived liturgies among each of these peoples. As in the East, the increasingly irresistible processes of standardization and centralization led to, and were furthered by, the emergence of written collections of chant texts, the rise of liturgical rule books, the invention of music notation, and the adoption/translation of Greek music theory and the Greek modal system.” Peter Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures: Ethnomusicology in the Study of Gregorian Chant* (Chicago & London: University of Chicago Press, 1992), 6-7.

<sup>64</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Christian Church, Music of the Early.”

<sup>65</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>66</sup> G. G. Willis, *A History of Early Roman Liturgy To the Death of Pope Gregory the Great* (London: Henry Bradshaw Society, 1994), 20-21.

<sup>67</sup> See Ambrose *De sacramentis* 55, 57, *PL* 16.417-62. “Some twenty years earlier the Eucharistic Prayer at Rome is cited in Greek by an African writer, Marius Victorinus, writing in Latin at Rome.” Willis, *History of Early Roman Liturgy*, 21.

<sup>68</sup> Willis, *History of Early Roman Liturgy*, 20-21.



Pope Damasus (366-84), who was involved in Jerome's efforts at the translation of the Bible into Latin.<sup>69</sup>

### The Transition from Psalms as Readings to Psalms as Chant

In the mid fifth century, a transition begins that is critically important to the eventual development of the entrance song in the Roman Rite. During this period, the way of thinking about the psalms in relation to Christian life and worship changes. The result is that by the late sixth century the rendition of psalms in the liturgy has become chant, which Jeffery notes is "a category quite separate from the liturgical readings."<sup>70</sup> This transition from psalms as readings to psalms as chant was not sudden, but based in the increasing influence of monastic liturgical practices.<sup>71</sup> It is only during and after this transition that one would expect to see the development of complex liturgical chants based upon the Davidic psalms.<sup>72</sup>

---

<sup>69</sup> Ibid., 22. Shepherd explains that "Damasus had a major role in the foundation of the Latin liturgy in the Roman Church, which reached a decisive settlement, after two centuries of development, enrichment, and experiment, in the work of Pope Gregory the Great (590-604). This is not to say that there was no Latin rite in Rome before Damasus. Certainly there were congregations using a Latin liturgy for at least a century before his pontificate, if not as early as the second century. But the Latin rite of Rome, as it came to be shaped in the fifth and sixth centuries, cannot be traced prior to his time." Massey H. Shepherd, "The Liturgical Reform of Damasus I," in *Kyriakon: Festschrift Johannes Quasten*, ed. Patrick Granfield and Josef A. Jungmann, vol. 2 (Aschendorff Münster Westfalen, 1970): 847-48.

<sup>70</sup> Jeffery, "Monastic Reading," 82.

<sup>71</sup> Ibid., 53. Here Jeffery suggests that "we must ask what the promoters and practitioners of psalmody in the fourth century and later thought its essential purposes were. Following their testimony across the centuries, we can observe changing approaches to the reading of texts that take us through a series of dichotomies: (1) An original tension between 'psalm as reading' and 'psalm as song' grew into an exegetical confrontation, as an early tradition of studying the psalms as allegorical 'history' conflicted with a monastic approach to the psalm as an ethical 'mirror' reflecting the individual soul. (2) After centuries of pressure from the Christian intelligentsia, the old pedagogy based on Homer, Vergil and the literature of classical antiquity gave way to a new Christian curriculum, in which the Psalter was the first text used to teach beginning readers. (3) This led to a situation in which learning to read the psalms became an essential part of monastic and clerical formation, with the result that the Psalter was perceived as a model or training ground for individual prayer. Psalmody became an activity distinct from liturgical reading, and sermons no longer made reference to the psalm texts" (ibid.).

<sup>72</sup> László Dobszay, "Concerning a Chronology for Chant," in *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, ed. Sean Gallagher, et al. (Burlington, VT: Ashgate, 2003): 225.

### A Fixed Corpus of Presidential Prayers and the Addition of Thursdays in Lent to the Year

It may be the case, as some scholars believe, that the presidential prayers at Mass—the *Collecta*, *Super oblata*, and *Post communionem*—function as conclusions to the entrance, offertory, and communion processions.<sup>73</sup> If so, then it is significant that the majority of liturgical scholars agree that in Rome the annual cycles of proper presidential prayers and readings at Mass did not become fixed until the middle of the seventh century.<sup>74</sup> Following this line of thought, one could conclude that the corpus of proper chants was not fixed until around the mid-seventh century either.

Furthermore, it is clear that the cycle of proper chants for Lent had been fixed before the Thursdays of Lent had become days for liturgical celebration and thus were assigned chants of their own.<sup>75</sup> Since Gregory II (715-31) added Thursdays of Lent to the liturgical year,<sup>76</sup> it must be the case that the proper chants of the Mass were fixed in Rome sometime before Pope Gregory made this change. The development of a fixed corpus of presidential prayers and the addition of Thursdays to Lent are not interdependent, but together suggest that the proper chant tradition of the Roman Rite, including the introit, became fixed at some point between the mid-seventh century and early eighth century.

A cautious interpretation of the evidence, admitting the possibility that the development of the presidential prayers and proper chants are not related, does not allow for

---

Complicated chants are not necessarily descendents of simpler chants, however, “for throughout history many things develop in the opposite direction.” Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 114.

<sup>73</sup> Cobb, “Liturgy of the Word,” 224-25.

<sup>74</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Mass (I),” <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005) (by James W. McKinnon).

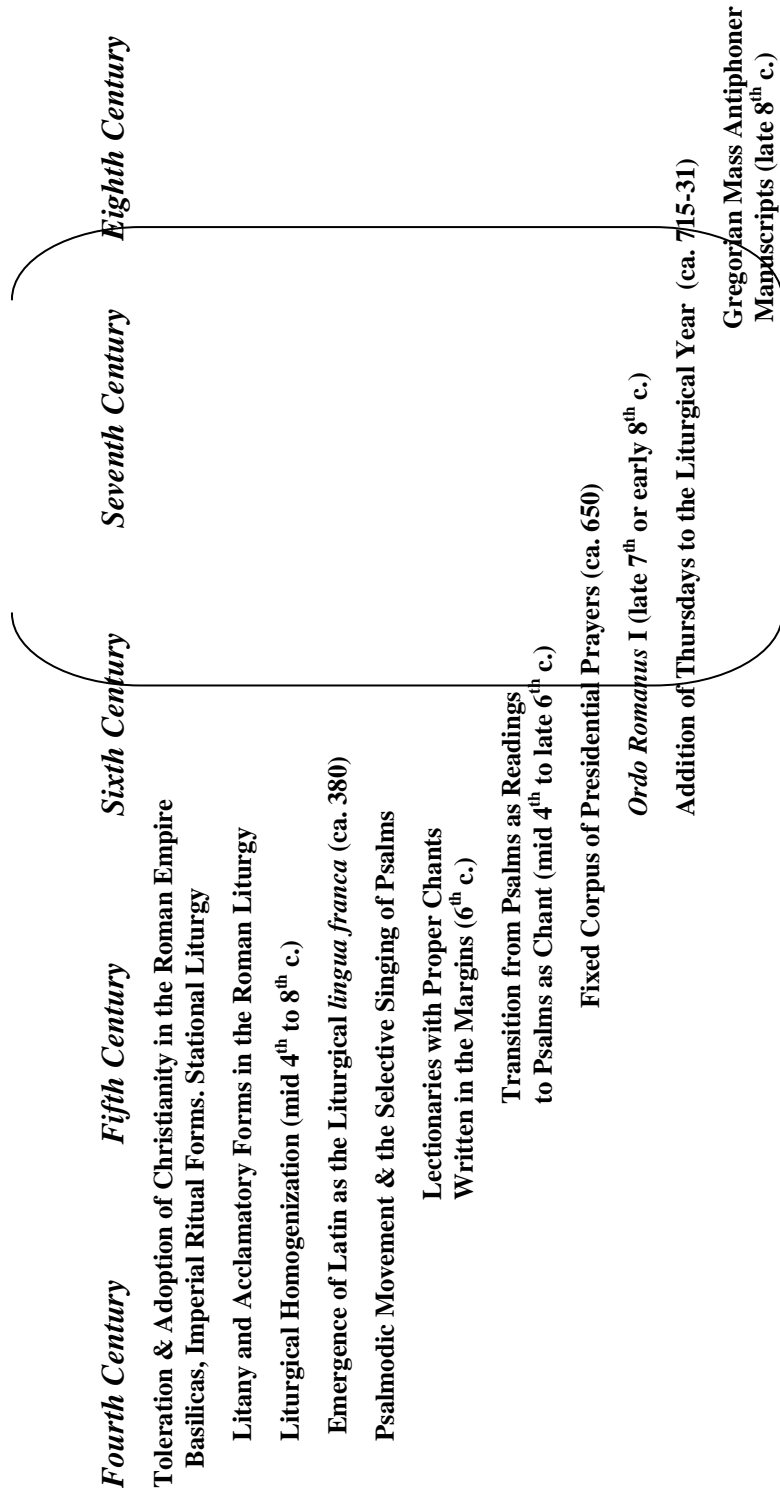
<sup>75</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>76</sup> *Ibid.*

such specificity. The development of the proper chants certainly began after the late fourth century and were part of the Roman Rite by at least the early eighth century. However, one would not expect the proper chants to have developed until after the late sixth century, since the transition from psalms as readings to psalms as chant was not complete until then.<sup>77</sup>

---

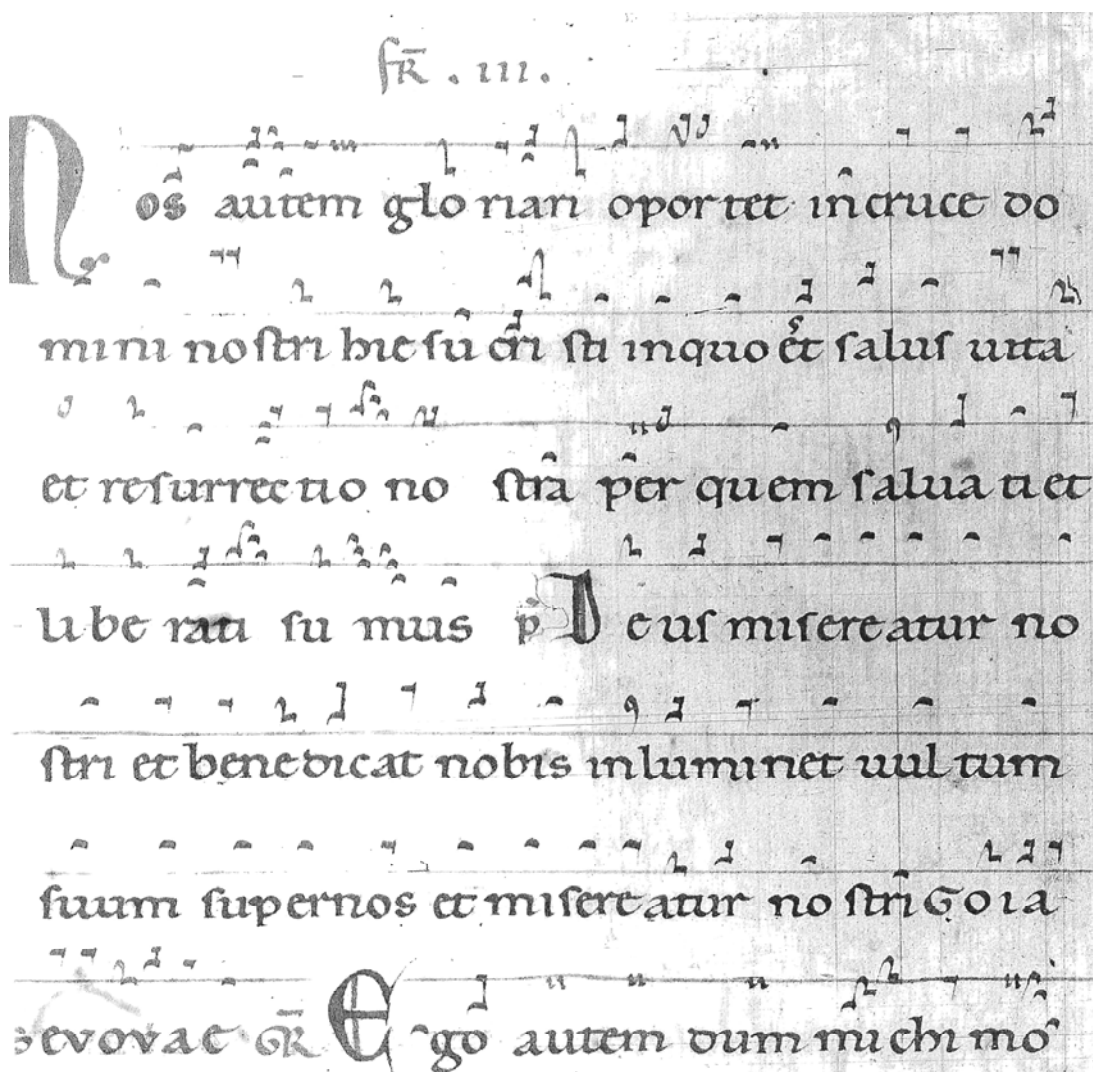
<sup>77</sup> James McKinnon hypothesized that the Roman Mass Proper was created in one grand effort in the late 7<sup>th</sup> century by the Roman Schola Cantorum. See McKinnon, *Advent Project*, passim. His article “Festival, Text and Melody: Chronological Stages in the Life of Chant?,” in *Chant and Its Peripheries: Essays in Honour of Terence Bailey*, ed. Bryan Gillingham and Paul Merkley (Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998): 1-11 gives an earlier version of the hypothesis. Edward Foley has called the book “both an engaging narrative and an encyclopedic reference work.” *Theological Studies* 63:1 (March 2002): 197-98. The book seems an effort to heed the call of Peter Jeffery to create imaginative hypotheses of the early history of chant made in his 1992 book *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*. Some notable chant scholars, including Ruth Steiner, find McKinnon’s hypothesis fascinating, but unconvincing. See, for example, Peter Jeffery’s review in the *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 56:1 (Spring 2003): 169-79. Given the controversial nature of McKinnon’s theory, we will leave it aside in this study. If there was a single grand effort to create the Roman Mass Proper, the question remains as to whether it was more an effort of compilation (the gathering together and filling out of a pre-existing chant corpus) or of creativity (the focused and calculated creation of the entire Proper).



**Figure 2** *Terminus post quem & terminus ante quem* for the Origin of a Gregorian Proper Chant Tradition at Mass

### The Fully-developed Roman Rite Introit

**Example 1** Twelfth-century Manuscript Excerpt of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper.<sup>78</sup>



<sup>78</sup> Rome Biblioteca Vaticana Rossiano 231. 12<sup>th</sup>-century Gradual from Northern Italy. Dry-point staff with 2 colored lines. 148 fols. Dom Mocquereau Collection, Catholic University of America, Washington, DC. Used with permission.

**Example 2** Sixteenth-century Manuscript Excerpt of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper.<sup>79</sup>



The introit chants of the Old Roman and the Gregorian traditions<sup>80</sup> consist of a neumatic<sup>81</sup> antiphon sung and then repeated after a number of sung psalm verses, the number of verses depending on the amount of time required for the entry of the clergy into the presbyterium. The requisite number of verses and repetitions of the antiphon having been completed, the doxology was sung, sometimes divided in two (*Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat*) by a restatement of the antiphon. A *versus ad repetendum* might follow, inserted after the doxology and before the final statement of the antiphon.

The introit is the most enduring form of the entrance song in the Roman liturgy. While its precise origins are uncertain—sometime between the late sixth and late seventh centuries—the reasons the Roman Rite would develop an entrance procession accompanied

<sup>79</sup> Scripps College, Denison Library, Perkins 4, folio 1, recto and verso, Gradual S.XVI. Claremont Colleges Digital Library. Used with permission.

<sup>80</sup> The earliest notated manuscripts date from the late ninth century.

<sup>81</sup> “Neumatic” describes liturgical chant settings with two or three notes per syllable. Such chants are more complex than syllabic chants, but less so than melismatic chants.

by chant, however, are easy to understand.<sup>82</sup> Large worship spaces, long processional routes, elaboration of the liturgy in general, and an enthusiasm for psalmody all contributed to this development. Lamb conjectures that “psalms may have been sung during the gathering of the people . . . and perhaps the formal introit was at last only the final psalm before the service of worship.”<sup>83</sup>

### The *Ordines Romani*

The *Ordines Romani*<sup>84</sup> are liturgical documents that contain texts of certain rites along with rubrics for and descriptions of their enactment, which are often extremely detailed. At their core, they describe the stational and pontifical liturgies of Rome, and in terms of the evolution of liturgical books, they are primitive precursors to the *Pontificale* so-called.<sup>85</sup> All of the extant manuscripts were copied in German and Frankish lands.<sup>86</sup>

The oldest description of the introit that has survived appears in Ordo I, the earliest version of which dates from the late seventh to early eighth century.<sup>87</sup> It is the only one of the *ordines* that in its earliest recension describes a purely Roman practice. It served as the starting point for many of the other *ordines*, several of which also describe the introit. While it is clear that the practices described in the *Ordines Romani* reflect what is basically a

---

<sup>82</sup> Adrian Fortescue, *The Mass: A Study of the Roman Liturgy* (London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1937), 217. Fortescue conjectures that “it is perhaps safest to explain the introit merely as the psalm which inevitably accompanied the entering procession as soon as it was looked upon as a procession at all” (ibid.).

<sup>83</sup> Lamb, *Psalms in Christian Worship*, 86. Lamb cautions, however, that while “it would seem that ceremonial considerations stimulated the development of the repertory . . . evidence for their origins and development is sparse” (ibid.).

<sup>84</sup> For general information about the *Ordines Romani*, see Michel Andrieu, *Les Ordines Romani du haut moyen âge*, vol. 2 (Louvain: *Spicilegium Sacrum Lovaniense*, 1948), XVII-XLIX; Palazzo, *History of Liturgical Books*, 175-85; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 135-55.

<sup>85</sup> Palazzo, *History of Liturgical Books*, 178, 181, 195-99.

<sup>86</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 260.

<sup>87</sup> Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 2:38-51. See also Palazzo, *A History of Liturgical Books*, 179; Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 260-61; and Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 496.

common practice that had been transported north from Rome—antiphons sung with intervening psalm verses during the entrance procession at Mass—there do seem to be significant differences between them. It is especially the practice after the singing of the *Gloria Patri* that seems to vary in the different *ordines*.<sup>88</sup> The basic form, nevertheless, is clearly *Antiphon - Psalm - Gloria Patri - Antiphon*, with exceptions for the number of psalm verses used, the repetition of the antiphon between psalm verses, the splitting of the *Gloria Patri* into two parts, and the inclusion of *versus ad repetendum*. The *versus ad repetendum*, perhaps a Frankish addition to the Roman practice,<sup>89</sup> were psalm verses sung after the end of the doxology but before the concluding antiphon.<sup>90</sup>

While the record preserved in the *Ordines Romani* does reflect some true regional variations in the structure of the introit at Mass, one must take into account the possibility that some of these variations are the result of more and less successful descriptions of a common practice, rather than accounts of significant differences.<sup>91</sup> Ordo IV, for example, is

---

<sup>88</sup> For example, Steiner notes that in Ordo I “the procedure after the singing of the *Gloria Patri* is not wholly clear: it describes the pontiff praying before the altar during the singing of the *Gloria* ‘until the repetition of the *versus*’.” *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit (i).” See also Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 13-14; and Willis, *History of the Early Roman Liturgy*, 72-77.

<sup>89</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 21. See also Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 109. He states, “These *versus ad repetendum* appear in both the earliest Frankish sources and the Old Roman ones, also for the communion.”

<sup>90</sup> See Dyer, “Introit and Communion Psalmody,” 110. Metzinger explains that “some MSS give a second introit verse, often specified as ‘*versus ad repetendum*,’ that is sung before the repetition of the antiphon. This is taken from the same psalm as the introit verse, often but not always, the next verse of the psalm. There are examples of this verse being chosen apparently because its text makes a good introduction to the repetition of the antiphon. The choice of the verse for the ‘*versus ad repetendum*’ varies considerably from MS to MS, suggesting that the use of a special verse for repetition is not an old practice.” Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 32-33. Steiner concurs, saying, “A number of manuscripts give supplementary verses, sometimes explicitly called *versus ad repetendum*, for introits, and also for communions; but the sources frequently disagree as to the choice of the verse, and . . . they would not disagree if the practice were very old.” *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit (i).”

<sup>91</sup> Dyer suggests that “several of the *ordines* outline in greater or lesser detail how the introit and communion chants were sung, from which an idea of their complete form can be extrapolated.” Dyer, “Introit and



not a transcription of any particular liturgical celebration. Rather, as Vogel points out, it is “a deliberate adaptation of Ordo I to Frankish conditions. The author was trying to establish the Roman Rite in Gaul by means of a compromise with prevailing Frankish customs.”<sup>92</sup> And he goes so far as to call Ordo XV—also a Frankish recension of Ordo I along with some other sources—a “work of propaganda.”<sup>93</sup> Its purpose was to promote liturgical uniformity through the Romanization of the varied forms of the liturgy in use at the time in the Frankish lands. The author might never have even been to Rome.<sup>94</sup>

To be sure, one could say much more about the complex and intriguing details of the *Ordines Romani*. But the concern here specifically is with their descriptions of the introit. The table below, then, helps get to the point.<sup>95</sup> It outlines the structure of the introit in the relevant *ordines*. The paragraph numbers of the *ordines* are from Andrieu.

---

Communion Psalmody,” 115. Tietze, on the other hand, considers OR XV a “highly gallicanized” version of OR I and says it bears “little resemblance” to the introit as described in OR I. Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 21.

<sup>92</sup> C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 161.

<sup>93</sup> *Ibid.*, 153.

<sup>94</sup> *Ibid.*, 153. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 21.

<sup>95</sup> The design of this table is adapted from Dyer, “Introit and Communion Psalmody,” 115-16. Other of the *Ordines Romani* also mention the introit, but provide no significant details of its enactment.

**Table 1** The introit as described in the *Ordines Romani*<sup>96</sup>

<b>Ordo I:</b> (37, 40), 44, 50-52 <sup>97</sup> (late 7 <sup>th</sup> to early 8 <sup>th</sup> c. Roman)	A    V1 [A? V2 A? V3 A?...] [A]    G [A?]    S [A?]    [VR?]    A
<b>Ordo IV:</b> 14-20 <sup>98</sup> (late 8 <sup>th</sup> c. Romano-Frankish)	[A]    [V1] [A? V2 A? V3 A?...] [A]    G [A?]    S [A]    VR    A
<b>Ordo V:</b> 14, 18, 21, 22 + <b>VI:</b> 22 <sup>99</sup> (late 9 <sup>th</sup> c. Romano-Germanic)	A    [V1] [A? V2 A? V3 A?...] [A]    G [A?]    S [A?]    [VR?]    [A]
<b>Ordo XV:</b> 13, 15 <sup>100</sup> (late 8 <sup>th</sup> c. Romano-Frankish)	A    V1 [A? V2 A? V3 A?...] [A]    G [A?]    S [A]    VR    [A]
<b>Ordo XV:</b> 122 <sup>101</sup>	A    V1 [A? V2? A? V3? A?...] A    G A    S A    VR    A
<b>Ordo XVII:</b> 18, 19, 25, 28 <sup>102</sup> (late 8 <sup>th</sup> c. Romano-Frankish)	A    V1 [A? V2? A? V3? A?...] [A]    G [A?]    S [A]    VR    A
<b>Ordo XXXV:</b> 1 <sup>103</sup> (late 10 <sup>th</sup> to early 11 <sup>th</sup> c. Romano-Germanic)	A    V1 [A? V2 A? V3 A?...] [A]    G [A?]    S [A?]    [VR?]    [A]

<sup>96</sup> A = antiphon, V1 = first psalm verse, V2/V3 = additional psalm verses, G = *Gloria Patri* (first half of the doxology), S = *Sicut erat* (second half of the doxology), VR = *versus ad repetendum*. Brackets indicate either elements that probably were part of the structure but are not mentioned in the text, or elements that might or might not have been part of the structure, depending upon one's reading of the text and understanding of the nature of the sources. The latter are distinguished with a question mark.

<sup>97</sup> For the text, see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 2:79-82. In volume 1 Andrieu provides information on the manuscripts and editions of each of the *ordines*. In the remaining volumes he provides substantial background studies on each of them, which appear before his transcription of each text. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 260-63; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 155-60.

<sup>98</sup> For the text, see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 2:159. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 263; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 160-61.

<sup>99</sup> For the text, see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 2:211-213, 244. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 264; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 161-62. Ordo VI is basically a poor synopsis of Ordo I. Its description of the introit is nearly identical to that of Ordo V, except that one finds in it a repetition of the antiphon after the doxology. See Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 162; Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 264; and especially Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 231-38.

<sup>100</sup> For the text see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 3:97-98. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 264-66; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 168.

<sup>101</sup> For the text, see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 3:120.

<sup>102</sup> For the text, see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 3:178. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 266; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 168-69.

<sup>103</sup> For the text, see Andrieu, *Ordines Romani*, 4:73. See also Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 267; and C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 176.

What one derives from these manuscripts regarding the structure of the introit depends primarily upon one's view of the *Ordines* as a whole. Do they represent a wide-variety of substantial Frankish and German adaptations of the Roman practice, or, as suggested above, do they represent what is basically a common practice that has been described more successfully in some of the *ordines* and less so in others?

In Ordo I, for example, what the text says for certain is that an antiphon is sung (*Et mox incipit prior scolae antiphonam ad introitum*<sup>104</sup>), presumably followed by psalm verses since earlier in the document the choir is asked who will sing the psalm (*Quis psallit?*<sup>105</sup>), and they answer that they will (*Ille et Ille*<sup>106</sup>). As the pope approaches the altar, the choir begins singing the *Gloria Patri* and then the *Sicut erat*, which are followed by a repetition of the antiphon.<sup>107</sup> The structure, then, is A-V1V2V3...-GS-A.<sup>108</sup> But the text is not perfectly clear. Its description of the singing of the *Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat* allows for the possibility that these two parts of the doxology were sung separately and that the antiphon was sung in between them, even though no such antiphon is mentioned in the text:<sup>109</sup>

*Et respiciens ad priorem scolae annuit ei ut dicat Gloriam; et prior scolae inclinat se pontifici et inponit. Quartus vero scolae praecedit ante pontificem,*

---

<sup>104</sup> Ordo I, no. 44.

<sup>105</sup> Ibid., no. 37.

<sup>106</sup> Ibid., no. 37.

<sup>107</sup> Ibid., nos. 50-52.

<sup>108</sup> This agrees with Tietze's analysis. See Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 262. Based on his own analysis of the *Ordines Romani*, Peter Jeffery concludes that "the pope's entrance procession was marked by the Introit. The litany was sung upon arrival at the altar area, where the confession would be in a Roman basilica. The candles and other processional paraphernalia were put in their places. The pope intoned the Gloria, then greeted the people and said the collect." Peter Jeffery, "The Meanings and Functions of *Kyrie Eleison*," 192-93. He also suggests that "the general practice seems to have been that the Introit antiphon specifically accompanied the movements of the pope, whereas the litany or the *Kyrie* marked the arrival of the entire procession, though it was begun at the Pope's signal. As a result the two do not always occur in a fixed order; the litany might precede the Introit, but if it did it was not restarted after the Introit" (ibid., 188).

<sup>109</sup> See Dyer, "Introit and Communion Psalmody," 116.

*ut ponat oratorium ante altare; et accedens pontifex orat super ipsum usque ad repetitionem versus* (no. 50). *Nam diaconi surgunt quando dicit: Sicut erat, ut saluent altaris latera, prius duo et duo vicissim redeunt ad pontificem. Et surgens pontifex osculat evangelia et altare et accedit ad sedem et stat versus ad orientem* (no. 51). *Scola vero, finita antiphona, inponit Kyrieleyson* (no. 52).

One might also interpret the text to describe a *versus ad repetendum* following the doxology.<sup>110</sup> Alternatively, then, the structure might have been: A-V1V2V3... followed by either G-A-S-A-VR-A or GS-VR-A.<sup>111</sup> Such a structure might indeed make sense, given its similarity to the fuller description of the introit in Ordo XV (see Table 1).

Finally, the question remains as to whether the antiphon was repeated after each verse of the Psalm. Indeed, Jungmann, while not tending toward such a view, does admit it as a possibility.<sup>112</sup> And McKinnon, certainly one of the world's experts on the proper chants of the Mass, sees the repetition of the antiphon as a distinct possibility.<sup>113</sup> In truth, except for Ordo XV, the *Ordines Romani* never tell of the repetition of the antiphon after the psalm. While Ordo XV's account only explicitly indicates the singing of one psalm verse (other than

---

<sup>110</sup> See Dyer, "Introit and Communion Psalmody," 116. It is possible the text indicates that the psalm was repeated after the *Gloria Patri* before the *Sicut erat*, but this is quite unlikely, since no such practice is found anywhere else in the *Ordines Romani*, nor in any other source. Tietze interprets "*ad repetitionem versus*" to refer to the antiphon sung after the entire doxology and not to any *versus ad repetendum*. One might question this interpretation, however, because the antiphon is mentioned again in no. 52. In addition, he takes "*nam*" ("*Nam diaconi surgunt...*") to mean "meanwhile," and argues thereby that the *Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat* had no intervening antiphon. Tietze, *Hymn Introit for the Liturgical Year*, 262.

<sup>111</sup> For the most part, this structure agrees with Dyer's analysis. See Dyer, "Introit and Communion Psalmody," 116.

<sup>112</sup> He states, "Whether it was also repeated after each single verse of the psalm cannot be determined so far as the city of Rome itself is concerned." Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:323. See also *ibid.*, 1:323 n. 13. He also notes that in some Frankish MSS, "we come upon [the] extension of the introit through the practice . . . of repeating the antiphon after each verse of the psalm" (*ibid.*, 1:325).

<sup>113</sup> James W. McKinnon, ed., *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991), 92. Here McKinnon takes the repetition of the antiphon as a matter of fact. He nuances this view later (2000), stating, "We do not know how often the antiphon was sung at this time, whether only at the beginning and end of the psalm, or also in some alternating pattern between the verses." McKinnon, *Advent Project*, 195.

the *versus ad repetendum* at the end), Dyer presumes more verses would have been sung if necessary to accompany the presider to the presbyterium.<sup>114</sup> If this is the case, the antiphon was almost certainly sung after each psalm verse because Ordo XV directs that the antiphon should be sung after the first verse. Perhaps the strongest argument for the repetition of the antiphon lies in the melodic and modal relationship of the antiphon to the psalm tones to which the verses and doxology were sung. The conclusion of the tone seems to lead back to the melody of the antiphon rather than to a repetition of the tone (see Examples 1 & 2 above). Melodically, the antiphon's mode establishes which tone will be used for the psalm. The tone's conclusion, Huglo explains, "is chosen with the first notes of the antiphon in mind," and "the psalm tone used for the recitation of the psalm itself is often musically incomplete without the antiphon."<sup>115</sup>

The question as to whether the antiphon was repeated after the psalm verses is an important one, even if it cannot be definitively answered. If it is not repeated, the psalm is primary, with the antiphon sung only at the beginning and at the end of the introit. If it is, the antiphon is primary, sung at the beginning of the introit, then repeated after each psalm verse and after both the *Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat*, and finally at the end after any *versus ad repetendum*. The difference between the two modes of performance expresses something

---

<sup>114</sup> Dyer states, "The schola cantorum prolonged the chant until all of the clergy and acolytes had entered the presbyterium and the pope gave the signal to conclude." Dyer, "Introit and Communion Psalmody," 115. He is referring here specifically to Ordo XV, although he assumes the same holds true for the accounts of the introit in the other *Ordines Romani*.

<sup>115</sup> Ibid. *New Grove*, s.v. "Antiphon" (by Michel Huglo). This assertion assumes the melodies and psalm tones in the eighth and ninth centuries are the same as those to which we have access in the extant notated manuscripts. Such an assumption is justified, given the stability of the introit texts found in the earliest extant non-notated manuscripts, which date from shortly after the time the earliest *Ordines Romani* were copied. As will be noted below, melodies were the vehicle for the accurate transmission of the texts.

about the relative theological and liturgical importance of the antiphon. The underlying question is, Does Ordo XV describe an adapted and elaborated version of the original Roman practice, or is it simply the most successful description of the Roman introit that survives?

If one follows the more conservative mode of interpretation, two models of the introit emerge through the analysis of the *Ordines Romani*: first, the more basic, psalm-centered Roman introit as described in Ordo I and in the Romano-Germanic Ordos V(+VI) and XXXV, and, second, the more elaborate Romano-Frankish introit as described in Ordos IV, XV, and XVII, which certainly included *versus ad repetendum* in addition to either a single psalm verse followed by the antiphon or several psalm verses with a repetition of the antiphon after each.

While the *Ordines Romani* document the use of the introit at Mass, it is impossible to know what the melodies of these introit chants were like. Such certainty comes only later with the advent of notated liturgical books. The story of the development and eventual eclipse of other chant traditions by Gregorian chant is a complex one, the details of which are outside the scope of this study. It must be sufficient to say with Fassler and Jeffery that “the medieval belief that the ‘Gregorian’ repertory was Roman assured its eventual hegemony over most of the other Western local traditions.”<sup>116</sup> Even in the papal liturgy, Gregorian

---

<sup>116</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 93. In addition to Gregorian and Old-Roman chant, the other dialects for which there is evidence include Gallican, Beneventan and other southern Italian traditions, the traditions of the Italian north in Ravenna and Aquileia, and Mozarabic chant. Fassler and Jeffery explain that “only the local tradition of Milan, called Ambrosian chant because it was alleged to have been created by St. Ambrose, managed to survive into the twentieth century, despite some Romanization during the sixteenth century” (ibid., 94). There is also some evidence of a Celtic chant dialect. See *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant” (by Kenneth Levy, et al.) <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005). For a study of the transmission of chant melodies, see Manuel Pedro Ferreira, “Music at Cluny: The Tradition of Gregorian Chant for the Proper of the Mass. Melodic Variants and Microtonal Nuances,” 2 vols (PhD diss., Princeton University,

chant had completely replaced the ancient melodic tradition of Rome (Old Roman chant) by no later than the thirteenth century.<sup>117</sup> Thus, while there were at one time many regional chant dialects in the Latin West, eventually, as Fassler and Jeffery note,

the Gregorian chant tradition ultimately prevailed. Gregorian chant may have been a synthesis of Roman and northern (Gallican or Frankish) traditions, for the earliest surviving manuscripts (from the eighth to the tenth centuries) do not come from Rome but from farther north, mostly from within the Frankish Kingdom or Carolingian Empire. Thus they date from the period when a standardized liturgy of Roman origin (but one that included non-Roman elements) was being assembled and imposed on all the churches in the domain ruled by Charlemagne (c. 742-804).<sup>118</sup>

This Gregorian chant became and still remains the official chant of the Roman Church.

### The Manuscript Tradition

#### *Terminology*

Texts of proper chants for the Mass first appear as supplementary material in books of liturgical readings—either lectionaries or psalters.<sup>119</sup> By at least the sixth century, lectionaries that contained proper chants—sometimes nothing more than notes in the

---

1997). See also, Sam Barrett, "Music and Writing: On the Compilation of Paris Bibliothèque National Lat 1154," *Early Music History* 16 (1997): 55-96; *Grove Online*, s.v. "Old Roman Chant" (by Helmut Huckle, et al.), <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005); Huckle, "Toward a New Historical View;" Peter Jeffery, "The Lost Chant Tradition of Early Christian Jerusalem: Some Possible Melodic Survivals in the Byzantine and Latin Chant Repertories," *Early Music History* 11 (1992): 151-90; McKinnon, *The Advent Project*; Nino Pirrotta, "The Oral and Written Traditions of Music," in *Music and Culture in Italy from the Middle Ages to the Baroque: A Collection of Essays* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1984), 72-79; and Leo Treitler, *With Voice and Pen: Coming to Know Medieval Song and How It Was Made* (New York & Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007). Richard Crocker, in contrast, prefers to leave such "prehistory" alone, regarding speculations about it as "romantic fantasy," and advocates returning to a focus on the extant manuscripts. See his "Gregorian Studies in the Twenty-First Century," *Plainsong and Medieval Music* 4 (1995): 33-86; and then Treitler, *With Voice and Pen*, xi, for a counter argument.

<sup>117</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 94. See also Huckle, "Toward a New Historical View," 466. For a consideration of how religious orders such as the Cluniacs, Cistercians, and Carthusians influenced the development of liturgical chant, see *Grove Online*, s.v. "Plainchant."

<sup>118</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 93.

<sup>119</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 63.

margins—existed in the West.<sup>120</sup> At first, however, these chants were mostly graduals, tracts, and alleluias, rather than introits.<sup>121</sup> An Ambrosian fragment (ca. 700) is the earliest extant example of what one could call an antiphoner,<sup>122</sup> and the earliest extant collection of the Gregorian Mass proper dates from the late eighth century.<sup>123</sup> In the more fully-developed manuscript tradition, which, as Jeffery says, is a “product of the move toward uniformity and standardization,”<sup>124</sup> one typically finds the introit in books called the *Graduale* or *Antiphonale Missarum*.<sup>125</sup> The definitive edition of the early Gregorian Mass Antiphoner manuscripts is still Hesbert’s *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*.<sup>126</sup> In it he transcribes the contents of six manuscripts without musical notation, all of which date between the late eighth and early tenth centuries. They are of Northern European provenance,<sup>127</sup> but their contents are Roman (Gregorian, not Old Roman)<sup>128</sup> with some variants that reflect local usage:

---

<sup>120</sup> Ibid., 64. See Klaus Gamber, *Codices Liturgici Latini Antiquiores*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Spicilegii Friburgensis Subsidia 1 (Freiburg: Universitätsverlag, 1968), no. 250.

<sup>121</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 63.

<sup>122</sup> Jeffery describes it as “a double palimpsest fragment now at St. Gall.” Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 64.

<sup>123</sup> Ibid. See Gamber, *Codices Liturgici Latini Antiquiores*, no. 550.

<sup>124</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 9.

<sup>125</sup> The two terms refer to the same type of liturgical book. The term “Mass Antiphoner” will be used here to avoid confusion between the Gradual (the book containing the proper chants of the Mass) and the gradual (the responsorial psalm).

<sup>126</sup> René-Jean Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex, d’après les Graduel de Monza et les Antiphonaires de Rheinau, du Mont-Blandin, de Compiègne, de Corbie, et de Senlis* (1935; repr. Rome: Herder, 1967). For a list of pre-notation graduals, see Peter Jeffery, “The Oldest Sources of the Graduale: A Preliminary Checklist of MS Copied before about 900 A.D.,” *Journal of Musicology* 2:3 (Summer 1983): 316-21. Jeffery admits that this list is in need of “extensive revision, expansion, and improvement.” Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 64 n.26.

<sup>127</sup> Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, IX, XII, XV, XIX, XXI, XXIII, XXV. See also *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.”

<sup>128</sup> Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, XXXI-XXXIV. See also Theodore Karp, *Aspects of Orality and Formularity in Gregorian Chant* (Evanston, IL: Northwestern University Press, 1998), 317.



- The Gradual of Monza or *Modoetiensis* (8<sup>th</sup> c.)
- The Mass Antiphoner of Rheinau or *Rhenaugiensis* (8<sup>th</sup>-9<sup>th</sup> c.)
- The Mass Antiphoner of Mont-Blandin or *Blandiniensis* (8<sup>th</sup>-9<sup>th</sup> c.)
- The Mass Antiphoner of Compiègne or *Compendiensis* (9<sup>th</sup> c.)
- The Mass Antiphoner of Corbie or *Corbiensis* (9<sup>th</sup>-10<sup>th</sup> c.)
- The Mass Antiphoner of Senlis or *Silvanectensis* (9<sup>th</sup> c.)

**Table 2** The introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper as found in the *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex* manuscripts<sup>129</sup>

Rheinau	Mont-Blandin	Compiègne	Corbie	Senlis
FERIA V CENA DOMINI	FERIA V QUOD EST CENA DOMINI	FERIA. V <sup>a</sup> CAENE DOMINI	FERIA V QUOD EST IN CAENA DOMINI. CAP. LXXVII	FERIA V. QUE EST IN CENA DOMINI
ANT. Nos autem gloria oportuit in cruce Domini nostri Ihesu Christi in quo & vita est & resurrectio nostra per quem salvati & liberati sumus.	ANT. Nobis autem gloriari oportet in cruce Domini.	ANT. Nos autem gloriari oportet. ut supra.	ANT. Nos autem gloriari oportet.	[ANT.] Nos autem gloriari oportet.
PSALM. Cantate Domino.	PSALM. Cantate Domino	PSALM. Cantate. I.		PSALM. Cantate Domino.

The chant texts contained in these manuscripts and their respective liturgical assignments are nearly identical, and represent the proper Mass chant tradition after it had developed into a stable and fixed corpus.<sup>130</sup>

<sup>129</sup> Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, 93.

If the more conservative interpretation of the *Ordines Romani* above is correct, these manuscripts reflect some degree of regional variation, especially in terms of their use of *versus ad repetendum*. Rheinau and Corbie contain no *versus ad repetendum* at all, perhaps reflecting the introit practice as described in Ordos I, V(+VI), and XXXV. *Versus ad repetendum* are found throughout Compiègne and Senlis, on the other hand.<sup>131</sup> In this these manuscripts are similar to Ordos IV, XV, and XVII and are clearly within the Romano-Frankish sphere of influence.<sup>132</sup> Mont-Blandin is a unique case. It does make use of *versus*

---

<sup>130</sup> Levy notes that “in these late 8<sup>th</sup>- to early 10<sup>th</sup>-century sources the number of chant texts agrees closely with the contents of the 11<sup>th</sup>-century noted gradual from St. Gallen, Switzerland, *CH-SGs* 339.” *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.” The assignment of psalm verses to the antiphons is also quite stable, but does sometimes vary from one manuscript to the next. See Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 299. For example, the introit for the first Mass of St. John the Apostle is assigned a different psalm in Corbie than in the other manuscripts. See Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, no. 13. Note that the Monza manuscript contains only Lectionary chants, so is not included in the table.

<sup>131</sup> There are approximately 38 *versus ad repetendum* among the Compiègne introits—infrequent for some reason during the Easter season—and approximately 72 in Senlis.

<sup>132</sup> For the texts of the *versus ad repetendum*, see Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, passim. Indeed, Compiègne and Senlis are located very near each other just a few miles north of Paris. Tietze asserts that the Compiègne and Senlis manuscripts are similar to Ordo XV in their use of only one psalm verse after the first time the antiphon is sung. He comes to this conclusion because the *versus ad repetendum* in these manuscripts are often the second verse of the psalm. This is usually the case, as he notes, in the Christmas season. It is also true on other days of the year, such as Easter Sunday. See Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 22. It is often the case, however, that the *versus ad repetendum* are not the second verse of the psalm, but rather the verse of the psalm that is most relevant to the feast. See, for example Palm Sunday where the introit is *Deus Deus meus* (Ps. 21:2) and the “*repet.*” is *Diviserunt* (Ps. 21:19), the Octave of Easter where the introit is *Exultate Deo* (Ps. 80:2) and the *repet.* is *Et cibavit illos* (Ps. 80:17), the Ascension where the introit is *Omnes gentes* (Ps. 46:2) and the *repet.* is *Ascendit Deus* (Ps. 46:6), Pentecost where the introit is *Exsurgat Deus* (Ps. 67:2) and the *repet.* is *Confirma hoc Deus* (Ps. 67:29), and the Nativity of John the Baptist where the introit is *Bonum est* (Ps. 91:2) and the *repet.* is *Iustus et palma* (Ps. 91:13). Interestingly, for the Christmas introit (*Cantate Domino*, Ps. 97:1), the second verse of the psalm (*Notum fecit*), which is employed as the *repet.*, is also the verse most relevant to the feast. In other extant manuscripts, the text assignments vary greatly. The importance of the *versus ad repetendum* is a bit of a mystery, but if indeed the Romano-Frankish tradition came to use only one psalm verse (the first) before the doxology, perhaps the *versus ad repetendum* was a means of retrieving the thematic connection between antiphon, psalm, and feast that had been lost. Also, it is not wholly clear whether the *versus ad repetendum* are verses that have not yet been sung, or if they are repetitions of psalm verses that had already been sung in the first part of the introit before the doxology. Tietze also interprets Ordos IV and XVII to allow for “one or more *versus ad repetendum*,” but Compiègne, Senlis, and Mont-Blandin never indicate more than one. See Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 263, 266; and Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, passim. On non-psalmic *versus ad repetendum* see *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit.” Steiner states here that sometimes the verses are chosen “so that their texts introduce the introit antiphon in its final repetition; in consequence they have a

*ad repetendum*, but infrequently, and only on the more important days of the liturgical year.<sup>133</sup>

The earliest extant *notated* Gregorian Mass Antiphoner manuscripts are from the late ninth century.<sup>134</sup> There also exist a handful of notated Old Roman Mass Antiphoner manuscripts. These date from a later period—the eleventh century and after—and contain texts and liturgical assignments nearly identical to those in the *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex* collection, with propers for certain local feasts and additions to the liturgical calendar comprising the primary differences between the Old Roman and Gregorian manuscripts.<sup>135</sup> The key difference between the two traditions is melodic rather than textual.<sup>136</sup> There is no archetypal Mass Antiphoner. Liturgical books, as Huglo and Hiley

---

striking resemblance to introit tropes. The supplementary verse for a non-psalmodic introit is very often drawn from the same biblical passage as the introit antiphon” even when the first verse is from a psalm. *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit” (by Ruth Steiner).

<sup>133</sup> Palm Sunday, Easter Sunday, the Octave of Easter, Ascension, Pentecost, and the Nativity of John the Baptist. See Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, nos. 73a, 80, 87, 102a, 106, and 119. When Compiègne, Senlis, and Mont-Blandin all employ *versus ad repetendum* on the same day, the texts assignments are nearly always identical. In a few instances, Mont-Blandin differs from the others, however. See, for example, Easter Sunday. Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, no. 80. In at least one instance, Compiègne and Senlis disagree. See, for example, the Third Sunday of Easter. Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, no. 89. Here the introit assignment is also different, which explains the different *versus ad repetendum*.

<sup>134</sup> Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 299. The earliest of the noted graduals appeared at the end of the ninth century in Brittany, Germany, and northern France, but later in other areas: England in the late tenth century, Aquitaine in the early eleventh century, and Italy sometime in the eleventh century. Manuscripts in which every chant is notated appear in the first part of the tenth century. Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 90-91.

<sup>135</sup> *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit (i)” (by James W. McKinnon). He states, “Introits continued to be added to the repertory after the ninth century, largely to accommodate new sanctoral dates and votive Masses” (ibid.). The surviving Mass Antiphoner manuscripts of the Old Roman chant tradition are all quite late: Cologny-Genève, Bibliotheca Bodmeriana, C 74 (Santa Cecilia in Trastevere, 1071); Vatican City, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, Vat. Lat. 5319; and Vatican City, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, Archivio di S. Pietro, F 22. Dyer, “Introit and Communion Psalmody,” 119. Three more Old-Roman manuscripts of lesser importance also survive. See John Boe, “Old Roman Votive-Mass Chants in Florence, Biblioteca Riccardiana, MSS 299 and 300 and Vatican City, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, Archivio San Pietro F 11: A Source Study,” in *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, ed. Sean Gallagher, et al. (Burlington, VT: Ashgate, 2003), 216-318.

<sup>136</sup> Connolly states, “The liturgy and texts of the two traditions are essentially the same. . . . The melodies to these texts differ, but not completely. There is, in most cases, a similarity of melodic contour between the Old

note, are nearly always “composed of layers of material and the result of distinct traditions having been forged into a new usage.”<sup>137</sup> One must also remember that such books are the result of local attempts to meet the practical needs of particular worshipping communities, so that their contents inevitably differ somewhat from place to place.

The purpose of the Mass Antiphoner was to collect in one book the proper texts to be sung at Mass. This means that, in addition to the introit, one would usually find the other processional chants with their psalm verses—the offertory and communion—along with the gradual, the tract, and the alleluia and its verse. The contents of this type of liturgical book and what it was called were never codified, and often one or more of the chant genres was missing or collected in a separate book. Northern European manuscripts tend to be more comprehensive, while the Church in Rome was more likely to subdivide the genres into smaller, separate collections. The *Cantatorium* often exists separately from the *Antiphonale*

---

Roman and Gregorian versions of the same text.” Thomas H. Connolly, “Introits and Archetypes: Some Archaisms of the Old Roman Chant,” *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 25 (1972): 158. He goes on to explain that “the Old Roman Introit Antiphons are more formulaic in style than the Gregorian. . . . The Gregorian Introit Antiphons have a general melodic resemblance to the Old Roman, even at points where the latter appear most formulaic. . . . These two facts taken together suggest that both [dialects] stem from a state of affairs that was at least as formulaic as the Old Roman. The evolution of dissimilar chant into a common type is highly improbable. The Old Roman Introit repertory, then, in so far as it has preserved more of this formulaic character, is surely close to this earlier state of affairs [and] the evolutionary development of Introit Antiphons seems to have been from formula to relaxation of formula. Since the Old Roman Introits are from comparatively late manuscripts and represent an apparently decayed formulaic style, it seems likely that at some earlier stage, Introits were sung in an even more formulaic way. It may, indeed, have been a completely formulaic style, akin to the recitation of the psalm tones” (ibid., 168-69). This hypothesis has since been challenged by Huckle in “Toward a New Historical View.” It is possible that the more formulaic tradition reflects a later practice, if it conforms more systematically to modal theory/categories. It might also be the case that, whatever dialect is earlier, the differences simply reflect cultural tastes—one typically tending toward elaboration (the Frankish) and the other toward formulism (the Roman). In short, the most one can say for certain is that the Old Roman melodies when compared to the Gregorian are “somehow related yet quite different.” Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 93.

<sup>137</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Gradual” (by Michel Huglo and David Hiley), <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005).

*Missarum* and contains the solo proper chants of the Mass (graduals, tracts, alleluias),<sup>138</sup> which are usually also included in the *Antiphonale Missarum* along with the choral chants (introits, offertories, communions).<sup>139</sup> Other relevant manuscript types included the *Responsoriale* (graduals) and *Antiphonarius* (introit and communion antiphons).<sup>140</sup>

From the late eighth century on, the contents of the Roman Mass Antiphoner stayed remarkably stable.<sup>141</sup> All of the extant Mass Antiphoner manuscripts start with Advent. This is in contrast to many of the earliest Lectionary and Sacramentary manuscripts, which begin with the Nativity of the Lord,<sup>142</sup> and suggests that the process of collecting antiphons into a book began later than the collecting of readings and presidential prayers. This later date of compilation does not necessarily imply anything about the antiquity of a stable corpus of Mass antiphons, however, because the compilation of antiphons into manuscripts took place only after the transition from oral to written transmission of chants had begun. A fully-developed and stable corpus of proper chants for the Mass was probably in use long before it was written down in manuscripts.

---

<sup>138</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 96.

<sup>139</sup> See Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 67.

<sup>140</sup> C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 357. One of the major results of the research done by Antoine Chavasse is to have proven that the Mass Antiphoner and the Mass Lectionary evolved in tandem (ibid., 397 n. 193). See also Chavasse, "Les plus anciens types du lectionnaire et de l'antiphonaire romains de la Messe," *Revue bénédictine* 62 (1952): 1-94; and Chavasse, "Cantatorium et antiphonale missarum: quelques procédés de confection, dimanches après la Pentecôte graduels du sanctoral," *Ecclesia orans* 1 (1984): 15-55.

<sup>141</sup> C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 358. On the possibility of earlier manuscripts, see Kenneth Levy, "Charlemagne's Archetype of Gregorian Chant," *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 40:1 (Spring 1987): 1-30. He argues that the extant historical evidence suggests that there were indeed earlier manuscripts that simply did not survive to the present day. See also his longer and more recent work on the shift of ecclesiastical chant from oral to written transmission, *Gregorian Chant and the Carolingians* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998).

<sup>142</sup> C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 358.

In the manuscripts that survive, there is a stable core repertoire of 145 introits in both the Gregorian and Old Roman traditions. There are six additional introits in the Gregorian tradition, and four in the Old Roman. In the earliest extant Gregorian manuscripts that contain musical notation, the introit antiphon melodies are extremely stable from manuscript to manuscript, homogeneously neumatic and melodically complex in style, yet unique in that no two antiphons share the same melody. In fact, nearly every feast of the liturgical year has been assigned its own introit.<sup>143</sup> The chants preserved in the extant manuscripts, Jeffery notes, “are already completed works, not primitive or transitional collections drawn up during the period when the contents were still fluid.”<sup>144</sup>

### *Mode and Performance*

Modally, the introits are complex. Many do not fit neatly into the eight ecclesiastical modes.<sup>145</sup> Such modal ambiguity implies antiquity, as melodies that predated the imposition of the modal system, and that were especially memorable—either because of their complex melodic lines or singular liturgical assignments—were more likely to have had their unusual characteristics preserved.<sup>146</sup>

In terms of performance, the introit is in its origins an antiphonal chant, which means the choir normally sang the antiphon, while a soloist or smaller group of singers sang the

---

<sup>143</sup> This is particularly the case in the Proper of Seasons, but much of the Proper of Saints also has unique introits. *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit (i).”

<sup>144</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 9.

<sup>145</sup> Jeffery notes that in the extant manuscripts “we no longer have any melodies in a ‘pure’ state from the period before the adoption” of the modal system. Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 9.

<sup>146</sup> According to Metzinger, “Editors of early manuscripts apparently encountered introit melodies that contained intervals impossible to notate within the modal system.” Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 36. Steiner argues that an introit antiphon “may be, in short, the antithesis of a textbook demonstration of the possibilities of its mode. This is not surprising, because it is likely that many introits were composed before the medieval system of the modes was fully worked out by the theorists.” *New Grove*, s.v. “Trope (i), §3: Introit tropes” (by Ruth Steiner).

psalm verse(s) and *Gloria Patri*.<sup>147</sup> This practice is in contrast to responsorial chants like the gradual, in which a soloist sings the psalm verses in alternation with a sung congregational response. Indeed, before the nineteenth century there was no tradition of singing the introit responsorially in the Roman Rite,<sup>148</sup> except perhaps for the *Gloria Patri*,<sup>149</sup> which the congregation could join in singing because the text did not vary. Jeffery observes that “it is by no means clear that every genre of Mass chant was originally sung by the congregation; the introit in particular may have been reserved to the choir from the beginning, if indeed its origin may be traced to a fourth-century adoption of imperial Roman ceremonial by Christian bishops.”<sup>150</sup> From the outset, then, these chants were too complex for congregational singing.<sup>151</sup>

For centuries, the choir did not sing from the Mass Antiphoner during the liturgy, but sang the chants from memory. Early manuscripts were too small for use by a group of

---

<sup>147</sup> Or, if the antiphon was not repeated between the psalm verses, the choir, divided into two parts, would have sung the verses in alternation.

<sup>148</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 21.

<sup>149</sup> In fact, “the Carolingian reform had sought to have the *Gloria Patri* sung by the people.” Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:325. See Charlemagne *Admonitio generalis* 70, *Monumenta Germaniae Historica. Capitularia Regum Francorum*, vol. 1, Alfred Boretius, ed. (Hannover, 1883), 59.

<sup>150</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 80. Jeffery does not put forward this fourth-century origin of the introit as a matter of fact, but merely as a reasonable hypothesis. Unfortunately, it is likely the case that insufficient evidence survives to put such a hypothesis to the test. He calls the question of the introit’s origins “a good example of a very significant question that has never been investigated historically.” And he continues, “The fact is that, for most of the chants of the Ordinary and Proper of the Mass, we do not know when or how they originated, what their original purpose or meaning was, and who originally sang them. Many other questions, such as the prevalence, personnel, and liturgical roles of choirs in the early church, are equally unexplored” (ibid., 80 n. 57). Jeffery cites here Theodor Klauser, *A Short History of the Western Liturgy: An Account and Some Reflections*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., trans. John Halliburton (New York: Oxford University Press, 1979), 33-35. Klauser also suggests the fourth-century origin of the introit.

<sup>151</sup> “It was the hegemony of a monastic approach to the psalms, and not some undocumentable mania for ‘virtuosity,’ that led to the medieval dominance of monastic and clerical choirs and the erosion of congregational singing.” Jeffery, “Monastic Reading,” 82. The dominance of the choral approach to the proper psalms originates the fact that it was the monastic and cathedral clerics that guided the psalmodic movement in the urban centers of the Christian West.

singers. Books of chant that are clearly large enough for use by a choir during the liturgy do not appear until the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Prior to that time, Mass Antiphoner manuscripts were likely first created for the clergy to use during Masses without music, and then, with the advent of notation, as reference books for the choir master and singers.<sup>152</sup> The advent of liturgical choirs singing directly from a large book is the final step in the transition of liturgical chant from an oral to a written tradition.

### *Sources of the Antiphon Texts*

Even though a detailed exploration of the theology and liturgical-musical function of Mass antiphons follows in chapter four, it is still useful to provide a basic definition of the antiphon here. In its essence, the antiphon in the Latin tradition is a monophonic prose text chant.<sup>153</sup> Its primary function is to introduce a psalm and to frame it, both textually and melodically, and in the case of the introit to accompany the entrance procession. Through its text and melody, it sets the tone for the rest of the liturgical celebration.<sup>154</sup> Typically, the antiphon functions as a Christian or Christological lens through which to interpret its accompanying psalm. Ritually, for many antiphons “it is hard to mistake the fact that the text selected had in view both the procession itself and the image of a higher reality from the day’s celebration which the procession typified.”<sup>155</sup>

---

<sup>152</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 67-68.

<sup>153</sup> *New Grove*, s.v. “Antiphon.”

<sup>154</sup> Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:329. “This . . . was done often by selecting for the antiphon a psalm verse that seemed to fit the celebration. Thus for the Christmas midnight Mass Psalm 2 is sung at the introit, and verse 7 is chosen as the antiphon: *Dominus dixit ad me, Filius meus es tu*. Or in the introit of a *Confessor non pontifex*, Psalm 91, with the stress on verse 13 as antiphon: *Iustus ut palma florebit*” (ibid.).

<sup>155</sup> Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:330. “Thus on Epiphany we read: *Ecce advenit dominator dominus*, and on the Wednesday of Pentecost week: *Deus dum egredereris*. And in Easter week, the crowd of newly baptized who have entered the Church are greeted on Saturday with: *Eduxit populum suum in exultatione*,



Introit antiphon texts are usually specific to a particular day of the liturgical year. Antiphons for the most important feasts nearly always express a theme specific to the day, while others express a theme of the liturgical season.<sup>156</sup> The 145 chants of the core repertoire introit antiphons derive mainly from the Davidic psalms, but also from other scriptural texts. Only one of the antiphons in this core repertoire is extra-biblical.<sup>157</sup> In contrast to the Office antiphon repertoire, the corpus of introit, offertory, and communion antiphons did not expand very much over time and new antiphons were usually added only when new feasts were added to the calendar.<sup>158</sup>

**Table 3** Core Repertoire Source Texts<sup>159</sup>

	Psalmic	Biblical, non-psalmic	Extra-biblical
In the entire core repertoire	101	43	1 ( <i>Salus populi</i> )
In the Proper of Seasons	70	31	0
During Advent & Christmas	8	10	0
During Easter	11	10	0
During Lent	31	6	0

---

*alleluia, et electos suos in laetitia*, and on Monday: *Introduxit vos Dominus in terram fluentem lac et mel*, and on Wednesday: *Venite benedicti Patris mei*" (ibid.).

<sup>156</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 23. "There are days—like the Sunday after Pentecost—for which there is no special theme to which the introit antiphon might lead. Then the chant master takes up his psalter and chooses one of the psalms that in some way expresses the relationship of the Christian community to God: trust, praise, petition." Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:330.

<sup>157</sup> See *New Grove*, 2nd ed., s.v. "Introit (i)." Jungmann notes, however, that "here and there the Bible is sidestepped entirely. On certain saints' days there is a simple invitation to partake of the joy of the feast: *Gaudeamus omnes in Domini, diem festum celebrantes*. . . . One of the Masses of the Blessed Virgin begins with the happy greeting of the poet Sedulius: *Salve, sancta parens*." Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:329-30.

<sup>158</sup> *New Grove*, s.v. "Antiphon."

<sup>159</sup> See *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. "Introit (i)." Here McKinnon states, "There is a 'core repertory' of 145 introits, that is, those chants that were both in use at Rome during the mid-8<sup>th</sup> century and adopted at that time by the Franks." This core repertoire is nearly equivalent to the corpus of chants found in Hesbert's *Antiphonal Missarum Sextuplex*. See also McKinnon, *Advent Project*, 207-8, 216-18.

Non-psalmic texts are more frequent in especially solemn days and seasons of the liturgical year. There is still debate among chant scholars as to whether psalmic<sup>160</sup> or non-psalmic<sup>161</sup> introit antiphon texts are more ancient.<sup>162</sup> In any case, the non-psalmic texts typically provided more specific references to the feast and more explicit Christological allusions.<sup>163</sup>

### *How Source Texts Are Used*

While nearly all antiphon texts find their ultimate source in scripture, the proper chants of the Mass are not simply scriptural quotations.<sup>164</sup> Some are comprised of texts lifted directly from the Bible without alteration, but many of the antiphons represent what is more

---

<sup>160</sup> This type of introit, in which both antiphon and verses were derived from the Psalms, was known as *regularis* in the Middle Ages. Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:329.

<sup>161</sup> Introits with non-psalmic antiphons were called *irregulares*. Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:329. "This irregularity is increased whenever the 'verse' is not taken from the psalms, as happens on the Feast of Our Lady of Sorrows" (*ibid.*, 1:329, n. 44).

<sup>162</sup> Peter Wagner argues that the non-psalmic antiphons are more ancient, because they are most typically found on the most important days of the church year. Antoine Chavasse, in contrast, argues for the greater antiquity of the psalmic antiphons. See P. Wagner, *Einführung in die gregorianischen Melodien: ein Handbuch der Choralwissenschaft*, I: *Ursprung und Entwicklung der liturgischen Gesangsformen bis zum Ausgang des Mittelalters* (Leipzig, 1901): 54-63; and Chavasse, "Cantatorium et antiphonale missarum," *passim*. See also James W. McKinnon, "Antoine Chavasse and the Dating of Early Chant," *Plainsong and Medieval Music* 1 (1992): 123-47. McKinnon, given his view that the Mass Proper was composed in one grand effort at the end of the seventh century, argues that the source of a particular antiphon text might have no chronological implications and "might simply indicate the greater care taken in selecting texts for dates of special significance." *New Grove*, 2nd ed., s.v. "Introit (i)." In *The Advent Project*, however, McKinnon admits that the numerically sequenced psalmic Lenten introits might be more ancient. McKinnon, *Advent Project*, 208-15.

<sup>163</sup> Jungmann asserts, "It is understandable that feast days and festal seasons did much to break through this scheme of the *Introitus regularis* in order to give free vent to the expression of the mystery of the day. For the most part texts from the Scripture were used. Thus the introit antiphon for the third Christmas Mass proclaims, with the Prophet Isaias, the good news of the Nativity: *Puer natus est nobis et Filius datus est nobis*. and the antiphon for Whitsunday plays upon the pentecostal miracle with words from the Book of Wisdom: *Spiritus Domini replevit orbem terrarum*. A remarkable fact is this, that the text of the antiphon is frequently derived from the Epistle of the day: *Gaudete in Domini; Cum sanctificatus fuero; Viri Galilaei; De ventre matris meae; Nunc scio vere*." Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:329.

<sup>164</sup> The biblical texts were not used *in situ* but "singled out for a specific liturgical assignment." McKinnon, "Festival, Text and Melody," 5.

appropriately called heavy “linguistic borrowing.”<sup>165</sup> The antiphon texts are interpretations and re-appropriations of the biblical tradition. They achieve a Christological and liturgical re-contextualization of Scripture, and, as such, are an invaluable window into the Church’s ancient tradition of biblical interpretation.<sup>166</sup>

The introit antiphons make use of the biblical text in a variety of ways:<sup>167</sup>

- *Direct Quotation*, in which the antiphon text duplicates the biblical text exactly, but is still contextualized by means of its interpretive interaction with its psalm verses and its broader liturgical context:  
  
*Mihi autem absit gloriari, nisi in cruce Domini nostri Iesu Christi, per quem mihi mundus crucifixus est, et ego mundo* (introit antiphon for the Memorial of St. John of the Cross, Galatians 6:14).
- *Embellishment*, which involved the addition of one or two words to embellish or clarify who the addressee is in a biblical text that did not significantly change or enhance the meaning of the text:

<sup>165</sup> The presidential orations (*collectio, super oblata, post communionem*) of the Mass Proper are also filled with “linguistic borrowing” from scripture, though more allusively so than the proper chants. See Bradshaw, “The Use of the Bible in Liturgy: Some Historical Perspectives,” *Studia Liturgica* 22:1 (1992): 43.

<sup>166</sup> Peter Finn argues that “the Latin texts of the antiphons in light of the numerous adaptations and their reliance on an earlier translation of the Scriptures seem to fall more naturally into the category of what *Liturgiam authenticam* calls texts of ‘ecclesiastical composition’ that borrow from the Scriptures but often adapt the biblical texts and do not quote them literally.” Peter Finn for the International Committee on English in the Liturgy (hereafter ICEL), “Questions and Issues Related to the Translation of Antiphons” (unpublished study, Washington, 2004), 2. Jungmann notes that “the other variable texts of the Mass, which are used for the individual formularies, are, apart from the readings, mainly intended for the chant (*introitus, graduale, offertorium, communion*). They thence exhibit in all cases a greater freedom, corresponding to their poetic character.” Josef Jungmann, *The Place of Christ in Liturgical Prayer*, trans. A. Peeler (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1989), 121.

<sup>167</sup> For other descriptions of the techniques involved, see Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 30-31; *DACL*, s.v. “Introit;” McKinnon, “Festival, Text and Melody,” 6; McKinnon, *Advent Project*, 215-20; and *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit (i).”

*Dixit Dominus Mariae Magdalenae: Vade ad fratres meos, et dic eis: Ascendo ad Patrem meum et Patrem vestrum, Deum meum et Deum vestrum* (introit antiphon for the Memorial of St. Mary Magdelene, John 20:17).

“*Dominus Mariae Magdalenae*” is added to the text from John’s gospel.

- *Enhancement*, in which more substantial non-biblical phrases were added to the biblical text:

*Nos autem gloriari oportet in cruce Domini nostri Iesu Christi, in quo est salus, vita et resurrectio nostra, per quem salvati et liberati sumus* (introit antiphon for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper, Cf. Galatians 6:14).

Only the first part of this antiphon is clearly adapted from the Galatians text.

The rest of the text seems to be extra-biblical, though certainly inspired by biblical themes. See chapter four for more on this antiphon.

- *Omission*, which meant leaving out particular words, especially words that would have hindered a re-appropriation of the text:

*Benedicta es tu, Virgo Maria, a Domino Deo excelso prae omnibus mulieribus super terram; quia nomen tuum ita magnificavit, ut non recedat laus tua de ore hominum* (introit antiphon for the Holy Name of Mary, Cf. Judith 13: 18-19).

“*Quia hodie nomen tuum*” is shortened to “*Quia nomen tuum.*”

- *Rearrangement*, in which parts of a biblical text are rearranged to better suit the occasion or to make the excerpted text more able to stand on its own outside its biblical context:

*Misereris omnium, Domine, et nihil odisti eorum quae fecisti, dissimulans peccata hominum propter paenitentiam et parcens illis, quia tu es Dominus Deus noster* (introit antiphon for Ash Wednesday, Wisdom 11: 24-25, 27).

In the biblical text the phrase beginning “*et nihil*” comes after the phrase beginning “*dissimulas*” (“*dissimulans*” in the antiphon).

- *Centonization*,<sup>168</sup> in which two or more intact biblical phrases from different books of the Bible or from different parts of the same book of the Bible were joined to create a new phrase with a new or more particular meaning:

*Veniet Dominus et non tardabit, et illuminabit abscondita tenebrarum, et manifestabit se ad omnes gentes* (introit antiphon for Wednesday of the First Week of Advent, Cf. Habakkuk 2: 3; 1 Corinthians 4: 5).

“*Veniet...tardabit*” is taken from Habakkuk and “*et illuminabit...manifestabit*” from 1 Corinthians. This antiphon is also an example of enhancement; “*se ad omnes gentes*” is not found in either biblical text.

- *Substitution*, which involved the replacement of one word of a biblical phrase with another to make the phrase more applicable to a particular feast or season:

*Annuntiate de die in diem salutare Dei, annuntiate inter gentes gloriam eius* (Feast of St. Bartholomew, Cf. Psalm 95:2-3).

“*Dei*” replaces the biblical word “*eius*.” The antiphon provided as an example of omission above also employs substitution. “*Filia*” is replaced by “*Virgo Maria*.”

- *Paraphrase*, where one or more biblical texts are the basis of a free adaptation that results in a new text:

---

<sup>168</sup> Jeffery describes centonization as “the creation of a textual ‘patchwork’ or mosaic of quotations from and allusions to the Bible, Vergil, or some other pre-existing source.” *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 91. One should not confuse this type of centonization with the other sense of the word in twentieth century musicology: the *melodic* formulism of ecclesiastical chant.

*In voluntate tua, Domine, universa sunt posita, et non est qui possit resistere voluntati tuae. Tu enim fecisti omnia, caelum et terram, et universa quae caeli ambitu continentur; Dominus universorum tu es* (introit antiphon for the Twenty-Seventh Sunday in Ordinary Time, Cf. Esther 4: 17 [13: 9, 10-11]).

As one can see, the biblical text (below) has been substantially adjusted in the antiphon, perhaps to help it to function as an antiphon within a Christian context, or simply to create a more aesthetically pleasing text that could be more easily sung:

*. . . et dixit Domine Domine rex omnipotens in dicione enim tua cuncta sunt posita et non est qui possit tuae resistere voluntati si decreveris salvare Israhel / tu fecisti caelum et terram et quidquid caeli ambitu continentur / Dominus omnium es nec est qui resistat maiestati tuae*

A single antiphon can employ any number of these techniques. The result is, as McKinnon describes, “a suitable text, one of proper length and self-contained meaning that can stand apart from its scriptural context.”<sup>169</sup> The source of a particular antiphon text is not always immediately obvious. Some antiphon texts may have grown out of quotations of scripture found in sermons or writings.<sup>170</sup> Sometimes, McKinnon goes on to say, paraphrase has been employed to a degree that the “it is no longer certain whether a text results from the conscious adaptation of a biblical passage or is an essentially new composition created by its author from his store of remembered biblical phraseology.”<sup>171</sup>

---

<sup>169</sup> McKinnon, “Festival, Text and Melody,” 6.

<sup>170</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 63.

<sup>171</sup> McKinnon, “Festival, Text and Melody,” 8.

There were many translations of the Bible in circulation during the Patristic period and early Middle Ages from which an antiphon text could have been adapted or extracted.<sup>172</sup> Thus, the source of an antiphon text might be the Vulgate or some other “Old Latin” translation, and an antiphon text that seems to deviate from the Vulgate translation might be simply from another translation altogether rather than a conscious adaptation of the text. In Gregorian chant, the psalmic texts have two primary sources: the Roman Psalter for the antiphons and the Gallican Psalter for the psalm verses.<sup>173</sup> The Gallican Psalter replaced the Roman Psalter as the source of the introit psalm verses when the Roman chant began to be used in the Frankish lands.<sup>174</sup> Use of the Roman Psalter continued in many parts of Italy until Pius V (1566-72) replaced it with the Gallican Psalter.<sup>175</sup> In terms of the antiphons based on

---

<sup>172</sup> “Other possible sources,” Metzinger says, “are the Latin translations of scripture made during the second and third centuries by a number of anonymous translators; these are collectively referred to as the ‘Old Latin Bible.’ Among these pre-Hieronymian translations are more than seventeen complete or partial Psalters, such as the Visigothic Psalter.” Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 30. See also *ibid.*, 29; and *New Catholic Encyclopedia*, s.v. “Bible IV (Texts and Versions) 13 Latin Versions” (by B. M. Peebles). We know of these older translations, some as early as the second and third centuries, indirectly in that we know Pope Damasus (366-84) employed Jerome “to begin the great work of revising the Old Latin texts of the Psalms and the New Testament in a more accurate and polished translation with a view to their liturgical use.” Shepherd, “Liturgical Reform of Damasus I,” 848.

<sup>173</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 23. He explains here that “the antiphons were musically more elaborate than the simple psalm tones, and thus the text could not be changed. The verses, however, sung in Rome to simple psalm tones, were more adaptable to the psalter that was in use in Gaul at the time. In a way, the cantors learning the *cantus romanus* took a shortcut; rather than relearning the whole book of Psalms and adopting the Roman psalter throughout, they applied the psalter that was already memorized, the Gallican psalter, to those parts of the compositions that were more adaptable” (*ibid.*, 23-24). The Gallican Psalter is Jerome’s (ca. 347-420) translation from Origen’s *Hexapla*; it is the psalter “iuxta septuaginta” in the Vulgate. The Vulgate’s other version of the psalter, “iuxta hebraicum,” is also by Jerome. The “iuxta hebraicum” is directly from the Hebrew, quite different from the “iuxta septuaginta” and rarely if ever used liturgically. See *Grove Online*, s.v. “Psalter, Liturgical” (by Joseph Dyer), <http://www.oxfordmusiconline.com/> (accessed October 14, 2009).

<sup>174</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 23.

<sup>175</sup> *Ibid.*, 57. See also *Grove Online*, s.v. “Gradual.”

the non-psalmic biblical texts, newer antiphons are clearly grounded in the Vulgate, while antiphons for more ancient feasts reflect Old Latin translations.<sup>176</sup>

The tendency of some chant genres to contain highly altered scriptural texts more often than others tells us something about a genre's intended liturgical function. The gradual and alleluia were part of the liturgy of the Word, for example, and thus it makes sense that these chant texts would remain closer to their biblical source texts. Introit antiphon texts, in contrast, are more likely to be textual adaptations, because one aspect of their liturgical function is to reflect the season or feast. Finally, it is important to acknowledge that some antiphon texts are consciously and deliberately not derived from the Scriptures. Such texts include the introit antiphon *Salus populi* (stational liturgy at the Basilica of Saints Cosmas and Damian) of the core repertoire, for example, as well as the introit antiphon *Salve, sancta*<sup>177</sup> *parens* and Office antiphon *Genuit puerpera regem*. Both of the latter derive from works of the fifth-century poet Sedulius and are assigned, respectively, to the Votive Mass of the Blessed Virgin Mary and as the second Lauds antiphon during the Christmas season.

### The Elaboration of the Normative Entrance Song Tradition

Later in the Middle Ages—roughly the ninth through eleventh centuries—Gregorian chant had become the liturgical-musical *lingua franca* throughout most of the West. Now that the chant was standardized and well-established, new musical forms began to spring up as means of elaborating and embellishing it.<sup>178</sup> This expansion of the Gregorian repertoire, like the development and codification of Gregorian chant itself, flow from the Carolingian

---

<sup>176</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 24.

<sup>177</sup> In some manuscripts, “*santa*.”

<sup>178</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 99.



Renaissance, and embody the high point of musical creativity during these centuries.<sup>179</sup> Such forms were less prevalent in the city of Rome itself, however, which was characteristically resistant to change.

### *Introit Tropes*

The introit trope is a genre of chants that functions solely to elaborate and extend the introit by adding music to the beginning of the antiphon or within the antiphon.<sup>180</sup> There are other types of liturgical tropes, but more were composed for the introit than for any other liturgical chant. One finds three types in the extant manuscripts: *meliform* (a melisma or melodic extension appended to the final cadence of an introit antiphon without additional text), *melogene* (additional text with no accompanying music which would have been sung to the introit antiphon melody with one note per syllable, also called a *prosula*), and *logene* (new text with new music).<sup>181</sup> There is manuscript evidence for tropes beginning in the 10<sup>th</sup>

---

<sup>179</sup> Ibid., 102.

<sup>180</sup> Ibid., 101; and *New Grove*, s.v. “Antiphon.” See also Ellen Jane Reier, “The Introit Trope Repertory at Nevers: MSS Paris B.N. Lat. 9449 and Paris B.N. N.A. Lat. 1235,” 3 vols (PhD diss., University of California Berkeley, 1981) for an analysis of particular manuscripts. Liturgical and theological studies of tropes are few (most are musicological), but some of the most important include Ritva Jonsson, “The Liturgical Function of Tropes,” in *Research on Tropes: Proceedings of a Symposium Organized By the Royal Academy of Literature, History and Antiquities and the Corpus Troporum, Stockholm, June 1-3, 1981*, ed. Gunilla Iversen (Stockholm: A. B. Dahlberg, 1983), 99-123; Niels K. Rasmussen, “Quelques réflexions sur la théologie des tropes,” in *ibid.*, 77-88; and Eugenio Costa, Jr., “Tropes et séquences dans le cadre de la vie liturgique au moyen âge (DTS diss., Institut Catholique de Paris, 1975).

<sup>181</sup> McKinnon recounts that “the group of scholars at Stockholm University working on the Corpus Troporum project proposed that tropes added to the Gregorian repertory be divided into [these] three categories. . . . Logogene tropes are most commonly found with the introit and Gloria, but also with the offertory and communion; their texts frequently point up the theme of the feast day, to which the texts of the parent chants often bear a less tangible relationship, and the added verses generally respect the melodic style and tonality of the parent chant. Melogene tropes are most commonly found with the alleluias and offertory, frequently also with the Office responsory. . . . The texts of trope verses for introit, offertory and communion that have been edited in the series Corpus Troporum, from manuscripts mostly of the 10<sup>th</sup> to 12<sup>th</sup> centuries from all over Europe, already number many hundreds. Since the manuscript sources are highly variable in their selection of verses and in variant readings, musical editions have tended to concentrate on small groups of sources from particular areas.” *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.”

century, though the practice probably began in the previous century.<sup>182</sup> The word “*tropus*” in the sources most often refers to the *logogene* type.<sup>183</sup> This type, along with the *meliform* type were the ones most frequently used to embellish the introit.<sup>184</sup> As a rule, tropes were collected separately from the proper chants of the Mass in a book called the *Cantatorium*—which also contained gradual, tract, and alleluia chants—or in a separate book called a *Troper*.<sup>185</sup> Any standard melodic characteristics are difficult to discern, and one gathers there was not as much concern for precise preservation and transmission of the texts and melodies as there was for the antiphons.<sup>186</sup>

The appearance of tropes in the liturgy of the later Middle Ages reflects a general desire for local creativity within the stable ritual structure of the Mass.<sup>187</sup> They were most commonly composed for major feasts, and served to lengthen the introit, and, through their didactic yet poetic texts, make more explicit the theological meaning of the feast, introit antiphon and its psalm verse(s).<sup>188</sup> Tropes provided what Fassler and Jeffery call a “medieval

---

<sup>182</sup> *New Grove*, s.v. “Antiphon.” Hiley notes that “the earliest composition of introit tropes, if the testimony is trustworthy, is by Tuotilo of St Gall (known between 895 and 912), who is said by the St Gall chronicler Ekkehard IV (c. 990-1060) to have composed the introductory verses *Hodie cantandus est* in his youth. . . . It should nevertheless be noted that almost no introit tropes were known in both early ‘western’ and early ‘eastern’ sources, so that it is not possible to postulate a common basic layer on which later diverse collections were built.” Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 215-16.

<sup>183</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.”

<sup>184</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>185</sup> An important exception is the MS *F-Pn* lat. 903, which contains the proper chants of the Mass along with their tropes. See *New Grove*, s.v. “Troper” (by Ruth Steiner).

<sup>186</sup> Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 42. See also Alejandro Planchart, “On the Nature of Transmission and Change in Trope Repertories,” *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 41 (1988):215-49.

<sup>187</sup> Treitler states, “‘Local production for local use’ is the way I characterized the written transmission of the early trope tradition in view of its variability.” Treitler, *With Voice and Pen*, 429. Fassler and Jeffery assert that “it was also [by means of tropes] that specific regions customized their liturgical practices and preserved vestiges of the traditions displaced by the Gregorian repertory.” Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 102.

<sup>188</sup> Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 196-97, 220.

exegetical interpretation” of the antiphon, psalm, and feast.<sup>189</sup> Like the *versus ad repetendum*, it is possible that some tropes clarified the theme or Christological allusion that had once been created by the interplay of the antiphon/season/feast and its second and subsequent verses, but that had been lost because only its first verse was used.<sup>190</sup>

Like introit antiphons, tropes are texts of ecclesiastical composition, but even more so. Though filled with biblical allusions, any single biblical source is usually difficult to determine.<sup>191</sup> Flynn explains their function particularly well:

They were written in poetic and musical forms which were intended to interact with a formally authorized ‘Gregorian’ repertory in a way that would provide a type of prayed commentary on the liturgy directed towards the participants in three important ways: (1) inviting the participation of the worshippers, calling upon them to respond and give reasons for their response; (2) making connections between the present celebration and the relevant biblical story; and (3) offering an enriched web of scriptural allusions and combinations of symbol and imagery.<sup>192</sup>

---

<sup>189</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 102.

<sup>190</sup> See, for example, the introit for Christmas Mass at night. The antiphon *Dominus dixit ad me: Filius meus es tu, ego hodie genui te* (Psalm 2:7) has been traditionally interpreted as words spoken by the Father about the Son. If only the first psalm verse traditionally associated with the antiphon is used (verse 1, ‘Why do the nations protest and the peoples grumble in vain?’) the Christological interpretive interaction between the antiphon and psalm is lost. Verses 2 and 8 are the others traditionally sung with this antiphon, and clarify the relationship between antiphon and psalm: ‘Kings on earth rise up and princes plot together against the Lord and his anointed,’ ‘Only ask it of me, and I will make your inheritance the nations.’ Jungmann provides other examples: “The first verse, or, if the first verse served as antiphon, the one immediately following, often shows absolutely no connection with the *motif* for the day, whereas the idea is actually conveyed by the continuation of the psalms. Take the Wednesday in the Advent Ember week or the fourth Sunday of Advent; the psalm verse beginning *Caeli enarrant gloriam Dei* conveys no particular impression of Advent. But the psalm from which this verse is derived contains those phrases so often cited in this season with reference to Christ’s coming like the orient sun: *Ipse tamquam sponsus procedens de thalamo suo* (Ps. 18:6). In the third Mass of Christmas the introit verse is one that has certainly only a very general meaning: *Cantate Domino canticum novum*; but it is the beginning of Psalm 97 which serves as a Christmas psalm because of the words: *Notum fecit Dominus salutare suum* and *Viderunt omnes fines terrae salutare Dei nostri* (vv. 2f.). In the introit for Epiphany we find the verse: *Deus, iudicium tuum regi da*, from Psalm 71, but a fuller meaning is extracted from what follows, wherein the *reges Tharis* and others appear. On the Feast of Holy Bishops we read the introit verse: *Memento, Domine, David* (Ps. 131); it is not till further in the psalm we find the connection with the theme of the day: *Sacerdotes tui induantur iustitiam* (v. 9; cf. v. 16).” Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:327-28.

<sup>191</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 99.

<sup>192</sup> William T. Flynn, “Paris, Bibliothèque de l’Arsenal, MS 1169: The Hermeneutics of Eleventh-century Burgundian Tropes, and Their Implications for Liturgical Theology” (PhD diss., Duke University, 1992), 13.

Of course, tropes could only achieve these things if those assembled were well-versed in the Latin language. Indeed, tropes were mainly a feature of monastic liturgy, rather than a diocesan phenomenon, though one might expect they were also used in a few cathedrals with large groups of canons.<sup>193</sup>

Tropes are solo chants and are similar but not identical in melodic style to the antiphons.<sup>194</sup> Hundreds of them were written; there are 1,044 known tropes for the Christmas and Easter seasons alone.<sup>195</sup> The use of tropes with the introit continued through at least the twelfth century,<sup>196</sup> but in places particularly sensitive to the aesthetic of the liturgical reform of Gregory VII (1073-1085), especially among the Augustinians and Cistercians, the use of such embellishments declined after his reign.<sup>197</sup> By the time of the promulgation of the Missal of Pius V in 1570, tropes had nearly if not completely fallen out of use. If a few

---

Ruth Steiner offers another description of their function: "The central preoccupation of tropes is always the text of the liturgical chant that is being introduced. The composer of the trope seems to have asked himself: 'By whom are these words spoken in the Bible? What is the context there? How do they apply here to the celebration of the day? What does the congregation need to be told about them to appreciate their full significance?' He seems to have seen his task as partly to explain and interpret the liturgical text, and partly to make it more dramatic by vividly calling up the biblical situations and characters with which it is connected." *New Grove*, s.v. "Trope (i), §3: Introit tropes."

<sup>193</sup> Fassler and Jeffery state, "Considerable evidence suggests strongly that proper tropes were never as important in cathedral liturgies as they were among some Benedictines. The vast number of surviving manuscripts of tropes are indeed found in monastic rather than cathedral books." Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 105-6.

<sup>194</sup> Steiner explains, "The music of introit tropes invites comparison with that of the introits themselves. There are similarities, but also differences. . . . In general there seems to underlie the melodies of the tropes an interpretation of the medieval church modes that is comparable to the one expressed in the medieval treatises on the modes, and in the formulae displaying the qualities of the modes that are often a feature of the medieval chant tonaries. The restless, sometimes apparently purposeless, stepwise movement up and down the scale found in these formulae occurs rather often in tropes. An introit, on the other hand, may be (in terms of the notes of the scale that are actually used, and those that are selected for emphasis) almost unique, and embody an entirely individual melodic structure." *New Grove*, s.v. "Trope (i), §3: Introit tropes."

<sup>195</sup> Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 215-16.

<sup>196</sup> Levy notes that "after the 12<sup>th</sup> century, the logogene type of trope rapidly fell out of use." *Grove Online*, s.v. "Plainchant." See also Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 196.

<sup>197</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 104-5.

monasteries still used them at that time, it is no surprise that none are found in Pius V's Missal, because its form of celebration was based upon a parish/diocesan model and not a monastic or cathedral one.<sup>198</sup>

### Harmonic Embellishment of Chant Melodies

It is very likely that harmonization has been part of the liturgical chant tradition from the beginning.<sup>199</sup> Indeed, Jeffery explains that “the study of musical cognition reveals that the tendency to harmonize spontaneously can easily be related to one of the ways that human beings recall melodies.”<sup>200</sup> Harmonization was an important mnemonic device, then, during the period before the liturgical chants were written down. Improvised, note-against-note harmonization, in which perfect intervals (*vox organalis*) were sung against the chant melody (*vox principalis*), namely *organum*, was in use even before the turn of the first millennium.<sup>201</sup>

The twelfth and thirteenth centuries saw the advent of more complicated harmonic treatments of the antiphon melodies. Primarily a North Italian and Parisian phenomenon, these new forms (*organum purum*, *discant*, *discant clausulae*, *conductus*)—made possible by

---

<sup>198</sup> Jungmann's assertion, then, that “the Missal of Pius V eliminated all of these tropes as parasitic” certainly overstates the matter. Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:327.

<sup>199</sup> That is, given the nature of human cognition and music making. See the *New Dictionary of Music*, s.v. “Improvisation” (by Bruno Nettle). Jeffery suggests that “in the Middle Ages [harmonic embellishments] may have been quite common, even a normal way of performing the chant.” Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 115.

<sup>200</sup> Jeffery, *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures*, 116. See also, Eric F. Clarke, “Generative Principles in Music Performance,” in *Generative Processes in Music: The Psychology of Performance, Improvisation and Composition*, ed. John A. Sloboda (Oxford: Clarendon, 1988): 1-26.

<sup>201</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 103.

the contemporaneous invention in the West of exact rhythmic notation—consisted of counter melodies with more than one note for each note of the Gregorian melody.<sup>202</sup>

### Polyphonic Settings of Proper Chants

From the thirteenth through the sixteenth centuries, polyphonic choral introits that make use of the official proper chant texts and their melodies are the primary point of interest in terms of the elaboration of the chant tradition.<sup>203</sup> Some fourteenth-century examples exist, but in the fifteenth century, particularly in Northern Europe, such settings become more numerous.<sup>204</sup> After the sixteenth century, however, settings of the introit and other Mass propers became less common in the Roman Rite.<sup>205</sup> The Mass proper chant texts received

---

<sup>202</sup> Ibid., 107-8. See also Robert F. Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music: 95 A.D. to 1977 A.D.* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1979): 17-23 on improvised harmonies and the use of adapted secular melodies in the Mass proper.

<sup>203</sup> For example, plenary Masses, such as DuFay's *Missa Sancti Jacobi*; large collections of polyphonic Mass Proper cycles including the Trent codices I-TRmp 88 (113v-220r) (14 cycles of proper chants with a few lacunae) and Heinrich Isaac's *Choralis Constantinus*; and often Requiem Masses, such as the musical setting by Johannes Ockeghem (d. 1497), which included the introit with the traditional chant functioning as a cantus firmus. See *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. "Introit (ii)."

<sup>204</sup> See *ibid.* McKinnon notes that "during the 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries German composers in particular created polyphonic settings of the Mass Proper that included introits. More common, perhaps, were transcriptions of the Gregorian introits into the vernacular by reformist congregations; there are German, English and Finnish examples of the practice, and most notably Czech examples produced by the Ultraquist party (see the splendidly illuminated manuscript *A-Wa 15502*)."  
*New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. "Introit (i)." For a summary of the musical Counter-Reformation, see *Grove Online*, s.v. "Polyphonic Mass to 1600" (by L. Lockwood and A. Kirkman), <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005). Philip Cavanaugh suggests that "the sudden reappearance of Proper items c. 1425, after a century of largely secular musical activity, may be attributed to a new tide of religious feeling engendered by the reunification of the Church, successfully undertaken by the Council of Constance, 1414-18." Philip Cavanaugh, "Early Sixteenth-Century Cycles of Polyphonic Mass Propers, An Evolutionary Process or the Result of Liturgical Reforms?," *Acta Musicologica* 48:2 (July-December 1976): 153.

<sup>205</sup> The Ordinary of the Mass, in contrast to the Proper, continued to be set to music by nearly every influential composer from the fourteenth century through the decline of the patronage system in the nineteenth century. Even in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries the Ordinary was not completely ignored. It is worthwhile to note that in earlier periods, polyphony was more likely to be found in place of those monodic chants that had traditionally been sung by a soloist (alleluias, tracts, sequences) than in place of the choral chants like the introit. See *Grove Online*, s.v. "Mass."

little attention from serious composers after this time. Two representative examples follow; the first is from the fifteenth century, the second from the early sixteenth.

**Example 3** Polyphonic Setting of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* in Trent Codex 1375<sup>206</sup>

[Cantus]  
Tenor  
Contra

Nos au - tem glo - ri - a - ri -  
Glo - ri - a - ri -  
Glo - ri - a - ri -

4  
- ri - o - por - tet in cru -  
o - por - tet in cru -  
o - por - tet in cru -

10  
- ce do - mi - ni no - stri le -  
- ce do - mi - ni no - stri le -  
- ce do - mi - ni no - stri le -

16  
- su Chri - sti in quo est sa -  
- su Chri - sti  
- su Chri - sti in quo est

22  
- lus vi - ta et re - sur - re -  
vi - ta et re - sur - re -  
sa - lus vi - ta et re - sur - re -

<sup>206</sup> Rebecca L. Gerber, ed. and introd., *Sacred Music from the Cathedral at Trent. Trent, Museo Provinciale D'arte, Codex 1375 (OLIM 88)* (Chicago & London: University of Chicago Press, 2007). Reproduction meets "Fair Use" requirements of the University of Chicago ([www.press.uchicago.edu/Misc/Chicago/infopage.html](http://www.press.uchicago.edu/Misc/Chicago/infopage.html)).



28

- cti - o no - - - - - stra

- cti - o no - - - - - stra

- cti - o no - - - - - stra

34

per quem sal - va - - ti et li - be - ra - -

per quem

per quem sal - va - - ti et li - be - ra - ti

41

- - - ti su - - - - - mus.

li - be - ra - ti su - - - - - mus.

su - - - - - mus.

48

De - us mi-se-re-a-tur no-stri et be-ne - di - cat no - bis.

Il - lu - mi - net vul - tum

Il - lu - mi - net vul - tum

Il - lu - mi - net vul - tum

50

su - um su - per nos et mi-se-re-a-tur me - - i.

su - um su - per nos et mi-se-re-a-tur me - - i.

su - um su - per nos et mi-se-re-a-tur me - - i.

Glo - ri - a pa - tri et fi - li - o et spi - ri - tu - i san - cto.

Si - cut e -

Si - cut e -

Si - cut e -

59  
- rat in prin - ci - pi - o et nunc et sem - - per

- rat in prin - ci - pi - o et nunc et sem - - per

- rat in prin - ci - pi - o et nunc et sem - - per

65  
et in se - cu - la se - cu - lo - rum a - - - men.

et in se - cu - la se - cu - lo - rum a - - - men.

et in se - cu - la se - cu - lo - rum a - - - men.

**Example 4** Polyphonic Setting of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* in the *Choralis Constantinus* (Heinrich Isaac) *In Festo Inventionis S. Crucis*<sup>207</sup>

INTROITUS

Discantus

Altus

Tenor

Bassus

Nos autem

glo- ri- a-

glo- ri- a- ri o- por- tet in cru- ce

glo- ri- a- ri

glo- ri- a- ri

ri o- por- tet in cru- ce Do- mi- ni

Do- mi- ni no- stri Ie- su Chri- sti in quo

o- por- tet in cru- ce Do- mi- ni

o- por- tet in cru- ce Do- mi- ni

no- stri Ie- su Chri- sti in quo est sa- lus vi- ta

est sa- lus

no- stri Ie- su Chri- sti in quo

no- stri Ie- su Chri- sti in

<sup>207</sup> Heinrich Isaac, *Choralis Constantinus III*, transcr. from Formschneider First Edition (Nürnberg, 1555) by Louise Elvira Cuyler (Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1950). © Estate of Louise Elvira Cuyler, 1978.

et re-sur-re-cti-o no-  
vi-ta et re-sur-re-cti-  
est sa-lus vi-ta et re-sur-re-cti-o  
quo est sa-lus vi-ta et re-sur-re-cti-

stra per quem sal-va-ti et li-be-ra-ti  
o no-stra per quem sal-va-ti  
no-stra per quem sal-va-ti et li-be-ra-  
o no-stra per quem sal-va-ti et

su-mus [su-loco] mus  
et li-be-ra-ti su-  
ti su-mus [su-  
li-be-ra-ti su-

VERSUS

[illegible]

net vul-tum su-um super nos et mi-se-re-a-tur no-

lu-mi-net vul-tum suum super nos et mi-se-re-a-tur no-

lu-mi-net vul-tum su-um super nos et mi-se-re-a-tur no-

lu-mi-net vul-tum suum super nos et mi-se-re-a-tur no-

ALLELUIA

ALLELUIA

The image shows a musical score for a piece titled "ALLELUIA". It consists of four staves. The first staff is a vocal line with lyrics "stri Al- le- lu- ia" and a fermata over the final "ia". The second staff is another vocal line with lyrics "stri Al- le- lu- ia" and a fermata over the final "ia". The third staff is a vocal line with lyrics "8 stri Al- le- lu- ia al- le- lu- ia" and a fermata over the final "ia". The fourth staff is a vocal line with lyrics "stri Al- le- lu- ia" and a fermata over the final "ia". The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and fermatas.

Isaac's *Choralis Constantinus*, an excerpt from which appears above, was a set of polyphonic Mass propers for the whole liturgical year.<sup>208</sup> Isaac's collection, along with several others of the same period,<sup>209</sup> was at one time viewed as the culmination of a long process during which cycles of polyphonic Mass propers became more and more complete, gradually filling out the entire calendar. Philip Cavanaugh has shown such an evolutionary view of the process to be problematic, however.<sup>210</sup> Instead, differences between earlier collections<sup>211</sup> of polyphonic settings and Isaac's "complete" collection reflect the demands of efforts at liturgical reform.<sup>212</sup> The fifteenth and sixteenth centuries were a period of growing concern for a uniform celebration of the liturgy.<sup>213</sup> Indeed, several local efforts preceded the Council of Trent.<sup>214</sup> Prior to the Council of Trent, formularies for Votive Masses had in

---

<sup>208</sup> On the *Choralis Constantinus* see also *Grove Online*, s.v. "Polyphonic Mass to 1600." The *Grove* authors also note William Byrd's *Gradualia* as an important contribution to the corpus of Mass Proper settings from this period. For a study of two other relevant collections, see Mack Clay Lindsey III, "Klosterneuburg, Chorherrenstift, Codices 69 and 70: Two Sixteenth-Century Choirbooks, Their Music, and Its Liturgical use" (PhD diss., Indiana University, 1981).

<sup>209</sup> For example, two choirbooks held at Annaberg (MSS 1126 and 1248) and four manuscripts at the University at Jena (MSS. 30, 33, 35, Weimar A). See Cavanaugh, "Early Sixteenth-Century Cycles of Polyphonic Mass Propers," 151.

<sup>210</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>211</sup> For example, Trent Codices 88 and 90.

<sup>212</sup> As Cavanaugh states, "These collections cannot be viewed as the terminal stage of an evolutionary process leading to evermore complete polyphonic cycles but must be recognized as the answer to an immediate need stemming from a liturgical reform." Cavanaugh, "Early Sixteenth-Century Cycles of Polyphonic Mass Propers," 155.

<sup>213</sup> Cavanaugh suggests that "perhaps the union with the Eastern Church, briefly accomplished by the Council of Florence, (1438-1440), led reformers to strive for a liturgy that would better represent the ancient Roman Church and thus be more acceptable to the Greek Church." *Ibid.*, 153.

<sup>214</sup> Early figures central these efforts at reform include the Bishop of Brixen Nicholas of Cusa, and the Papal Master of Ceremonies John Burchard, who created a revised *Ordo Missae* in 1502. Cavanaugh points out that "from that time on the demands for a restored practice are frequently encountered and several individual dioceses undertook such reform for themselves. The German Reichstag at Speyer in 1526 clearly expressed the need for a reformed Mass book. A more determined effort was made by the provincial synod of Trier in 1549 which prescribed the Trier or other approved missals for all dioceses of the province. Similar enactment were in force in the provinces of Mainz. The concern over a uniform missal was shared also in Italy, Spain and Portugal." *Ibid.*, 153-54.

practice come to replace the more ancient formularies of the Roman Rite.<sup>215</sup> Collections that predate Isaac's, it turns out, even if containing a smaller number or musical settings, were fairly complete.<sup>216</sup> These polyphonic settings comprise a vast creative effort and often achieve exquisitely beautiful ways of communicating the proper chant texts. To be sure, they reflect a concern to preserve and promote the ancient texts. At the same time, one should not overestimate their influence on actual liturgical practice. While they were certainly sung in the larger cathedrals, Fassler and Jeffery emphasize that "throughout the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, Gregorian chant . . . prevailed throughout Europe as the common repertory of liturgical music."<sup>217</sup>

### **The Dis-integration of the Form and Function of the Introit in Liturgical Praxis**

The introit of the early Middle Ages consisted of a brief antiphon text, derived from the Church's textual tradition, which was sung with psalm verses during the entrance procession of the ministers at the beginning of the celebration of the Eucharist. Its open

---

<sup>215</sup> Ibid., 152. According to Cavanaugh, "On Sundays throughout the year the Mass of the Holy Trinity was often sung and on Mondays the votive Mass of the Holy Spirit usually was celebrated. Fridays and Saturdays were reserved for the Mass of the Holy Cross and the Blessed Virgin respectively. On Tuesdays the Mass of the Angels may have been celebrated and on Wednesdays that of a patron saint; on Thursdays the Mass of the Holy Eucharist was usually sung. In actual practice this type of series may have been more limited due to an indiscriminate use of the *Requiem*, the *missa de beata Virgini* or other *missae favorabiliores*" (ibid.). See also Adolph Franz, *Die Messe im deutschen Mittelalter* (Freiburg, 1902): 151.

<sup>216</sup> Cavanaugh, "Cycles of Polyphonic Mass Propers," 153. Note that another Trent Codex (n. 93) was discovered more recently and contains a body of polyphonic introit settings of a scope not matched until Isaac's *Choralis Constantinus* and the *Jena Choirbook*. See Brian Edward Power, "The Polyphonic Introits of 'Trento, archivio capitolare, MS 93': A Stylistic Analysis" (PhD diss., University of Toronto, 1999).

<sup>217</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 108. Treitler agrees, saying, "It is the music of the *Ars nova* that gets our attention, inevitably, because we can still perform it and hear it and study it. But that gives us a view of history that is in a way distorted, especially for this period of the late Middle Ages when written music was rather special and exceptional." Treitler, *With Voice and Pen*, 13. Pirrotta concurs: "The composers of the *Ars nova* were all monks, priests, canons, or church organists. . . . I have come to consider their activity as a private hobby, appreciated only by a few connoisseurs." Nino Pirrotta, "*Ars nova* and *Stile Novo*," in *Music and Culture in Italy from the Middle Ages to the Baroque: A Collection of Essays* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1984), 29.

musical form made it an ideal accompaniment to a ritual unit like the entrance procession, that from church to church—or even from celebration to celebration in the same church—inevitably varied in length. If the procession was longer, more psalm verses were used; if shorter, fewer. The concluding doxology brought the entrance to a Trinitarian climax that culminated in a reprise of the antiphon and the presider’s greeting of the assembly.

#### The Transition from a the Use of a Variable Number of Verses to Only One Psalm Verse

By no later than the middle of the ninth century, the typical musical form of the introit had likely changed in some places to make use of only one psalm verse—particularly in the churches in Northern Europe where the Gregorian tradition took shape. This change eventually became universal and normative in the Roman Rite. There were several reasons for this change. To be sure, not every church building was a large Roman-style basilica. Some had different floor plans and different locations for the sacristy that were not as conducive to long entrance processions.<sup>218</sup> In many places, the celebration of the Liturgy of the Hours began to be normatively celebrated immediately before Mass, making a formal entrance procession redundant.<sup>219</sup> Also, the vesting of the priest came to take place in or around the sanctuary, in view of the assembly, again removing the need for an entrance procession.<sup>220</sup> Jungmann fittingly explains the situation:

---

<sup>218</sup> Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 32. He states that “since the sacristy was situated near the chancel in this arrangement, the entrance procession has a shorter route from the side of the chancel barrier to the processional space in the middle of the schola; it no longer passed through the assembly” (ibid., 12). See also *New Grove*, s.v. “Introit (i);” Michel Andrieu, *Les Ordines Romani du haut moyen âge*, 144-46; Cyrille Vogel, “Versus ad orientem: L’Observation dans les *Ordines romani du haut moyen âge*,” *La Maison-Dieu* 70 (2e trimestre, 1962): 71-99; and Thomas F. Mathews, “An Early Roman Chancel Arrangement and Its Liturgical Function,” *Rivista di archeologia cristiana* 38 (1962): 71-95.

<sup>219</sup> Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:269-70.

<sup>220</sup> Ibid., 1:269.



Up till about 1000 [the entrance procession] continued to be a fully-developed ceremonial. . . . Not only in the Roman stational service but even in the Frankish Church, the entrance of the clergy had been a ceremony of capital importance, and in the descriptions and the allegorical explanations of Carolingian interpreters of the liturgy it assumed a formidable amount of space. But in the years that followed a change set in. . . . This change is easily explained by the medieval evolution of choir prayer and the development of the fixed regulation that the . . . Mass should each day immediately follow Terce or the other corresponding hour, for which the clergy were already assembled. An entrance procession was therefore superfluous. . . . The natural consequence of all this evolution was a change in the role of the introit; the introit would have to be sung, but not as an accompaniment to the few steps which as a rule were all that had to be taken to reach the altar. Instead of a processional, the introit became an introductory chant which in Rome already in the fourteenth century was not begun till the priest reached the altar steps.<sup>221</sup>

In most places and for centuries, then, the once open musical form became closed, severing the connection between the introit and the entrance procession. As has been noted already, the Christological, festal, and seasonal allusions in an antiphon were also lost in cases when the verse to which the antiphon alludes is a verse other than the first.<sup>222</sup>

#### The Separation of the Choir's Liturgical Role from That of the Presider

At least by the mid twelfth century, the liturgical function of the schola had begun to be separated from the liturgical function of the presider. Eventually, the presider was obliged to recite the chant texts, even when they were sung by the choir. In 1140 this was required for the introit, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus and Agnus Dei, and then for all chant texts in the mid-

---

<sup>221</sup> Ibid., 1:269-70. Jungmann also notes, however, that "in Romanesque structures the sacristy was not built near the entrance of the church but somewhere close to the choir. In these cases the entry called for in the ancient Mass regulations could be reinaugurated. Sometimes, in fact, it was consciously revived and given a greater development by marching the long way through the nave of the church . . . or at least a procession down the aisle on Sundays" (ibid., 1:270).

<sup>222</sup> Lamb, *Psalms in Christian Worship*, 89.

thirteenth century.<sup>223</sup> Thereby the priest's actions became independent of the schola's singing, which, Jungmann says, was "no longer considered as a complementary part of the community celebration."<sup>224</sup> In addition, throughout the Middle Ages, the preparation of the presider and other ministers at the start of Mass became increasingly lengthy and elaborate, and these accretions diminished the importance of the introit.<sup>225</sup> In the Pontifical of William Durandus (compiled c. 1295), for example, while the schola is singing the introit, the ministers say psalm forty-two (*Iudica me Deus*) and the presider says a prayer of penitence. It seems the presider no longer makes any signals to the schola to indicate when they should begin singing the doxology.<sup>226</sup> This is in stark contrast to the record of the *Ordines Romani*, where, as is clear from the analysis above, the interaction of presider and schola is clearly present. Thus, the singing of the introit came to be of little consequence to what the presider was doing at the beginning of the Mass, and vice versa. By the time of the *Missale Romanum* of Pius V (1570), the quiet recitation of psalms and prayers by the presider and other ministers had become important parts of the introductory rites<sup>227</sup> and the introit had ceased to

---

<sup>223</sup> See L. Fischer, *Bernhardi Cardinalis et Lateranensis Ecclesiae Prioris Ordo officiorum Ecclesiae Lateransis* (Munich, 1916), 80-85; and F. M. Guerrini, *Ordinarium iuxta ritum sacri Ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum* (Rome, 1921), 235-44.

<sup>224</sup> Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:106.

<sup>225</sup> This elaboration took place even though liturgical reform movements since the twelfth century had sought, and in some ways achieved, the simplification of the liturgy in the West. One notes, for example, the Cistercian reform of the twelfth century, the reform instigated by the Papal Curia in the thirteenth century, and the reform of the Council of Trent itself. The spirit of the reform movements shift, so that, by the time of the Council of Trent, the concern is less with the spiritual effectiveness of the liturgy and more with securing centralized Roman control and preventing haphazard change. For a general survey of changes in the Roman Rite, see *Grove Online*, s.v. "Mass, Liturgy and Chant" (by James W. McKinnon); and S. J. P. Van Dijk and J. Hazelden Walker, *The Origins of the Modern Roman Liturgy: The Liturgy of the Papal Court and the Franciscan Order in the Thirteenth Century* (Westminster, MD: Newman Press / London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1960).

<sup>226</sup> Michel Andrieu, *Le pontifical romain au moyen âge*, vol. 3, *Le Pontifical du Guillaume Durand* (Vatican City: 1940), 635-39.

<sup>227</sup> See *Missale Romanum: Editio Princeps (1570)*, Manlio Sodi and Achille Maria Triacca, eds. (Vatican City: Libreria Editrice Vaticana, 1998), 6, 9-11. See also Metzinger, "Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song," 21.

function as the primary accompaniment to the entrance procession.<sup>228</sup> Indeed, the 1570 Missal does not even mention the singing of the introit by the schola, but instructs that the presider “*incipit intelligibili voce, Introitum missae.*”<sup>229</sup> This elaborate structure of the introductory rites and the separation of the singing of the introit, the entrance procession, and the presider’s preparation for Mass remained essentially the same in the Roman Missal until the twentieth-century liturgical reform.

### Instrumental Introits

Examples of the substitution of instrumental compositions and especially organ playing for the introit—like those in the *Buxheimer Orgelbuch* (c. 1470)<sup>230</sup>—abound in the fifteenth century. In this type of substitution, Caldwell explains, often “the instrumental introit replaces all or part of the sung liturgical introit of the Mass. Usually the plainchant of the antiphon was set in full as an organ piece, leaving the psalm verse and the doxology to be sung in plainchant.”<sup>231</sup> After the fifteenth century, instrumental settings were less frequent, but still common. Frescobaldi, in his *Fiori musicali* of 1635, replaces the introit with brief introductory toccatas.<sup>232</sup> Organists frequently juxtaposed their own improvisation with the

---

<sup>228</sup> See *Missale Romanum: Editio Princeps (1570)*, 10-11. See also Metzinger, “Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song,” 21; and Robert Cabié, *The Eucharist*, vol. 2 of *The Church at Prayer*, ed. A. G. Martimort (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1986), 149-50.

<sup>229</sup> *Missale Romanum: Editio Princeps (1570)*, 11.

<sup>230</sup> See Appendix A of this study. Tunley notes that “the so-called organ mass was an extension of the age-old custom of responsorial singing in which priest and choir alternated in the chanting of plainsong. With the development of polyphony the choral response was often couched in elaborate versions of the plainsong. In the organ masses the instrument took over the role of the choir.” David Tunley, *François Couperin and ‘the Perfection of Music’* (Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2004), 52-53. The practice was regulated in the *Caeremoniale Parisiense* (1662).

<sup>231</sup> *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. “Introit (ii)” (by John Caldwell).

<sup>232</sup> *Ibid.* See also John Caldwell, *English Keyboard Music before the Nineteenth Century* (Oxford, 1973/R).

singing of liturgical chant by the schola, but often organ versets or improvisation actually replaced portions of the liturgical text.<sup>233</sup>

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, instrumental settings of the introit decreased in favor of ornate choral settings of the Kyrie, which entirely covered the introit said quietly by the presider.<sup>234</sup> Instrumental settings of the introit gained popularity again in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries in the form of organ accompaniments to Low Mass.<sup>235</sup> See, for example, Olivier Messiaen's *Messe de la Pentecôte* (1949-50).<sup>236</sup> The art of organ playing as a replacement for the proper chants of the Mass was often improvisatory and thus the extant manuscripts preserve only a small portion of the music actually played; published works do not necessarily reflect the music as it was actually played during the liturgy.<sup>237</sup> While some of the extant examples of the practice are exquisite works of art, their primary effect on the introit was to relegate its text to a *soto voce* recitation by the celebrant, thus eliminating its function as an entrance chant and effectively censoring the official proper chant texts from the liturgical celebration.

---

<sup>233</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. "Organ Mass" (by E. Higginbottom), <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005).

<sup>234</sup> *New Grove*, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., s.v. "Introit (ii)."

<sup>235</sup> *Ibid.* "Liszt and Kodály provided short movements [for the introit]. The typical French 'organ mass' suites of Tournemire and others always begin with an introductory movement for the entry of the ministers, a distinguished example being that in Messiaen's *Messe de la Pentecôte* (1949-50)" (*ibid.*). "Messiaen's *Messe de la pentecôte* . . . consists of five movements: Entrée, Offertoire, Consecration, Communion and Sortie." *Grove Online*, s.v. "Organ Mass." See also, Edward Higginbottom, "Organ Music and the Liturgy," in *The Cambridge Companion to the Organ*, ed. G. Webber and N. Thistlewaite (Cambridge, 1999): 130-47.

<sup>236</sup> See Appendix A of this study.

<sup>237</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. "Organ Mass."

## The Beginnings of the Reform and Renewal of the Roman Rite Entrance Song

### The Council of Trent

At the twenty-second session (17 September 1562) of the Council of Trent (1545-63), it was agreed that bishops should make every effort to “keep out of their churches the kind of music in which a base and suggestive element is introduced into the organ playing or singing.”<sup>238</sup> A revised *Graduale Romanum* (Mass Antiphoner) was one of the most important results of the reform of liturgical music that followed the Council of Trent.<sup>239</sup> One should not overstate the success of Trent’s liturgical and musical reforms, however. No new liturgy was set forth immediately—the terms ‘Tridentine Mass’ and ‘Tridentine Office’ are misleading. The Council’s primary liturgical concerns were to standardize the Roman Rite throughout the West, and to instigate the process of creating liturgical books that would enable this standardization.<sup>240</sup> Many goals of the Council, including its musical reforms, Levy says,

---

<sup>238</sup> “Ab ecclesiis vero musicas eas, ubi sive organo sive cantu lascivum aut impurum aliquid miscetur.” Norman P. Tanner, ed., *Decrees of the Ecumenical Councils*, vol. 2 (London: Sheed & Ward / Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press, 1990), 737. See also *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.”

<sup>239</sup> Levy, et al., recount that “on 31 May 1608 Paul V (pontificate 1605-21) granted G. B. Raimondi printing rights, and six musicians were commissioned as editors—Felice Anerio, Pietro Felini, Ruggiero Giovannelli, Curzio Mancini, Giovanni Maria Nanino and Francesco Soriano. By 1611 the membership had dwindled to two members, Anerio and Soriano, both of whom, like Guidetti, had been closely associated with Palestrina. When Raimondi died on 13 February 1614 publication was transferred to the Medici Press in Rome; the *Graduale ... iuxta ritum sacrosanctae romanae ecclesiae cum cantu, Pauli V. pontificis maximi iussu reformato ... ex typographica Medicea* appeared in two volumes, in 1614 (the *Temporale*) and 1615 (the *Sanctorale*). The Anerio-Soriano Medicean edition of the gradual strongly reflected 16<sup>th</sup>- and 17<sup>th</sup>-century humanist interest in the relationship between text and melody. The liturgical texts were revised to ‘improve’ the quality and character of the Latin, cadential patterns were reshaped, certain stereotyped melodic figures were associated with certain words, melodic clichés were introduced to ‘explain’ words, melodies were made more tonal by the introduction of the B-flat, melismas were abbreviated, and accentual declamation was introduced to improve the intelligibility of the chanted text.” *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.”

<sup>240</sup> *Ibid.*

“were not realized, for despite the official imprimatur affixed to most chant books . . . a bewildering variety of chant melodies continued to flourish for another 300 years.”<sup>241</sup>

While critics often disparage the Introductory Rites of the Mass of Paul VI as unwieldy and lacking theological coherence,<sup>242</sup> it can also be argued that this part of the Mass ritual was also unwieldy in the 1570 *Missale Romanum*.<sup>243</sup> The 1570 Missal provided a full eleven options for the celebration of the Mass, though by the early twentieth century the most common forms were only four: the Pontifical Mass, the Solemn High Mass, High Mass, and Low Mass.<sup>244</sup> The Low Mass was the most frequently celebrated form in the majority of parishes, many of which would have lacked the resources required for the celebration of the more elaborate forms. It is the High Mass that is of most interest here because of its influence (along with *Ordo Romanus I*) on the reformed liturgy of Vatican II. In this form, the introit would have been sung by the choir while the priest said the prayers at the foot of the altar. After his prayers, the priest would silently repeat the introit antiphon text to himself.<sup>245</sup>

While the Tridentine Introductory Rites are for the most part an amalgamation of additions that had taken place over the preceding centuries, the form adopted at Trent was indeed the product of a liturgical reform and reflects a fairly consistent theology.<sup>246</sup> As such,

---

<sup>241</sup> Ibid. For more on the musical reform of the Council of Trent and particularly for examples of the abuses the Council addressed, see Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music*, 25-31.

<sup>242</sup> See, for example, Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison;” M. Francis, “Uncluttering the Eucharistic Vestibule;” M. Francis, “Well Begun Is Half Done;” Ralph A. Keifer, “Our Cluttered Vestibule: The Unreformed Entrance Rite,” *Worship* 48:5 (1974): 270-77; Michael G. Witczak, “The Introductory Rites: Threshold of the Sacred, Entry into Community, or Pastoral Problem?,” *Liturgical Ministry* 3 (Winter 1994): 22-27; Joyce Ann Zimmerman, “Liturgical Notes,” in *Introductory Rites, Liturgical Ministry* 3 (Winter 1994): 35-6.

<sup>243</sup> M. Francis, “Uncluttering the Eucharistic Vestibule,” 2.

<sup>244</sup> Ibid.

<sup>245</sup> Ibid., 4.

<sup>246</sup> K. G. Fellerer, “Church Music and the Council of Trent,” *Musical Quarterly* 39:4 (October 1953): 576-94; and M. Francis, “Uncluttering the Eucharistic Vestibule,” 5.

it served to standardize the “fore-Mass” in the Roman Rite and even to simplify it. As a whole, they served as a ritualization of a liminal state, marking out the sacred from the daily, and setting the tone for what was to follow.<sup>247</sup> For good or for ill, the shape of the rites also served to mirror the dominant theology and societal structure of the time. In these rites, Francis states,

God is transcendent, all powerful, and can only be invoked through the mediation of one who is specifically appointed and purified for this role: the priest. In order to enter into God’s presence it is always necessary to acknowledge one’s unworthiness. . . . It is through the good offices of the priest, who prays *for* the assembly that the unbloody sacrifice of the cross is re-presented and the grace of God bestowed on those present. For the faithful assisting at Mass, just being in the presence of God’s awesome majesty is enough—there is no need to know or participate in the dangerous ways in which the priest is interceding for the assembly before God.<sup>248</sup>

Trent’s concern that the spoken and sung texts of the liturgy be clearly intelligible reflected a more general concern for intelligibility in the culture of Europe during that time. Indeed, Fassler and Jeffery assert the “concern for textual declamation and emotional expression ultimately brought Renaissance polyphony to an end, leading to the development of opera and the new Baroque style.”<sup>249</sup> Though there were some significant exceptions, serious composers no longer concerned themselves with music for liturgical use. Renaissance polyphony continued to be performed in churches, however, and its principles of counterpoint were (and are still) central to the musical formation of composers,

---

<sup>247</sup> See Francis, “Uncluttering the Eucharistic Vestibule,” 4.

<sup>248</sup> *Ibid.*, 11-12.

<sup>249</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 114.

musicologists, and music theorists. A form of music called *stile antico*, which mimicked the Renaissance style, became popular in churches in the Baroque period.<sup>250</sup>

#### Precursors to the Vatican II Reform of the *Graduale Romanum*

In the nineteenth<sup>251</sup> and early twentieth centuries, a chant revival begins,<sup>252</sup> which encourages the use of Gregorian chant, along with Renaissance polyphony, as the music best suited to the Roman Rite.<sup>253</sup> The restoration of the liturgy begun by Dom Prosper Guéranger (d. 1875) instigated the revision of the Mass Antiphoner<sup>254</sup> and several important editions of chant books were published.<sup>255</sup> The intention to publish a Vatican edition of the major chant books was announced during a general congress in 1904 (4-9 April), and on 25 April of the same year the Vatican retained the right to publish the book by means of a *motu proprio*, in which Pius X's required "that the restored melodies should conform to the ancient codices . .

---

<sup>250</sup> Ibid.

<sup>251</sup> For more on the nineteenth century, see Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music*, 115-44, and on the Association of St. Cecelia in the U.S., 129-32. See also Congregation of Rites, *De Musica Sacra* (7 July 1894).

<sup>252</sup> It is at this time that we find the origins of groups like the Society of St. Cecelia (founded 1868). The enthusiasm for chant and for early liturgical forms in general was inspired in part by the rediscovery of many medieval manuscripts at this time. Dom Joseph Pothier (d. 1923) (a protégé of Dom Prosper Guéranger) and Dom André Mocquereau (d. 1930) were central figures in this regard. The abbey of Solesmes played a major role in early chant research, transcription and publishing. See *Worship Music: A Concise Dictionary*, s.vv. "Cecilian Movement," "Mocquereau, André," "Solesmes."

<sup>253</sup> Arnold and Harper note that "the trend towards antiquarianism, particularly in the Cecilian movement (which although officially begun in the 1860s had much earlier roots), stressed the revival of older church music but did not provide incentives for composers to write new masses in a contemporary idiom. Furthermore, the decline of royal chapels after the French Revolution meant that few composers of significance had to compose church music as a major duty." The result is that "by the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century settings were of two kinds: the 'concert mass' for soloists, full choir and orchestra, with virtually no attempt to provide suitable music for use in church, and the small-scale setting, often in a completely retrospective style and of little music ambition." *Grove Online*, s.v. "Mass 1600-2000" (by Arnold and Harper), <http://www.grovemusic.com/> (accessed February 10, 2005).

<sup>254</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. "Plainchant."

<sup>255</sup> See *ibid.*; and *Grove Online*, s.v. "Gradual" for histories of the publication of these books, the competition involved between publishers, and the philosophies that motivated the various publishers and composers.



. and that the monks of Solesmes were to be entrusted with the editing of the music.”<sup>256</sup> The inspiration for this revision of the *Graduale Romanum* was, at least in part, Pius X’s earlier *motu proprio* of 22 November 1903, *Tra le sollecitudini*. In terms of official legislative ecclesiastical documents *Tra le sollecitudini* was of great importance regarding the renewal of the entrance song in the Roman Rite. In essence, the early form of the introit was restored. After a centuries-old tradition of using only one psalm verse at the introit, at solemn Mass and the *Missa cantata*,

If the priest and his ministers enter the church by a rather long route, nothing forbids, after the chanting of the *antiphon of the Introit and its versicle*, the chanting of many other verses of the same psalm. In this case, the antiphon can be repeated after every one or two verses, and when the priest has reached the altar, the psalm is broken off, and if necessary, the *Gloria Patri* is sung and the antiphon repeated.<sup>257</sup>

To be sure, the provision for more than one psalm verse takes for granted that the introit will begin as the priest and his ministers process to the altar, and not, as had been the case for centuries, once the priest reached the foot of the altar.<sup>258</sup> Pius X couches this renewal or expansion of the introit form within a section entitled “Participation of the faithful in the sung Mass,” which seeks sung “active participation” in three degrees: (1) liturgical responses

---

<sup>256</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.” Both of these requirements persist to the present day, though, of course, access to the early codices and the methods used to interpret them have since vastly improved.

<sup>257</sup> *Tra le sollecitudini* no. 27a. Trans., Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music*, 363.

<sup>258</sup> Jungmann notes that “the rubric of the present-day Vatican Gradual apparently takes the stand that the introit should again assume its rightful place as the entrance song of the Mass, for it expressly orders that the introit be intoned as the celebrant approaches the altar: “When the priest starts toward the altar, the cantors begin the introit.” There are liturgists who insist that the Vatican Gradual introduced no change, that the introit is to be intoned only after the priest arrives at the foot of the altar. But actually the wording adopted is different from that in the older rubrics, substituting *accedente sacerdote ad altare* for the other reading, *cum . . . pervenerit ante infimum gradum altaris* (the rubric based on the Ceremonial of Bishops). The plain and obvious direction of the rubric is: Start the introit as soon as the celebrant appears in the sanctuary.” Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:270 n. 40.

(2) the Mass Ordinary, and (3) the proper chants of the Mass.<sup>259</sup> Both looking to the past (allowing more than one psalm verse) and looking to the future (recommending congregational participation in the entirety of the entrance song<sup>260</sup>), these requirements of *Tra le sollecitudini* are precursors to the congregational singing of the entrance song that stemmed from the Liturgical Movement and Vatican II liturgical reform.<sup>261</sup> In 1908 the *Graduale sacrosanctae romanae ecclesiae* was published, which remained the version of the Mass Antiphoner in force for the Roman Rite until the publication the reformed *Graduale Romanum* in 1974.<sup>262</sup> Though the book lacks additional psalm verse assignments, it was presumed that if necessary “other verses of the same psalm”<sup>263</sup> would be used.<sup>264</sup>

---

<sup>259</sup> Ibid., 25.

<sup>260</sup> Other than perhaps the *Gloria Patri*, no part of the introit had traditionally been sung by the congregation, only by the choir. “One must insist above all on this full participation in the [proper] chant in religious communities and in seminaries.” *Tra le sollecitudini* no. 25c.

<sup>261</sup> The prescriptions for the introit in the introduction to the 1974 *Graduale Romanum* (*Ordo Cantus Missae*) are as follows: “When the congregation has gathered and while the priest and ministers are going to the altar, the entrance antiphon begins. Its intonation may be shorter or longer as the circumstances warrant; better still, the whole assembly may begin the chant together. Thus the asterisk in the *Graduale* marking off the part to be intoned is to be regarded merely as a guide. When the choir has sung the antiphon, the cantor or cantors sing the verse, then the choir repeats the antiphon. The alternation between antiphon and versicles may go on as long as is necessary to accompany the entrance procession. The final repetition of the antiphon, however, may be preceded by the *Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat*, sung as the one, final versicle. When the *Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat* have a special musical termination, this must be used with each of the other verses. If the *Gloria Patri* and the repetition of the antiphon would cause the chant to last too long, the *Gloria Patri* is omitted. When the procession is short, only one psalm verse is used or even the antiphon alone, without the verse.” *Ordo Cantus Missae* no. 1, trans. ICEL, *Documents on the Liturgy 1963-1979: Conciliar, Papal, and Curial Texts* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1982), 1345.

<sup>262</sup> Levy, et al., caution that “although much labour and ‘Romantic’ scholarship went into the preparation of the Pothier, Vatican and Solesmes chant books, the latter cannot be considered critical editions in any sense, because they lack commentaries and do not specify the manuscript sources of each melody. Special collections, such as the Solesmes *Variae preces* (1896) and Carl Ott’s *Offertoriale* (1935) provide some clues as to the sources. However, the modern chant books are by and large functional compilations.” *Grove Online*, s.v. “Plainchant.”

<sup>263</sup> *Tra le sollecitudini* provides no guidelines for the frequent instances when the introit antiphon is not taken from the psalms, or for those even cases that are even more rare in which the verses themselves are not taken from the psalms. The guidelines for the other proper chants of the offertory and communion antiphons, however, do address this issue saying, respectively, “If the antiphon is not taken from a psalm, a psalm suitable to the solemnity may be chosen,” and “If the antiphon is not taken from a psalm, one may choose a psalm fitting to the solemnity of the liturgical action.” One should assume this guideline also applies to the introit.

In the early twentieth century, there are rare examples of choral mass settings by prominent composers that are deliberately suited for liturgical use, and, as Arnold and Harper note, “the revival of choral celebration of Holy Communion in the Anglican Church in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century marked the beginning of a steady stream of liturgical settings of Mass texts in English mostly for choir and organ.”<sup>265</sup> On a smaller scale, serious composers in the Roman Catholic (in Latin) and Lutheran traditions also began to write similarly useable Mass settings.<sup>266</sup> Still, these settings are of little interest in terms of the historical development of the entrance song or introit, as most were *Missa brevis* settings and do not include any proper texts.

## Conclusion

To be sure, 1963 and the liturgical renewal and reform prompted by the Constitution on the Liturgy *Sacrosanctum Concilium* of the Second Vatican Council mark a turning point in the history of liturgical music. There came a paradigmatic shift in compositional style away from a focus on technique and artistic expression, and toward an approach in which the primary concern is pastorally effective liturgical enactment for the typical parish community.<sup>267</sup> The shift to a pastoral focus and its concern for “full, conscious and active participation” by not just the ministers and the choir, but also the entire assembly, is without question a laudable development. It has spurred the creation of a great variety of accessible

---

<sup>264</sup> Jungmann states, “In our time the tendency has been manifested more than once to restore the introit to a fuller form, at least on festive occasions, by substituting the original full psalm in place of its vestigial single verse. Thus at the coronation Mass of Pope Pius XI in 1922 the entire *Introitus* psalm was sung.” Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:327.

<sup>265</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Mass 1600-2000.”

<sup>266</sup> See *ibid.*

<sup>267</sup> *Ibid.* For another assessment of music and the liturgical reform, see Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 122-23.

music in a number of forms that enable congregational singing, drawing upon popular styles and more effectively enabling local and ethnic music to find expression in the liturgy.<sup>268</sup> It is true, nevertheless, that the pastoral requirements of the post-Conciliar liturgy preclude for the most part the high-caliber musical creativity that had been for centuries an integral part of the tradition.<sup>269</sup> Arnold and Harper go so far as to suggest that “the tension between the liturgical purpose and creative treatment of the texts of the Mass . . . may have fractured permanently.”<sup>270</sup> Certain major centers of liturgical creativity are attempting creative solutions to this tension. Chapters three and four of this study will offer some ways forward.

This shift from compositional to liturgical concerns necessitates a shift of focus in this study—from musical artifacts (primarily manuscripts and published books of music) to secondary artifacts (primarily church legislation of varying degrees of authority, but also documents produced by other interested groups—for example, meetings of liturgical experts and musicians).<sup>271</sup> The purpose of chapter two is to turn to a consideration of these secondary artifacts.

Prior to the modern Liturgical Movement and the liturgical reform of the Second Vatican Council, the “ultimate liturgical ideal” had come to be “the scrupulous observance of the Tridentine rubrics by the presiding priest and the dignified chanting of his prayers in

---

<sup>268</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Mass 1600-2000.”

<sup>269</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>270</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>271</sup> In more recent history, particularly since the advent of recording technology and the development of the academic disciplines of ethnography and ritual studies, however, another source of evidence comes into play: the enacted rites of actual worshipping assemblies.

Latin, while an expert choir, preferably with boy trebles, sang a chant Proper and an Ordinary by Palestrina or some contemporary.”<sup>272</sup> As McKinnon notes, “this was all to change.”<sup>273</sup>

---

<sup>272</sup> *Grove Online*, s.v. “Mass, Liturgy and Chant.”

<sup>273</sup> *Ibid.*

## **Chapter 2**

### **The Entrance Song of the Roman Rite in Recent and Contemporary Ecclesiastical Documents**

The body of ecclesiastical norms regarding the celebration of the liturgy<sup>1</sup> is vast when one considers the entire worship tradition of the Church over the past two millennia. Given this vast tradition, it is necessary to define which norms this chapter will consider. The focus here is the development, relevance, and implications of ecclesiastical norms regarding the Roman Rite entrance song in Conciliar, episcopal, papal, and curial documents from the turn of the twentieth century up to the present day, with a focus on the liturgical reform of the Second Vatican Council.<sup>2</sup> A consideration of ecclesiastical norms concerning the entrance song is important, given that the goal of chapters three and four is to determine the most appropriate forms of the entrance song for present-day liturgical practice.

#### **The Nature and Interpretation of Liturgical Norms after Vatican Council II**

Liturgy concerns the enactment of the Church's rites by the community of the faithful. Since canon law governs the entirety of the Church's activity,<sup>3</sup> the regulation of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Such norms, "when properly understood and implemented, serve to ensure the beauty and prayerfulness of our worship of God and our celebration together as Christ's body. . . . The function of canon law is to provide harmony and unity in the external life of the Church as a reflection of its Spirit-guided inner unity." John Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction* (Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1987), 1, 2.

<sup>2</sup> For liturgical law and its regulation of the music of the liturgy, particularly for the period prior to the twentieth century, see Robert F. Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Music*; and Fiorenzo Romita, *Ius musicae liturgicae* (Turin: Marietti, 1936).

<sup>3</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 2.

Church's liturgy<sup>4</sup> is part of canon law, even if the majority of liturgical norms are not contained in the *Codex Iuris Canonici*.<sup>5</sup> Specifically, as Frederick McManus says, liturgical law "directly embrace[s] the rule of celebration, affecting the actions (words, songs, ritual acts) and the circumstances or environment (churches and baptisteries, furnishings, vesture, and the like)."<sup>6</sup> While most liturgical law is not found in the Code, it is subject to the same principles of promulgation, interpretation, revocation and dispensation.<sup>7</sup>

The nature of liturgical law in any era finds its source in the Church's understanding of the nature of Christian liturgy. In the pre-Conciliar period, the evidence in official documents is admittedly sparse, aside from that found in the official ritual books. There is, however, a definition of liturgy in Pius XII's Encyclical *Mediator Dei* (30 November 1947),

---

<sup>4</sup> That is, "the divine act of sanctification and the public, corporate human response. It is the public worship of God by the Church, Christ the Head and his members—done through signs, the deeds and words—that articulate communally the inward faith and worship and the divine gift of grace." Frederick R. McManus, "Liturgical Law," in *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, ed. Anscar J. Chupungco, vol. 1, *Introduction to the Liturgy* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997), 400.

<sup>5</sup> "For the most part the Code does not define the rites which must be observed in celebrating liturgical actions." Canon Law Society of America, *New Commentary on the Code of Canon Law*, ed. John P. Beal, James A. Coriden, and Thomas J. Green (Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 2000), canon 2. "There is another body of universal ecclesiastical law, even larger than the code, called liturgical law, consisting of norms too numerous and detailed to be included in the code. These laws are found chiefly in the liturgical books. Another important source of liturgical law since Vatican II is the particular laws on the liturgy enacted by Conferences of Bishops and diocesan bishops (c. 838). Although canon 2 speaks only of liturgical 'laws' (*leges*), the principle stated in this canon also applies to liturgical norms found in documents that are acts of executive rather than legislative power, such as directories or instructions published by a congregation of the Roman Curia on liturgical matters. All the liturgical books and rites contain an introduction, and some contain additional introductions to the various parts of the rites. These introductions . . . have some theological content, but they are largely juridical in nature. Within the rites themselves are found the rubrics . . . giving the precise directions for the proper execution of the rite. Both the rubrics and the juridical norms of the introductions are true ecclesiastical laws" (*ibid.*, 50).

<sup>6</sup> McManus, "Liturgical Law," *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 400. Liturgical law is not the same as the closely related body of "sacramental law," which concerns such matters as matrimonial dispensations and requirements for ordination.

<sup>7</sup> *New Commentary on the Code of Canon Law*, 50.

which was later elaborated in the Instruction *De musica sacra* (3 September 1958) from the Congregation of Rites:<sup>8</sup>

«Sacra Liturgia integrum constituit publicum cultum mystici Iesu Christi Corporis, Capitis nempe membrorumque eius» (*Mediator Dei*). Propterea sunt «actiones liturgicae» illae actiones sacrae, quae, ex institutione Iesu Christi vel Ecclesiae eorumque nomine, secundum libros liturgicos a Sancta Sede approbatos, a personis ad hoc legitime deputatis peraguntur, ad debitum cultum Deo, Sanctis ac Beatis deferendum . . . ceterae actionis sacrae quae, sive in ecclesia sive extra, sacerdote quoque praesente vel praeunte, peraguntur, “pia exercitia” appellantur.

“The sacred liturgy comprises the whole public worship of the Mystical Body of Jesus Christ, that is, of the Head and of his members” (*Mediator Dei*). “Liturgical services” are therefore those sacred actions which have been instituted by Jesus Christ or the Church and are performed in their name by legitimately appointed persons according to liturgical books approved by the Holy See, in order to give due worship to God, the Saints, and the Blessed (cf. canon 1256). Other sacred acts performed inside or outside the church, even if performed by a priest or in his presence, are called “pious exercises.”<sup>9</sup>

This understanding is amplified and superseded by that of the Constitution on the Sacred Liturgy *Sacrosanctum Concilium* (4 December 1963) of the Second Vatican Council:

Merito igitur Liturgia habetur veluti Iesu Christi sacerdotalis muneris exercitatio, in qua per signa sensibilia significatur et modo singularis proprio efficitur sanctificatio hominis, et a mystico Iesu Christi Corpore, Capite nempe eiusque membris, integer cultus publicus exercetur.

Rightly, then, the liturgy is considered as an exercise of the priestly office of Jesus Christ. In the liturgy, by means of signs perceptible to the senses, human sanctification is signified and brought about in ways proper to each of these signs; in the liturgy the whole public worship is performed by the Mystical Body of Jesus Christ, that is, by the Head and his members.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>8</sup> “Often called the *Magna Charta* of the liturgical movement, this encyclical [*Mediator Dei*] was the first in the history of the Church to be devoted entirely to the liturgy. Although it was basically positive in tone, it contained various statements reflecting the apprehension and the spirit of unrest that the liturgical movement had initiated in various European countries. Nevertheless, the document did give the liturgical renewal decisive encouragement and a forward thrust.” R. Kevin Seasoltz, *New Liturgy, New Laws* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1980), 7. See also *Mediator Dei*, *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 39 (1947): 528-29.

<sup>9</sup> *De musica sacra* 1. Trans., *The Pope Speaks* 5:2 (1959).

<sup>10</sup> *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 7, *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 56 (1964): 97-138; *Sacrosanctum Oecumenicum Concilium Vaticanum II: Constitutiones, Decreta, Declarationes* (Vatican City: Polyglot Press, 1966), 3-69. Trans., ICEL, DOL, p. 6.



This definition is in turn repeated and amplified by the *Codex Iuris Canonici* (1983):

<p><b>Canon 834</b></p> <p>§1 Munus sanctificandi Ecclesia peculiari modo adimplet per sacram liturgiam, quae quidem habetur ut Iesu Christi muneris sacerdotalis exercitatio, in qua hominum sanctificatio per signa sensibilia significatur ac modo singulis proprio efficitur, atque a mystico Iesu Christi Corpore, Capite nempe et membris, integer cultus Dei publicus exercetur.</p> <p>§2 Huiusmodi cultus tunc habetur, cum deferetur nomine Ecclesiae a personis legitime deputatis et per actus ab ecclesiae auctoritate probatos.</p>	<p>The Church fulfills its sanctifying function in a particular way through the sacred liturgy, which is an exercise of the priestly function of Jesus Christ. In the sacred liturgy the sanctification of humanity is signified through sensible signs and effected in a manner proper to each sign. In the sacred liturgy, the whole public worship of God is carried out by the Head and members of the mystical Body of Jesus Christ.” §2, “Such worship takes place when it is carried out in the name of the Church by persons legitimately designated and through acts approved by the authority of the Church.</p>
<p><b>Canon 837</b></p> <p>§1 Actiones liturgicae non sunt actiones privatae, sed celebrationes Ecclesiae ipsius, quae est «unitatis sacramentum», scilicet plebs sancta sub Episcopis adunata et ordinata; quare ad universum corpus Ecclesiae pertinent illudque manifestant et afficiunt; singula vero membra ipsius attingunt diverso modo, pro diversitate ordinum, munerum et actualis participationis.</p> <p>§2 Actiones liturgicae quatenus suapte natura celebrationem communem secumferant, ubi id fieri potest, cum frequentia et actuosa participatione christifidelium celebrentur.</p>	<p>Liturgical actions are not private actions but celebrations of the Church itself which is <i>the sacrament of unity</i>, that is, a holy people gathered and ordered under the bishops. Liturgical actions therefore belong to the whole body of the Church and manifest and affect it; they touch its individual members in different ways, however, according to the diversity of orders, functions, and actual participation.” §2, “Inasmuch as liturgical actions by their nature entail common celebration, they are to be celebrated with the presence and active participation of the Christian faithful where possible.</p>
<p><b>Canon 839</b></p> <p>§1 Aliis quoque mediis munus sanctificationis peragit Ecclesia, sive orationibus scilicet, quibus Deum deprecatur ut christifideles sanctificati sint in veritate, sive paenitentiae necnon</p>	<p>The Church carries out the function of sanctifying also by other means, both by prayers in which it asks God to sanctify the Christian faithful in truth, and by works of penance and charity which</p>

caritatis operibus, quae quidem magnopere ad Regnum Christi in animis radicandum et roberandum adiuvant et ad mundi salutem conferunt.

§2 Curent locorum Ordinarii ut orationes necnon pia et sacra exercitia populi christiani normis Ecclesiae plene congruant.

greatly help to root and strengthen the kingdom of Christ in souls and contribute to the salvation of the world.” §2, “Local ordinaries are to take care that the prayers and pious and sacred exercises of the Christian people are fully in keeping with the norms of the Church.”<sup>11</sup>

These documents provide insight into the understanding of the nature of the Church’s liturgy as expressed in official ecclesiastical documents during the immediately pre-Conciliar, Conciliar, and post-Conciliar periods, from which three complementary definitions of the nature of Christian liturgy emerge, respectively:

1. Liturgy, the cult due to God, the saints, and the blessed, is public worship by the Mystical Body of Christ according to the liturgical books approved by the Holy See. Instituted by Christ and the Church (in essence, two parts of the same Body) and carried out in the name of Christ and the Church, it is enacted by properly deputed persons.
2. Liturgy is the exercise of the priestly office of Jesus Christ by means of sensible signs (the sanctification by which is signified and effected in ways proper to each sign), which encompasses all public worship of God carried out by the Mystical Body of Christ (Head and members).
3. Liturgy is the exercise of the priestly office of Jesus Christ by means of sensible signs (the sanctification by which is signified and effected in ways proper to each sign), which encompasses all public worship of God carried out by the Mystical

---

<sup>11</sup> Trans., Canon Law Society of America, *Code of Canon Law: Latin-English Edition*. Used with permission.

Body of Christ (Head and members) in the name of the Church by properly deputed persons through acts approved by the authority of the Church. It is distinct from other acts done according to the Church's sanctifying function, such as extra-liturgical prayer (which may be public or private), devotions, and works of penance and charity. It is by its nature public, and thus the participation of the faithful (with very few exceptions) is the norm.

These definitions reflect a common understanding of the nature of Christian liturgy. The emphasis on sensible signs in *Sacrosanctum Concilium* and the *Codex Iuris Canonici* recognizes the sacramental nature of human sanctification and thus relates the liturgy concretely and profoundly to the physical world. The Code incorporates the principle of *actuosa participatio*<sup>12</sup> into its definition—a principle fundamental to the liturgical reform of the Second Vatican Council.<sup>13</sup> The Code also distinguishes liturgy from other acts of sanctification (devotions, and so forth), not to denigrate these other acts or to imply that the sanctification accomplished through them in Christ is separate from that accomplished by the liturgy, but to set the liturgy apart as a group of rites officially sanctioned and enacted in the name of the whole Church.<sup>14</sup> Finally, in the 1983 Code, the source of these official rites, that is, where one can find the texts and rubrics of the liturgy, expands from “*libros liturgicos a*

---

<sup>12</sup> *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 14.

<sup>13</sup> On the meaning and significance of the Conciliar principle of active participation, see Mary Collins, *Contemplative Participation: Sacrosanctum Concilium Twenty-five Years Later* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990); J. Lamberts, “Active Participation as the Gateway Towards an Ecclesial Liturgy,” in *Omnes Circumstantes: Contributions Towards a History of the Role of the People in the Liturgy*, ed. Charles Caspers and Marc Schneiders (Kampen: Uitgeversmaatschappij J. H. Kok, 1990), 234-61; J. Lamberts, ed., *La Participation Active: 100 ans après Pie X et 40 ans après Vatican II* (Louvain: Peeters, 2004); and Frederick R. McManus, *Liturgical Participation: An Ongoing Assessment* (Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1988).

<sup>14</sup> See Peter C. Phan, *Directory on Popular Piety and the Liturgy: Principles and Guidelines. A Commentary* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2005), passim.

*Sancta Sede approbatus*” to “*actus ab Ecclesiae auctoritate probatos*.” The texts of the liturgy are primarily found in the liturgical books approved by the Holy See, to be sure, but are also found elsewhere, such as in books of approved experimental or *ad interim* texts or rites, proper texts for local saints and holidays, emendations to liturgical books issued by the Holy See, and other cultural adaptations to the rites that necessarily go beyond those provided for in the official liturgical books.<sup>15</sup>

Most importantly, liturgical law after the Second Vatican Council reflects a new style and new spirit.<sup>16</sup> This *novus habitus mentis* is evident in the reformed post-Conciliar liturgical books and guided those responsible for the revision of the Code. “Contemporary liturgical law,” McManus notes, “shares the pastoral approach of canonical revision in general, but often with a stronger base derived from the Conciliar liturgical renewal.”<sup>17</sup> Indeed, this shift, he continues, “is amply confirmed by the way in which the revised liturgical books have been designed: the wealth of alternatives, the overall flexibility and

---

<sup>15</sup> See *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 37-40.

<sup>16</sup> McManus, “Liturgical Law,” *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 401. This new style and spirit is in contrast to what some perceive as the rubricism of the pre-Conciliar interpretation of liturgical law. “Rubrics . . . have often been maligned, but more often criticized with good reason, as rigid and fussily concerned with external minutiae. Surely the rubrics of the past and the resulting ceremonial practice have shared the three ecclesial failings put down by the great council: triumphalism, clericalism, and legalism. Moreover, the conventional and contingent nature of most religious signs has often been overlooked as rubrics have been canonized and made sacrosanct. It has often been said that, prior to the liturgical revival, liturgy was defined as or equated with rubrics, the canonical norms that govern the celebration. There is or was a good deal of truth in that assertion about the mindset of the past.” Frederick R. McManus, “The Church at Prayer: Going Beyond Rubrics to the Heart of the Church’s Worship,” *The Jurist* 53:2 (1993): 266. One must acknowledge, however, that there was certainly much more to pre-Conciliar liturgy than rubrics, and that the reformed liturgy is not immune to such a tendency. Indeed, “rubricism” or “liturgical fundamentalism” is an ever-present danger in the interpretation of liturgical law and the enactment of the liturgy. Such a perspective is an easy refuge from the complex hermeneutical skills necessary for good and useful interpretation of liturgical law, and effortless compared to the full and integral implementation of the post-Conciliar liturgical reform, with its labor-intensive need for catechesis and cultural adaptation. The problem arises when the proper execution of liturgical actions becomes an end in itself, rather than a means to the sacramental manifestation of grace in the here and now. See Rembert G. Weakland, “Liturgy and Common Ground,” *America* (20 February 1999).

<sup>17</sup> McManus, “Liturgical Law,” *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 401.

openness to creativity, the choices allowed or encouraged among prayer texts and even more so among liturgical songs . . . the opportunities afforded to employ ‘these or similar words,’ and the very language of prescriptions or precepts.”<sup>18</sup> Good liturgical law in the post-Conciliar period necessarily possesses several qualities that go beyond texts and rubrics. It

- brings out the relationship of the pastoral office and liturgical presidency
- promotes the public order and common good
- facilitates quality liturgical celebrations
- ensures the manifestation of the common Christian faith
- maintains the communion of churches.<sup>19</sup>

History demonstrates that liturgical law is constantly evolving. Just as the ideal of centralization and codification of a single and universal body of Church law in many ways determined the ultimate structure of the 1917 *Codex Iuris Canonici*,<sup>20</sup> so too did the mind of the Second Vatican Council influence the form and content of the revised 1983 Code and the nature of post-Conciliar liturgical law. The fundamental goal of the Council to renew the Church and enable it to address the needs of a fundamentally changed culture meant the Code and liturgical books could not simply be refined or reorganized in details, but that they had to be deeply and basically rewritten and reformed.<sup>21</sup> According to Paul VI, “With changing conditions—for life seems to evolve more rapidly—canon law must be prudently

---

<sup>18</sup> Ibid., 401-2.

<sup>19</sup> Ibid., 415-19.

<sup>20</sup> See John A. Alesandro, “General Introduction,” in *The Code of Canon Law: A Text and Commentary*, ed. James A. Coriden, Thomas J. Green, and Donald E. Heintschel (Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1985), 4.

<sup>21</sup> “Probably more than any of the twenty other ecumenical councils, Vatican II required a whole set of laws for its proper implementation. This was the direct result of John XXIII’s decision to convoke a ‘pastoral’ council. The pastoral emphasis of the deliberations and decrees directly affected church discipline and ecclesial activity.” Ibid., 5-7.

reformed; specifically, it must be accommodated to a new way of thinking proper to the Second Ecumenical Council of the Vatican, in which pastoral care and new needs of the people of God are met.”<sup>22</sup>

The nature of liturgical law in the post-Conciliar era, as we have said, requires an explicitly new way of thinking. The interpretation of such norms must focus not only on the text and rubrics of the liturgical books, but also on fundamentals of effective ritual enactment. *The nature of human cognition*, for example, is crucial in that the focus of the liturgy is the salvific divine-human encounter, which requires the liturgy to be communicable and intelligible. This means that the *pastoral dimension* of the liturgy is at least as important as any other dimension and, consequently, that the liturgy must be adapted to allow for active participation of the faithful so that it is effective in a *particular time and place*. This in turn implies that *quality, functionality* and *beauty* are important in the enactment of the Church’s liturgy. Indeed, things like church buildings, vestments, vessels, and music, which are expressions of the rich heritage of the Church, are products of particular cultures. To be sure, one must move beyond any rubricism, legalism, or superficiality.<sup>23</sup> It is only then that Christians can discover the authentic meaning of Church law.<sup>24</sup>

---

<sup>22</sup> Paul VI, Address at the inauguration of the work of the Commission to reform the Code, *Communicationes* 1 (1969): 41.

<sup>23</sup> McManus, “Church at Prayer,” 269.

<sup>24</sup> McManus, “Liturgical Law,” *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 411. For examples of well-executed post-Conciliar interpretation of liturgical law see, for example, Ladislav Örsy, “The Interpreter and His Art,” *The Jurist* 40 (1980): 27-56; John M. Huels, “The Interpretation of Liturgical Law,” *Worship* 55 (May 1981): 218-37; John M. Huels, *One Table, Many Laws: Essays in Catholic Eucharistic Practice* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1986); John M. Huels, *Liturgy and Law: Liturgical Law in the System of Roman Catholic Canon Law* (Montreal: Wilson & Lafleur, 2006); Thomas Richstatter, *Liturgical Law Today: New Style, New Spirit* (Chicago: Franciscan Herald Press, 1977); and Willibrod Slaa, *Liturgical Law: Existence, Exigency and Pastoral Dimension of Conciliar and Post Conciliar Liturgical Legislation* (JCD diss., Pontifical Urban University, 1983).

## The Sources of Ecclesiastical Liturgical Norms after Vatican Council II

There are six major categories of liturgical norms in the post-Conciliar period.<sup>25</sup> First are Conciliar documents. When exploring the genuine meaning of liturgical law, it is vital to recognize the primacy of the documents of the Second Vatican Council, especially the Constitution on the Liturgy *Sacrosanctum Concilium*. The Code and the post-Conciliar liturgical books and documents, McManus reminds us, are “always interpreted in the light of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* and not vice versa.”<sup>26</sup> It is in essence a foundational document, rather than a document of extreme detail. It puts forth the fundamental principles of the reformed liturgy, drawing upon the entire liturgical tradition of the Church and the ideals of the Liturgical Movement that had preceded the Council, but leaves the specifics of implementation to the Holy See, Episcopal Conferences, and particular churches. As a document of an Ecumenical Council, whatever law it contains is universally binding for Catholics of the Roman rite.

Second are officially promulgated liturgical books, and for the purposes of this study, these books in their official English-language translations as prepared by ICEL and adapted by the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops (hereafter USCCB; formerly the

---

<sup>25</sup> “Until the fourth century the Old and New Testaments, Apostolic traditions, real and apocryphal, custom, and synodal canons constituted the four main sources of ecclesiastical norms. During the course of the fourth century two other sources of authoritative norms emerged in the Christian Church: the writings of the Fathers of the Church and the letters of the bishops of Rome.” Kenneth Pennington, “A Short History of Canon Law.” <http://faculty.cua.edu/pennington/Canon%20Law/ShortHistoryCanonLaw.htm>.

<sup>26</sup> McManus, “Church at Prayer,” 275. “The canons are always to be understood in the light of the Vatican II Conciliar documents and their spirit, not vice versa. The same principle works for liturgical laws as well, for example, those found in the liturgical books or in post-Conciliar documents: these too are to be understood in the light of Vatican II’s decisions, not vice versa.” McManus, “Liturgical Law,” *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 411. For another description of the types and authority of ecclesiastical documents and their binding force, see Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 506-10, 513-19.

National Conference of Catholic Bishops, hereafter NCCB). Each of these books contains an introduction (*praenotanda*) and rubrics that provide guidelines and instructions for the celebration of the liturgy. As Huels explains:

The *praenotanda* include . . . major disciplinary rules affecting the preparation and celebration of the rites in question. Rubrics . . . usually are the more precise directions specifying what the minister or assembly is to say or do at a specific moment in the celebration. . . . The norms in these and the other liturgical books, whose revision was decreed by the Second Vatican Council and whose promulgation was authorized by the Apostolic See, are true ecclesiastical laws with the same binding force as the canons of the code.<sup>27</sup>

The third principal source of liturgical norms is Book IV of the Code, “*De ecclesiae munere sanctificandi*.” Not all in Book IV is strictly speaking liturgical law—many of the canons pertain to sacramental matters that do not relate to the actual celebration of the rites, such as the construction of church buildings and cemeteries, and rules about access to the sacraments.<sup>28</sup>

The fourth source of liturgical law is found in post-Conciliar legislation not wholly superseded by the 1983 Code and legislation issued after the Code’s promulgation.<sup>29</sup> Depending on its purpose and context, such legislation can regulate the liturgy for the universal Church or be restricted to a particular church. When intending to promulgate law,

---

<sup>27</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 3.

<sup>28</sup> Some other sections of the Code are also relevant, but less so. Book II speaks to the obligations and rights of the faithful—their right to the rites, the hierarchical structure of the Church, and the nature of consecrated life. Book III contains a few relevant sections, especially those pertaining to preaching and the homily. Book V speaks of issues such as the purpose of ecclesiastical temporal goods and pious wills, while Book VI concerns legal infractions related to the sacraments and liturgy. Book VII is concerned with criminal and administrative procedures—in other words, the recourse available to help resolve disputes regarding worship.

<sup>29</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 3. “Many post-Conciliar liturgical documents have been superseded by more recent legislation, and they cannot be viewed as true sources of law” (ibid. 3-4). “Post-Conciliar interim legislation was an important source for the revision of the Code. Many of the canons incorporate *verbatim*, or at least substantially, the norms implementing various pastoral directives of the Council.” Alesandro, “General Introduction,” 5.



the pope (by means of an Apostolic Constitution or an Apostolic Letter *motu proprio*) can enact laws that are universally binding.<sup>30</sup> Documents such as instructions or papal encyclicals, in contrast, are not, strictly speaking, legal documents in their own right. Such documents fall into the categories of “general executory decrees”<sup>31</sup> and “instructions.”<sup>32</sup> They expand upon and clarify already existing laws.<sup>33</sup> As Huels notes:

Both [general executory decrees and instructions] are binding, but a law, in a sense, is ‘more binding.’ . . . [They] are administrative rather than legal texts; they are means of implementing the law, expanding on how the law is to be observed, or clarifying its meaning. However, they are not supposed to contradict the law or create restrictions on rights, restrictions that are not found in the law itself. If perchance some regulation in any executory document is contrary to the law, that regulation lacks all force and should not be observed (canons 33, §1; 34, §2).<sup>34</sup>

“Particular law” is the fifth category of liturgical law. It is issued by and for a particular diocese or country. Diocesan bishops and bishops’ conferences have the right to enact such law.<sup>35</sup> However, as Huels explains, “Often the regulations they issue are not true laws because they are not promulgated as such. They appear as guidelines or pastoral directives. This does not mean that their observance is optional, but it indicates that the authority who issued them does not wish them to have the same ‘weight’ that the law itself possesses.”<sup>36</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 9. “The pope and ecumenical council are the only legislators for the universal church” (ibid.).

<sup>31</sup> See canons 31-33.

<sup>32</sup> See canon 34.

<sup>33</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 9-10.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid., 10. “Although directories [and other legislation] are not legal but executory, or administrative, in nature, they do have binding force and must be observed unless they are contrary to a law currently in force (ibid., 3).

<sup>35</sup> See canons 29, 30, 835§1, 838§4.

<sup>36</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 9.

Custom, a sixth source of liturgical law,<sup>37</sup> is the “interpretation of liturgical law by the community.”<sup>38</sup> It is the earliest source of ecclesiastical liturgical norms. Such law is comprised of the way the local worshipping community, that is, a particular parish, a particular region, or even a particular cultural group, acts, intending it to be binding for future liturgical praxis. Indeed, custom is not only a source of the law, but also “the best interpreter of [the other sources of] the law.”<sup>39</sup> There are four categories of custom from the perspective of ecclesiastical norms: “*iuxta legem*,”<sup>40</sup> “*praeter legem*,”<sup>41</sup> “*contra legem*,”<sup>42</sup> and “factual.”<sup>43</sup>

Finally, it is important to point out that not everything in a legislative document holds the force of law. One must read it with the usual rules of literary criticism in mind. According to Huels,

Some statements that appear in texts of ecclesiastical law are not truly legal but are in fact theological in nature. Among these, some are divine-law statements from an ecumenical council or from scripture or the natural law;

---

<sup>37</sup> See canons 23-28.

<sup>38</sup> Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 9.

<sup>39</sup> “*Consuetudo est optima legum interpres*” (canon 27). “This maxim, adopted from Roman law, has long been an established principle of canonical interpretation. It demonstrates the great respect canon law has for the living practices of the community. It means that the best way to discover how a law is to be understood and implemented is to look to the ways the local Christian communities actually observe it.” Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 23.

<sup>40</sup> “In accord with the law”—the practice or custom at a particular church, or how the rubrics are interpreted in *this* place.

<sup>41</sup> “Beyond the law” (see canons 26, 28)—a practice that has nothing to do with the current liturgical law, but which can become a law or norm in a particular place. In this case, for the custom to become law, the community must receive the custom as law willingly and the custom must be reasonable. After a period of thirty years, the custom becomes law.

<sup>42</sup> “Contrary to the law”—a practice that is contrary to what the law requires. The principle of “dissimulation” often comes into play here. A bishop, while knowing a custom to be contrary to liturgical law, might decide not to intervene in order to maintain peace and order.

<sup>43</sup> Factual custom “is the actual practice of the worshipping community whether it be in accord with, beyond, or contrary to the law.” Huels, *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*, 24. It is not law, but in most respects functions as such since it is the accepted manner in which a community celebrates the liturgy. In other words, a factual custom is “a well-established practice accepted peacefully by the community” (*ibid.*).

others are statements of authentic teaching that are not divinely revealed dogma; a few others may be mere theological opinion subject to dispute and debate within the theological community.<sup>44</sup>

### **Ecclesiastical Documents Pertaining to the Entrance Song**

In the pre-Conciliar, Conciliar, and post-Conciliar documents<sup>45</sup> that follow, one finds general and specific norms that have governed the use and development of the text and music of the entrance song.<sup>46</sup>

#### Pre-Conciliar Documents

Pius X's *Motu proprio Tra le sollecitudini* (22 November 1903)<sup>47</sup> puts forward two general norms relevant to the entrance song. First, liturgical texts are to be in Latin.<sup>48</sup>

---

<sup>44</sup> Ibid., 11. See, for example, the GIRM (USA) 16-26, which, for the most part, is a theological statement about the nature of the Mass. No. 39 of the same document on the importance of singing is another example of a non-legislative statement contained in an otherwise legislative document. See also Örsy, "Interpreter and His Art," and Örsy, "The Interpretation of Laws: New Variations on an Old Theme," *Studia Canonica* 17 (1983): 107-11.

<sup>45</sup> For analyses of these documents and the reform of liturgical music during the time immediately following the Council, see Lucien Deiss, *Spirit and Song of the New Liturgy* (1970; rev. ed., Cincinnati: World Library Publications, 1976); Joseph Gelineau, *Voices and Instruments in Christian Worship: Principles, Laws, Applications*, trans. Clifford Howell (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1964); Helmut Huckle, "Musical Requirements of Liturgical Reform," *Concilium* 1 (1966): 45-74; Josef Jungmann, "Constitution on the Sacred Liturgy," in *Commentary on the Documents of Vatican II*, ed. Herbert Vorgrimler, vol. 1 (New York: Herder & Herder, 1967), 76-80; Frederick R. McManus, "Sacred Music in the Teaching of the Church," in *Crisis in Church Music?* (Washington, DC: Liturgical Conference, 1967), 14-26; Clement J. McNapsy, "The Sacral in Liturgical Music," in *Revival of the Liturgy*, ed. Frederick R. McManus (New York: Herder and Herder, 1963), 163-90; Anthony Milner, "The Instruction on Sacred Music," *Worship* 41 (1967): 322-33; Ernest Moneta Caglio, "Sacred Music," in *The Commentary on the Constitution and the Instruction on the Sacred Liturgy*, ed. Annibale Bugnini and Carlo Braga (New York: Benzinger Bros., 1965), 244-56; Rembert G. Weakland, "Music as Art in Liturgy," *Worship* 41 (January 1967): 5-15; and Weakland, "The 'Sacral' and Liturgical Renewal," *Worship* 49 (1975): 512-29. For a more recent exploration of the reform and renewal of Church music in post-Conciliar ecclesiastical documents, see Weakland, *Themes of Renewal* (Beltsville, MD: Pastoral Press, 1995). For a summary of earlier legislation, see Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 1-15 on the early Popes, and 387-408 on the effects of legislation on musical practice.

<sup>46</sup> Note that in ecclesiastical documents the entrance song or introit is often considered together with the other processional chants of the Mass: the Offertory and Communion.

<sup>47</sup> See also Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 219-31, 295-386; Jan Michael Joncas, *From Sacred Song to Ritual Music: Twentieth-century Understandings of Roman Catholic Worship Music* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997), 1-2, 3-5, 32-34, 51-52, 73-76, 100-101; and Judith M. Kubicki, "Tra le Sollecitudini (1903)," in *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, ed. Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast (Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007), 1-3.

<sup>48</sup> *Tra le sollecitudini* 5, 7, trans. Vincent Yzermans, *All Things in Christ* (1952).

Second, one is not to reorder, alter, or omit (either entirely or in part) those official liturgical texts that are to be sung.<sup>49</sup> The document offers one exception in that it allows for a brief motet “to words approved by the Church” after the prescribed offertory chant.<sup>50</sup> Pius XI’s Apostolic Constitution *Divini cultus sanctitatem* (20 December 1928)<sup>51</sup> and Pius XII’s Encyclical Letter *Mediator Dei* (20 November 1947)<sup>52</sup> restate the norms of *Tra le sollecitudini*.

The next document to discuss the entrance song in particular is Pius XII’s Encyclical Letter *Musicae sacrae disciplina* (25 December 1955).<sup>53</sup> It recommends that the corpus of entrance chants (texts and melodies)<sup>54</sup> be expanded to accommodate feasts new to the liturgical calendar and reiterates that all liturgical texts must be in Latin.<sup>55</sup> Most important is its discussion of the substitution of the introit with another song for “serious reasons” by explicit permission of the Holy See. The extension of these exceptions to other places without such permission, however, is prohibited. In fact, even when the Holy See has allowed for an exception, it is better to employ the “easier and more frequently used” chants, rather than alternative texts or melodies.<sup>56</sup>

*Musicae sacrae disciplina* recognizes that some exceptions are allowed for according to custom: “Where . . . some popular hymns are sung in the language of the people after the

---

<sup>49</sup> Ibid., 8-9.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid., 8.

<sup>51</sup> See also James Hansen, “Divini Cultus (1928),” in *Song of the Assembly*, 5-7; and Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 300.

<sup>52</sup> See Genevieve Glen, “Mediator Dei (1947),” in *Song of the Assembly*, 9-11; and Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 307.

<sup>53</sup> See Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 308.

<sup>54</sup> On who is to compose such new musical texts and melodies, see below.

<sup>55</sup> *Musicae sacrae disciplina* III, paras 5, 8. Trans., *The Pope Speaks* 3:1 (1956).

<sup>56</sup> Ibid., III, para. 7.

sacred words of the liturgy have been sung in Latin during the solemn Eucharistic sacrifice, local Ordinaries can allow this to be done ‘if, in light of the circumstances of the locality and the people, they believe that [custom] cannot prudently be removed.’”<sup>1</sup> Thus, even if exceptions are allowed in some circumstances, the introit found in the official liturgical books is always normative and preferable. Indeed, the concession concerning custom requires that the official texts be proclaimed during the liturgy in addition to any popular songs.

*Musica sacra et sacra Liturgia* (3 September 1958),<sup>2</sup> an Instruction from the Congregation of Rites, repeats the two exceptions of *Musicae sacrae disciplina*.<sup>3</sup> It states that “in sung liturgical services no liturgical text translated verbatim into the vernacular may be sung except by special permission.”<sup>4</sup> Rather than an expansion of the allowable use of vernacular liturgical texts by “special permission,” it is more likely that this statement is an effort to discourage a practice that was taking place with at least some frequency. It is forbidden, furthermore, to omit any sung liturgical text unless the rubrics specifically allow for such an omission.<sup>5</sup> Even in cases of “reasonable cause,”<sup>6</sup> in which it is impossible to sing the liturgical text according to the melodies given in the liturgical books, the texts must be chanted on a single note or on psalm tones, or sung with organ accompaniment.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid., III, para. 8. This section of the letter quotes canon 5 of the 1917 *Codex Iuris Canonici*.

<sup>2</sup> As an instruction, this document is a doctrinal explanation. It is not concerned with establishing new laws, but rather with making existing laws practically applicable. See also Hayburn, *Papal Legislation*, 398, 543; Joncas, *From Sacred Song to Ritual Music*, 3, 17-20, 37-38, 76-81, 103-4; and Columba Kelly, “De Musica Sacra et Sacra Liturgia (1958),” in *Song of the Assembly*, 13-15.

<sup>3</sup> *Musica sacra et sacra Liturgia* 13c, 14a. Trans. *The Pope Speaks* 5:2 (1959).

<sup>4</sup> Ibid., 13b, 14.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., 21b.

<sup>6</sup> For example, if a parish lacks a choir and the assembly is unable to sing the official chants on its own.

<sup>7</sup> *Musica sacra et sacra Liturgia* 21b.

In his Epistle *Iucunda laudatio* to the director of the Pontifical Institute of Sacred Music (8 December 1961),<sup>64</sup> Pope John XXIII expresses his thanks to the Institute, which Pius X had established during his pontificate. He emphasizes the importance of “the preservation of Latin as the language of Catholic worship,”<sup>65</sup> and notes that, while popular songs in the vernacular are sometimes permissible at less-solemn liturgies, Latin should remain normative and retain its “regal scepter and . . . noble dominion.”<sup>66</sup> He implies a broader interpretation of norms concerning liturgical song in this letter, though, in that he praises missionaries who “have succeeded in preserving and adapting native music to Catholic rites.”<sup>67</sup>

The documents above provide some insight into the pre-Conciliar discipline regarding liturgical music, though specific discussion of the entrance song is sparse. Furthermore, one should recognize that the norms they express might or might not reflect what was actually happening in parishes at the time. What is clear, however, is that, prior to the Second Vatican Council, the official Latin texts and melodies for the introit are normative for the entrance song at Eucharist.

---

<sup>64</sup> *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 53 (1961), 812. English-language summary, *The Pope Speaks* 7 (1961): 367-68. “Encyclicals are divided into two categories: encyclical epistles and encyclical letters. Those of the first category are more solemn in form, although the content may not always be more important than that of papal letters.” *Iucunda laudatio* is an “apostolic epistle,” which is “a less solemn papal letter, sometimes addressed to one person or a group in the Church but usually not to the universal Church.” Seasoltz, *New Liturgy, New Laws*, 172.

<sup>65</sup> *Acta Apostolica Sedis* 53 (1961), 812.

<sup>66</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>67</sup> *Ibid.*

## Conciliar and Post-Conciliar Documents

### *The Liturgy Constitution*

Though there is nothing in *Sacrosanctum Concilium*<sup>68</sup> that deals specifically with the text and melody of the entrance song, the Constitution puts forth several principles that influence its subsequent development.

1. the active participation of the faithful in the liturgy<sup>69</sup>
2. the permission for limited use of the vernacular in the liturgy<sup>70</sup>
3. the pride of place of chant along with the admittance of all forms of liturgical music into the liturgy, including the people's own religious songs and traditional styles, that possess the "required qualities"<sup>71</sup>
4. the desire that the whole assembly be enabled to sing liturgical chant.<sup>72</sup>

In addition, *Sacrosanctum Concilium* encourages the composition of new music for the liturgy.<sup>73</sup> This music may utilize newly composed texts, though texts drawn from scripture and the official liturgical books are preferred.<sup>74</sup> It is also in *Sacrosanctum Concilium* that one finds the mandate for what will become the *Graduale Simplex* and the revised *Graduale Romanum*.<sup>75</sup>

---

<sup>68</sup> See Joncas, *From Sacred Song to Ritual Music*, 4-5, 20-22, 38-39, 81-82, 104-5; and Nathan Mitchell, "Sacrosanctum Concilium (1963)," in *Song of the Assembly*, 17-20.

<sup>69</sup> See *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 14.

<sup>70</sup> See *ibid.*, 54.

<sup>71</sup> See *ibid.*, 112, 116, 118, 119.

<sup>72</sup> See *ibid.*, 114.

<sup>73</sup> These new songs were not necessarily intended as replacements for the proper chants, however.

<sup>74</sup> See *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 121.

<sup>75</sup> See *ibid.*, 114, 117.

*The Post-Conciliar Gradual*

The principles for the reform of liturgical music found in *Sacrosanctum Concilium* met immediately with opposition, and, as Annibale Bugnini recalls, “the problem of song was one of the most sensitive, important and troubling of the entire reform.”<sup>76</sup> During the Council, study group twenty-five was responsible for the implementation of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 114 and 117—in other words, to prepare the post-Conciliar *editio typica* of the *Graduale Romanum*, to review and revise according to more recent scholarship the chant books produced during Pius X’s reform, and to produce a book of less complicated chants that could be used in smaller parishes.<sup>77</sup> The monks of Solesmes, who had been intimately involved in the revision, compilation, and publication of books of chant for use in the Roman Rite for some time, collaborated with this study group.<sup>78</sup>

The primary sources of the introit in the post-Conciliar liturgy, even though the *Missale Romanum*<sup>79</sup> also contains introit antiphon texts, are the *Graduale Romanum* and *Graduale Simplex*.<sup>80</sup> As official liturgical books, these two editions contain the official Latin

---

<sup>76</sup> Annibale Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy (1948-1975)*, trans. Matthew J. O’Connell (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990), 885. “Two conceptions of the function of sacred song in the liturgy were now at work. One type of musician looked upon song primarily as an art form and an adornment of the celebration. Liturgists and pastors, on the other hand, as well as musicians more conscious of pastoral needs, saw song as having a structural role and serving to give better expression to the mystery being celebrated” (ibid.).

<sup>77</sup> Ibid., 891.

<sup>78</sup> Ibid.

<sup>79</sup> See Paul VI, Apostolic Constitution *Missale Romanum*, approving the new Roman Missal, 3 April 1969: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 61 (1969) 217-22; *Notitiae* 5 (1969) 142-46; DOL 202. Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction *Constitutione Apostolica*, on the gradual carrying out of the Apostolic Constitution *Missale Romanum* (3 April 1969), 20 October 1969: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 61 (1969) 749-53; *Notitiae* 5 (1969) 418-23; DOL 209. For an account of the reform of the entrance song within the context of the preparation of the Missal of Paul VI, see Maurizio Barba, *La riforma Conciliare dell’ “ordo Missae”: Il percorso storico-redazionale dei riti d’ingresso, di offertorio e di comunione* (Rome: CLV-Edizioni Liturgiche, 2002), 144-49. The Conciliar schemas for its reform (nos. 16, 39, 44, 90) are also included in Barba’s appendix.

<sup>80</sup> See also Frederick R. McManus, “Gregorian Chant in Official Documents,” in *Gregorian Chant in Pastoral Ministry Today* (Washington, DC: Center for Ward Method Studies, 1986), *passim*.



texts and melodies for the processional chants of the Mass and are sources of universal law governing the liturgy.<sup>81</sup> In order to fulfill the prescription of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 117, a Decree from the Congregation of Rites *Sacrosancti Oecumenici Concilii* (3 September 1967)<sup>82</sup> authorized the publication of the *Graduale Simplex*.<sup>83</sup> Its purpose was to facilitate the use and appropriation of the chant tradition in smaller parish churches<sup>84</sup> that lacked the musical resources to sing the more complex chants in the *Graduale Romanum*, though it certainly found use in other contexts as well. Indeed, Bugnini states that “The book became the usual source for the Latin celebrations in the papal chapel. This is evidence that the need for such a book was not felt solely in ‘smaller churches.’”<sup>85</sup> In light of its purpose, the book provides proper chants only for Sundays and major feasts,<sup>86</sup> and seasonal chants for the remainder of the liturgical year. Both the proper and seasonal chants are adaptations of the

---

<sup>81</sup> John Huels, general introduction to *The Liturgy Documents: A Parish Resource*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1991), x.

<sup>82</sup> Congregation of Rites (Consilium), Decree *Sacrosancti Oecumenici*, promulgating the *editio typica* of the *Graduale Simplex*, 3 September 1967: *Notitiae* 3 (1967) 311; DOL 532. See also: Congregation of Rites, Introduction to the *Graduale simplex*, 3 September 1967: Vatican Polyglot Press, 1967; *Notitiae* 3 (1967) 312–315; DOL 533. Consilium, Communication *Instantibus pluribus* to the presidents of the national liturgical commissions, on norms for translation of the *Graduale simplex*, 23 January 1968: *Notitiae* 4 (1968) 10; DOL 120. Congregation for Divine Worship, Decree *Cantus faciliores*, promulgating the *editio typica altera* of the *Graduale Simplex*, 22 November 1974: *Notitiae* 11 (1975) 292; DOL 536. *Graduale simplex, editio typica altera*, 22 November 1974: Vatican Polyglot Press, 1975; DOL 537.

<sup>83</sup> Seasoltz, *New Liturgy, New Laws*, 148. See also *Notitiae* 3 (1967), 311. “A substantial portion of the Latin text and musical settings had been experimented with at the daily Masses during the final period of the Second Vatican Council in 1965.” ICEL, *The Simple Gradual: An English translation of the antiphons and responsories of the Graduale Simplex for use in English-speaking countries* (Washington, 1968), “Introductory Information,” 10.

<sup>84</sup> “It is intended for those churches where the correct rendering of the more ornate melodies of the *Roman Gradual* is difficult.” Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 1. The text here is the same in both the *editio typica* and *editio typica altera*. Trans., see note 84 above. See also *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 117; and *Musicam sacram* 50b.

<sup>85</sup> Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy*, 121.

<sup>86</sup> Seasoltz, *New Liturgy, New Laws*, 148.

traditional Gregorian repertory, in accord with the mandate of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 114 that the treasury of chant be preserved.

After the promulgation of the *editio typica* of the *Graduale Simplex*, ICEL published an English translation of its texts that Kevin Seasoltz notes “did not prove very successful.”<sup>87</sup> The popular use of the *Graduale Simplex* (both Latin and English) was limited for many reasons including the deeply entrenched custom in many parishes and religious communities of singing four hymns at Mass,<sup>88</sup> the general proliferation of other types of music by publishers, the inherent difficulty of adapting English texts to Latin melodies, and the inability (or the perceived inability) of congregations to sing chant of any type. For many, the musical aesthetic of the “new” way of celebrating the Mass did not leave room for traditional chant or English-language adaptations of this chant. New vernacular musical settings of many varieties proved more successful than the *Graduale Simplex*.<sup>89</sup>

The *editio typica altera* of the *Graduale Simplex* was promulgated on 22 November 1974 to accommodate changes in the liturgical calendar, the Neo-Vulgate translation of the Bible, and liturgical books published after 1967. This second amplified edition contained, in addition to the proper chants, the chants of the Ordinary of the Mass, the *Kyriale Simplex*,<sup>90</sup> as well as several appendices.<sup>91</sup> Regardless of the long-term success of the *Graduale Simplex*

---

<sup>87</sup> Ibid.

<sup>88</sup> Ibid.

<sup>89</sup> Ibid. 148-49.

<sup>90</sup> Congregation of Rites (Consilium), Decree *Quum Constitutio*, promulgating the *editio typica* of the *Kyriale simplex*, 14 December 1964: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 57 (1965) 407. *Kyriale simplex*, 14 December 1964: Vatican Polyglot Press, 1965. DOL 530.

<sup>91</sup> See *Notitiae* 11 (1975) 291.

as a liturgical book—to be sure, it is rarely used today in parishes<sup>92</sup>—it did provide some important norms for the subsequent development of liturgical music:

1. Song is integral to Christian worship. The impetus for the book's creation was not only the thrust of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 114 and 117 (preserving and encouraging the use of the Roman chant tradition), but also the principles that the normative enactment of the liturgy is to include singing and that many liturgical texts are best expressed through song.<sup>93</sup>
2. Singing is one of the primary means of *actuosa participatio*.<sup>94</sup> Thus, it is critically important that all gathered for a particular liturgical celebration be enabled to sing.<sup>95</sup>
3. Artistic quality (both of the music itself and of its performance) is a prerequisite for all forms of liturgical music. The *Graduale Simplex* provides a model

---

<sup>92</sup> In truth, it was “a final attempt to lend solemnity to the Latin liturgy and prevent a complete loss of the priceless patrimony of traditional Latin chant.” Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy*, 121. At first, however, “the *Graduale Simplex* was very successful. Two printings were sold out in a short time. Many conferences asked permission to produce vernacular editions” (ibid.).

<sup>93</sup> “The musical tradition of the universal Church is a treasure of inestimable value, greater even than that of any other art. The main reason for this preeminence is that, as sacred song closely bound to the text, it forms a necessary or integral part of the solemn liturgy. . . . Therefore sacred music will be the more holy the more closely it is joined to the liturgical rite.” *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112. “If the Eucharist is to be celebrated with greater artistic quality, that is with singing, and if the faithful are to participate in it, it is first necessary to have simpler melodies.” Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 5. “Since these new texts have been selected solely for musical reasons, they are not to be used without musical notation” (ibid., 8).

<sup>94</sup> “To promote active participation, the people should be encouraged to take part by means of acclamations, responses, psalmody, antiphons, and songs.” *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 30. “From a pastoral point of view [the creation of the *Graduale Simplex* means that] singing even in smaller groups now becomes possible.” Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 4. “The congregation should sing the antiphon and the response to the psalms between the readings. At times the congregation's part may be taken by the *schola*. In view of their nature and the ease with which they may be sung, at least the responses to the psalms between the readings should be sung by the entire congregation” (ibid., 14b).

<sup>95</sup> “The purpose of the *Simple Gradual* is to afford a greater opportunity for community participation in song—especially through congregational singing of brief refrains and responses to the longer verses sung by a cantor, *schola*, or choir.” ICEL, *Simple Gradual*, “Introductory Information,” 11.

for future collections in the deliberate care that went into its creation. Its creation also emphasizes the fact that simpler music is often preferable to virtuosic music if it more readily enables quality performance.<sup>96</sup>

4. New collections of music for the celebration of the Eucharist are to be encouraged<sup>97</sup> to the degree they are in keeping with the nature of the rite and facilitate singing, active participation, and quality musical performance. These new collections would include settings of both new texts and texts already part of the tradition, and should, given the requirement of artistic quality, be prepared by skilled arrangers, composers, and editors.

5. Sung proper texts are integral to the celebration of the Eucharist,<sup>98</sup> as is the singing of psalms.<sup>99</sup> Newly composed proper texts should take up the theme or idea

---

<sup>96</sup> See Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 5. "These simpler melodies cannot derive from the more ornate ones in the *Roman Gradual*. . . . Hence authentic melodies, suitable for the purpose, have been sought in the Gregorian chant, both from official editions and from manuscript sources of the Roman and other Latin rites. From this new selections of melodies, a new series of texts was also developed. Very rarely was a simple melody found which was set to one of the texts in the *Missal*. When agreement of text and melody could not be found, pieces were selected which have words similar or close in meaning to the texts of the *Roman Missal*" (ibid., 6-8).

<sup>97</sup> "Other kinds of sacred music, especially polyphony, are by no means excluded from liturgical celebrations." *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 116. "The people's own religious songs are to be encouraged with care so that in sacred devotions as well as during services of the liturgy itself, in keeping with rubrical norms and requirements, the faithful may raise their voices in song" (ibid., 118). "In certain parts of the world . . . people have their own musical traditions and these play a great part in their religious and social life. Thus . . . due importance is to be attached to their music and a suitable place given to it, not only in forming their attitude toward religion, but also in adapting worship to their native genius" (ibid., 119).

<sup>98</sup> "Not every Sunday has its own formulary in the Proper of Seasons. Each liturgical season has one or more formularies for use on all the Sundays of the season. Each feast of the Lord, however, has proper songs. The feasts which take the place of a Sunday have their own songs in the Proper of Saints. The Common of Saints is arranged as in the *Roman Missal*, but in such a way that only one formulary is provided for each order of saints. Several songs are given for each part of the Mass so that the one which best applies to the saint may be chosen." Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 11-13.

<sup>99</sup> "For the entrance, offertory, and communion songs, the form to be used should consist of an antiphon repeated after the verses of the psalm." Ibid., 9. "The *Simple Gradual* is . . . an attempt to reintroduce the singing of the psalms in the eucharistic service. Instead of the proper antiphons of the *Roman Gradual* and *Missal* the *Simple Gradual* employs psalm verses with great variety and freedom of choice. It reestablishes the

of the official text or follow the lead of the *Graduale Simplex* by reflecting the festal or seasonal theme, or a theme from the readings of the day. Stable musical and textual traditions are essential for particular worshipping communities, even if what they are singing is not precisely the chants of the *Graduale Romanum*.

Most interesting among these foundations is the move toward new collections of sung texts for liturgical use.<sup>100</sup> Ecclesiastical norms prior to *Sacrosanctum Concilium* sought to limit the use of new musical settings and especially new texts, and when allowed, such music was, strictly speaking, not “liturgical.”<sup>101</sup> The creation of the *Graduale Simplex* shows forth the flexibility and adaptability of the post-Conciliar liturgy according to the needs of particular worshipping communities,<sup>102</sup> and, in a sense, is a conservative response to the

---

antiphon as a refrain and the response or alleluia as a true response. This development calls for a better orientation of the people toward psalms.” ICEL, *Simple Gradual*, “Introductory Information,” 10-11.

<sup>100</sup> At first, “new collections” implied only the possibility of setting official proper chant texts to simpler melodies from within the tradition, in addition to using seasonal chants rather than the entire corpus of proper chants. Later, composers set the official proper texts to other, i.e., non-Gregorian melodies. Texts other than those of the proper chants eventually came to be permitted at the entrance and communion, but, though it has come to be the practice in many places today, the intent was never to completely divorce such “new collections,” from the official corpus of Latin proper chants. Indeed, these chants are the archetype or paradigm for “new collections.”

<sup>101</sup> Previous legislation allowed for the singing of devotional motets (*Tra le sollecitudini* 8) or popular hymns (*Musicae sacrae disciplina* III, para. 9) at certain points during the liturgy. Polyphonic settings of the Mass Ordinary and Proper sung by the choir or *schola* were also permitted.

<sup>102</sup> “Its publication was certainly another step toward a new form of celebration. By making it easier to sing the proper parts of the Mass—singing often neglected in the past because of the difficulty of the chants in the *Graduale Romanum*—the new book helped to make the value of this chant understood.” Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy*, 121. In fact, it was imagined from the outset that vernacular editions of the *Graduale Simplex* would include significant adaptations. “The texts of antiphons, even those taken from the psalter, sometimes need modification: to achieve fully the meaning appropriate to a liturgical season or particular feast; to ensure the people’s understanding of the text; to match the rhythmical and vocal requirements of chant in the vernacular. The types of chant in the *Graduale simplex* . . . may be adapted to the style of music and song typical of individual peoples. . . . Sometimes the texts of antiphons, of the psalm verse, or of the psalm itself as given in the *Graduale simplex* may create problems, with the result that a different choice of texts seems preferable: either because the text in the translation being used presents pastoral problems; or because it seems advisable to use collections of psalms and antiphons that may already be in use, familiar to many, and well accepted. In such cases the conference of bishops may choose other texts, but in a way consistent with the principles set forth in the Introduction of the *Graduale simplex*.” *Instantibus pluribus* 2b-3.

adaptations envisioned in *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 39-40,<sup>103</sup> *Musicam sacram* 9<sup>104</sup> & 32,<sup>105</sup> and *Liturgicae instaurationes* 3c.<sup>106</sup> At the same time it made clear the value of the Church's chant tradition, it also made clear the importance of the active participation of the assembly by means of singing. Indeed, as Bugnini says, "The principle of songs in the vernacular would be extended to the entire Church in the reformed Roman Missal."<sup>107</sup> ICEL's original introduction to its translation of the *Graduale Simplex* clarifies the matter:

<sup>103</sup> " . . . it shall be for the competent, territorial ecclesiastical authority . . . to specify adaptations, especially in the case of . . . sacred music . . ."

<sup>104</sup> "The Church does not exclude any type of sacred music from liturgical services as long as the music matches the spirit of the service itself and the character of the individual parts and is not a hindrance to the required active participation of the people." Congregation of Rites, Instruction *Musicam Sacram*, on music in the liturgy, 5 March 1967: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 60 (1967) 300-320; *Notitiae* 3 (1967) 87-105; DOL 508.

<sup>105</sup> "In some places there is the lawful practice, occasionally confirmed by indult, of substituting other songs for the entrance . . ." "Discussion among the Fathers and experts [during the creation of *Musicam sacram*] focused on individual points, with special attention to the most important. There was full discussion of no. 36 (no. 32 in the final text), which allowed the chants of the Mass to be replaced by other songs approved by the episcopal conferences. The instruction restricted itself to confirming the indults granted to certain countries for this purpose. . . . The paragraph was put to a vote and accepted. It would subsequently play a very important role, because the episcopal conferences would appeal to it as a basis for asking the same indult for their regions." Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy*, 902-3.

<sup>106</sup> "Congregational singing is to be fostered by every means possible, even by use of new types of music suited to the culture of the people and to the contemporary spirit . . ."

<sup>107</sup> Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy*, 903. See the GIRM of the first edition of the 1973 *Roman Missal*: "[For the entrance song] the antiphon and psalm of the Roman Gradual or the Simple Gradual may be used, or another song appropriate for this part of the Mass, the day, or the season" (ibid., no. 26). "Another song appropriate for this part of Mass" clearly implies the use of vernacular texts. If Latin texts are used, there is no reason not to use the texts of the *Graduale Romanum* or *Graduale Simplex*. On the extension of the use of the vernacular, see also, *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 36, 54, 113; and Consilium, Letter *Dans sa récente allocution* of Cardinal G. Lercaro to presidents of the Conferences of Bishops and, for their information, to presidents of the national liturgical commissions, on issues regarding reform of the liturgy, 21 June 1967: *Notitiae* 3 (1967) 289-96; DOL 41, margin no. 486. On vernacular songs in the liturgy, see also: *Musicam Sacram* 32, 33, 36, 47, 53, 54, 59, 61. Consilium, Letter to the Italian Conference of Bishops, on liturgical music, 2 February 1968: *Notitiae* 4 (1968) 95-98; no. 1; DOL 512. Paul VI, Address to the 10<sup>th</sup> International Congress of Church Choirs, 6 April 1970: *Notitiae* 6 (1970) 154-57; DOL 518, margin no. 4223. Paul VI, Address to women religious taking part in the National Convention of the Associazione Italiana di Santa Cecilia, 15 April 1971: *Notitiae* 7 (1971) 241-43; DOL 519, margin no. 4225. Paul VI, Address at an audience for choir members, on the occasion of the tenth anniversary of the Consociatio Internationalis Musicae Sacrae, 12 October 1973; DOL 522, margin no. 4236. Congregation for Divine Worship, Letter *Voluntati obsequens* to bishops, accompanying the booklet *Iubilare Deo*, 14 April 1974: *Notitiae* 10 (1974) 123-26; DOL 523, margin no. 4239. Secretariat of State, Letter of Cardinal J. Villot to the Archbishop of Salzburg, on the occasion of the 6<sup>th</sup> International Congress of the CIMS (Salzburg, 26 August-2 September 1974), August 1974: *Notitiae* 10 (1974) 344-45; DOL 525, margin nos. 4244, 4255.

None of this means, however, that the alternative texts given in the new *Simple Gradual* need be used in their entirety on a particular occasion or that all parts of the proper must include psalm verses with antiphon or response. It is permissible to make only partial use of the *Simple Gradual*. For one thing, the *Simple Gradual* was not issued to supplant the *Roman Gradual*; it may be substituted for the latter in whole or in part.<sup>108</sup> Neither does the *Simple Gradual* preclude the development of further substitutes for the three processional chants—whether appropriate hymns or responsorial styles of song. On the contrary, the *Simple Gradual* enlarges the options and increases the flexibility of the sung parts of the eucharistic liturgy.<sup>109</sup>

Again, in order to fulfill the mandate of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 114, the Sacred Congregation for Divine Worship promulgated the *Ordo cantus Missae*<sup>110</sup> on 24 June 1972. This book indicated how the *Graduale Romanum* was to be accommodated to the reformed liturgy and provides the antiphon and psalm verse assignments for the entire liturgical year. The monks of Solesmes produced the revised edition of the *Graduale Romanum* in 1974 according to the provisions of *Sacrosanctum Concilium* and *Ordo cantus Missae*, in keeping with the arrangement and content of the post-Conciliar *Missale Romanum*.

It is clear that, while use of the *Graduale Simplex* is encouraged when its use would enhance the active participation of the faithful, the *Graduale Romanum* is still to be considered the normative source of the texts and melodies of the proper chants of the Mass. As such, it is the archetypal official source of texts, melodies, and musical form for the entrance song of the Mass. Its actual use, however, must be balanced with other requirements

---

<sup>108</sup> Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 203. “It is recommended that even in smaller churches, which use the *Simple Gradual*, certain pieces be sung from the *Roman Gradual*, especially those which are easier or which have been traditionally used by the people” (ibid.).

<sup>109</sup> ICEL, *Simple Gradual*, “Introductory Information,” 10.

<sup>110</sup> Congregation for Divine Worship, Decree *Thesaurum cantus gregoriani* promulgating the *editio typica* of the *Ordo cantus Missae*, 24 June 1972: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 65 (1973) 274; *Notitiae* 8 (1972) 215; DOL 534. *Ordo cantus Missae*, 24 June 1972: Vatican Polyglot Press, 1972; DOL 535. For a precursor to the *Ordo Cantus Missae*, see Congregation of Rites (Consilium), Decree *Edita Instructione*, promulgating *Cantus qui in Missali Romano desiderantur* (1965), 14 December 1964: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* (1965) 408.

of the post-Conciliar liturgy, such as the active participation of the faithful and the now nearly universal practice of celebrating the liturgy in the vernacular. Other sources, such as the *Simple Gradual* and even new collections of songs approved by the Conferences of Bishops, are also official sources of the entrance song, but to varying degrees derive from the *Roman Gradual* archetype.

The *Roman Gradual* deserves the highest honor in the Church for its artistic and devotional quality, and its integrity and value should not be impaired. It is therefore hoped that it will be used in those churches which have a *schola cantorum* with the necessary technical training to sing the more elaborate melodies.

Moreover, it is recommended that even in smaller churches, which use the *Simple Gradual*, certain pieces be sung from the *Roman Gradual*, especially those which are easier or which have been traditionally used by the people.<sup>111</sup>

While the primary reason for the production of the post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum* was the preservation of the Church's chant tradition<sup>112</sup> required by *Sacrosanctum Concilium*, those involved in its revision took great care to make it a useable liturgical book—even if it was primarily intended for use in communities with a particularly skilled *schola cantorum* or choir. Making the *Graduale Romanum* useful for the post-Conciliar liturgy required substantial revision of the pre-Conciliar *Graduale*. These revisions were of six types:<sup>113</sup>

1. “Authentic Gregorian” chants for suppressed liturgical celebrations were reassigned to other days of the liturgical year so as to (a) retain important chants within the Church's musical tradition, (b) provide chants for days new to the post-

---

<sup>111</sup> Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 2-3. The text here is the same in both the *editio typica* and *editio typica altera*. Trans., ICEL.

<sup>112</sup> *Ordo cantus Missae*, I, paras. 2, 3.

<sup>113</sup> See *ibid.*



Conciliar Roman calendar and (c) make some seasonal or generic chant assignments more “proper” or particular by replacing them with the recently orphaned chants.

2. Particularly important chants that had been lost to the Roman Rite were restored to liturgical use.

3. “Neo-Gregorian” (read “inauthentic”) chants were replaced by true Gregorian chants wherever possible.

4. The authentic Gregorian repertoire was redistributed throughout the liturgical year to avoid excessive repetition, particularly in the Commons.

5. The revised *Graduale Romanum* allows for the substitution of chants from the Proper of Seasons with other chants from the same season. This pastoral accommodation allows one to use the *Graduale Romanum* as a type of “advanced” *Graduale Simplex*.

6. The post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum* often assigns a number of psalm verses to each antiphon, thus restoring the early-Medieval musical form of the introit described in chapter one. In all cases, it is permissible to use more than one psalm verse, even if additional verses are not provided. The introit can now vary in length to accompany the entrance procession.<sup>114</sup> The introit of the present *Graduale Romanum* is even more adaptable than its medieval ancestor in that (a) the congregation is encouraged to join in singing the antiphon if possible, (b) the *Gloria Patri* / *Sicut erat* may be omitted if it would make the entrance song longer than the entrance

---

<sup>114</sup> See *ibid.*, 1.

procession, and (c) the antiphon may be sung by itself for particularly short entrance processions.

Thus, the revision of the *Graduale Romanum* for use in the post-Conciliar liturgy was eminently pastoral, both functionally—to encourage congregational participation<sup>115</sup> and to intimately join the entrance chant to the entrance procession—and theologically—to put forth a richer and more feast-specific collection of texts.

The monks of Solesmes produced the *Gregorian Missal* in 1990. Though not an official liturgical book, it provides a useable collection of the proper and ordinary of the Mass for the celebration on “all Sundays and solemnities and for those feasts which take precedence over a Sunday.”<sup>116</sup> It contains all of the texts necessary for the celebration of Mass in both Latin and English, but provides musical settings of only the Latin texts (both the Proper and the Ordinary). The English texts of the presidential prayers it contains are the official ICEL English translation, while those of the proper chants are new translations prepared by the monks of Solesmes “to facilitate comprehension of the sung Latin text, [but] . . . in no way intended for use in the Liturgy.”<sup>117</sup>

#### *The Roman Missal*

The *editio typica* (1970) of the *Missale Romanum* and its subsequent editions<sup>118</sup> contain few rubrics regarding the entrance song.<sup>119</sup> One finds the relevant directives

---

<sup>115</sup> Note that significant congregational participation in the singing of the introit was a laudable innovation. From the earliest extant records of the Roman Rite introit, we know that these chants were sung by soloist and *schola*.

<sup>116</sup> *The Gregorian Missal for Sundays* (Solesmes, 1990), 5-6.

<sup>117</sup> *Ibid.*, 6.

<sup>118</sup> An emended version of the *editio typica* was issued in 1971. The *editio typica secunda* was issued in 1975, and the *editio typica tertia* (the Latin edition currently in force) was issued in 2002 and emended in 2008.

concerning the entrance song in the various editions of the *General Instruction of the Roman Missal*.<sup>120</sup> The *Missale*, independent of the *General Instruction*, is important, however, as it contains the introit antiphon texts. Here we find the antiphon texts *in situ* and thus the *Missale Romanum* with its *General Instruction* is a primary source of liturgical law concerning the entrance song.

The antiphon texts of the *Missale Romanum* are not exactly the same as the antiphon texts in the *Graduale Romanum*.<sup>121</sup> One can overstate the significance of this fact, however, since “the entrance and communion antiphons of the Missal were intended to be recited, not sung, and to inspire the creation of suitable songs in the vernacular.”<sup>122</sup> In addition, in the 2002 *Missale Romanum*, Peter Finn notes that “of the twenty-seven Antiphons used on the Sundays of Advent and the Sundays and Feasts of the Christmas Season [for example] all but three are taken directly from the version of the Antiphons contained in the *Graduale Romanum*.”<sup>123</sup>

There are no musical settings of the entrance antiphon texts in the *Missale Romanum*, but as the current *General Instruction* implies, the processional chants are normatively

---

<sup>119</sup> “Populo congregato, sacerdos cum ministris ad altare accedit, dum cantus ad introitum peragitur.” *Ordo Missae Cum Populo* 1. “Tunc sacerdos ascendit ad altare, illud veneratur osculo, et accedit ad missale in sinistro latera altaris collocato, et legit antiphonam ad introitum.” *Ordo Missae Sine Populo* 4. This second rubric was omitted in the 2002 *Missale Romanum*.

<sup>120</sup> First edition, 6 April 1969; second edition, 26 March 1970; third edition, 23 December 1972; fourth edition, 27 March 1975 (with an appendix of U.S. adaptations); fifth edition, 20 April 2000; fifth edition with corrections, 2002 (issued with the 2002 *Missale Romanum*, *editio typica tertia*); fifth edition in with U.S. adaptations, 17 March 2003.

<sup>121</sup> See A. Franquesa, “Antifonas del Introito y de la Comunion en las Misas sin Canto,” *Notitiae* (1970): 213-21.

<sup>122</sup> Bugnini, *The Reform of the Liturgy*, 891. “As the use of the vernacular in the liturgy was extended, the situation changed. . . . The principle role in choosing and adopting repertoires of songs for celebrations in the vernacular had to be left to the episcopal conferences; a Roman group could only provide general criteria for passing judgment” (ibid.).

<sup>123</sup> Finn/ICEL, “Questions and Issues Related to the Translation of the Antiphons,” 2.

sung.<sup>124</sup> Thus, in order to facilitate the use of the proper chants, the editors of the 2002 *Missale* applied minor revisions to a few of the Latin antiphon texts to make them correspond to the chant texts found in the *Graduale Romanum*.<sup>125</sup> The fact that the antiphons are included in the *Missale* also facilitates the recitation of the texts should they need to be recited.

### *Other Documents*

Aside from *Sacrosanctum Concilium*, which is preeminent, ecclesiastical documents regarding the liturgy fall into four categories in terms of legal authority. First are Decrees, Apostolic Constitutions, *Praenotanda* (Introductions and General Instructions) to the official liturgical books, and the liturgical books themselves (both the Latin and official vernacular editions). They are universal laws and as such have the same authority as the 1983 *Code of Canon Law*.<sup>126</sup> Second are papal Apostolic Letters, in which the Pope can exercise his legislative authority, and third are Instructions issued by the Roman curia. Instructions contain explanations of existing laws or suggestions for making these laws practically applicable.<sup>127</sup> As Seasoltz explains, “Of their nature they are not strictly legislative; their

---

<sup>124</sup> See GIRM (USA) 47, 48.

<sup>125</sup> The revisions had to do with the inclusion of “alleluias,” which are integral to the chant melody, but which had been left out of previous editions of the post-Conciliar *Missale Romanum*. The entrance antiphon for Easter Sunday in the 1975 edition reads, “Resurrexi, et adhuc tecum sum: posuisti super me manum tuam: mirabilis facta est scientia tua, alleluia,” while in the 2002 edition the intervening “alleluias” from the *Graduale Romanum* are added: “Resurrexi, et adhuc tecum sum, alleluia: posuisti super me manum tuam, alleluia: mirabilis facta est scientia tua, alleluia, alleluia.” The editors did the same for the alternative entrance antiphon (*Surrexit Dominus vere*) and communion antiphon (*Pascha nostrum immolatus*) on Easter Sunday. These changes, though minute in light of the hundreds of antiphons in the *Missale*, emphasize the fact that the processional chants are normatively sung and that their texts are intimately connected with their melodies.

<sup>126</sup> Huels, *Liturgy Documents*, 3<sup>rd</sup>. ed., xi.

<sup>127</sup> Seasoltz, *New Liturgy, New Laws*, 175.

application therefore allows for more flexibility than decrees.”<sup>128</sup> Certain Instructions, nevertheless, intend to implement changes to existing laws. Though, strictly speaking, such documents should have been issued as a Decree or Apostolic Constitution, their intent to legislate makes them authoritative, unless they contradict law of higher authority. One’s only recourse is to carefully study the text and its context in order to determine the intention of the legislator.<sup>129</sup>

The fourth category includes a variety of forms: letters, addresses, notes, and communications. While none of these forms is strictly legislative, each contains norms for the revision, translation, and composition of liturgical texts.<sup>130</sup> Fifth and finally are documents promulgated by Episcopal Conferences. These documents fall into three categories: normative particular law<sup>131</sup> such as the GIRM (USA), guidelines issued by the USCCB such as *Sing to the Lord*<sup>132</sup>, and documents issued by the Bishops’ Committee for Divine Worship (formerly Bishops’ Committee on the Liturgy) such as the now superseded documents *Liturgical Music Today* and *Music in Catholic Worship*.<sup>133</sup> The GIRM (USA) is binding for all Roman rite dioceses of the United States.<sup>134</sup> Documents from the Bishops’

---

<sup>128</sup> Ibid.

<sup>129</sup> Ibid., 176.

<sup>130</sup> Ibid., 178-79.

<sup>131</sup> Such documents also require the approval of the Holy See.

<sup>132</sup> USCCB, *Sing to the Lord: Music in Divine Worship* (14 November 2007). *Sing to the Lord* is an extensive revision of *Music in Catholic Worship*, 1972; revised edition, 1983. *Liturgy Documents*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., 277-92.

<sup>133</sup> NCCB, Bishops’ Committee on the Liturgy, *Liturgical Music Today*, 1982. In *Liturgy Documents*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., 297-310.

<sup>134</sup> Huels, *Liturgy Documents*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., xi-xii.

Committee on Divine Worship, on the other hand, are not liturgical law in the strict sense, but as Huels explains:<sup>135</sup>

This does not mean, however, that they are merely optional. They are the products of wide consultation among the American bishops and the liturgical experts who advise them, and their publication was approved by the Administrative Committee of the NCCB. Many times their content is based directly on other documents that are legally binding.<sup>136</sup>

The most recent document from the BCDW *Sing to the Lord* holds more authority than previous U.S. documents on liturgical music because the whole body of Latin Rite bishops of the USCCB issued it as a formal statement. *Sing to the Lord* is a set of guidelines,<sup>137</sup> however, not particular law for the dioceses of the United States, since it was not submitted to the Holy See for approval. In many instances, nevertheless, the document quotes or is directly based on other legally binding documents, and, thus, contains law even if the document itself is not strictly legislative. Furthermore, as Huels reminds us, “because the bishop is a true legislator for the liturgy in his diocese, any document . . . can become official policy within a diocese if the diocesan bishop so decrees.”<sup>138</sup>

### **Foundational Norms for the Post-Conciliar Entrance Song**

While an excessive concern with distinctions regarding canonical weight and sanctioned practices may be at variance with the nature and purpose of liturgical law,<sup>139</sup> it is possible to garner certain foundational norms from the Conciliar and post-Conciliar

---

<sup>135</sup> Ibid., xii.

<sup>136</sup> Ibid.

<sup>137</sup> See *Sing to the Lord*, introductory paragraph.

<sup>138</sup> Huels, *Liturgy Documents*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., xii.

<sup>139</sup> “The principle reasons or justifications for liturgical law do not prejudice the objective value and worth of specific laws, much less the desirable mean between greater and lesser firmness, between uniformity (an excess as opposed to unity) and a near total absence of law.” McManus, “Liturgical Law,” *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 119.

documents, which have guided and continue to guide the development and enactment of the entrance song in the Mass of the Roman Rite.

### The Importance of Singing the Liturgy

God has bestowed upon his people the gift of song. God dwells within each human person, in the place where music takes its source. indeed, God, the giver of song, is present whenever his people sing his praises (*Sing to the Lord* 1).

In a general sense, the third edition of the *Missale Romanum* (2002) emphasizes the importance of singing in the liturgy. It provides chants for nearly seventy more texts than did the second edition (1975), and has placed some music that was in the Appendix of earlier editions within the text of the *Missale*. If, indeed, the purpose of liturgical music is “the glory of God and the sanctification of the faithful” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112), then “the musical tradition of the universal Church is a treasure of inestimable value. . . .[by means of which] a liturgical service takes on a nobler aspect” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112, 113). This is especially true of liturgical song. Because it is “closely bound to the text, it forms a necessary or integral part of the solemn liturgy” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112). It is with good reason, then, that “great importance should . . . be attached to the use of singing in the celebration of the Mass [and that] . . . every care should be taken that singing by the ministers and the people is not absent” (GIRM [USA] 40).

But what is it about singing that makes it “noble,” of “inestimable value” and “integral” to liturgical celebration? First, “Singing is the sign of the heart’s joy” (GIRM [USA] 39) and a primary means by which such joy is expressed. This joy is the joy experienced of “God’s love for us and of our love for him,” and of our love for one another

(*Sing to the Lord* 2). Thus, while singing is never inappropriate, it should be part of the liturgy “especially on Sundays and holy days of obligation” (GIRM [USA] 40) and during other especially festive or solemn occasions.<sup>140</sup>

Second, it adds “delight to prayer, fostering oneness of spirit” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112), and, thus, is a sign and means of unity among the gathered assembly. “As St. Ambrose exclaims, ‘How close the bond of unity is when so many people join together in the one chorus. They are like the different strings of the harp that yet produces one melody. The harpist may often make mistakes while playing on just a few strings, but the artist who is the Holy Spirit never makes a mistake while playing on the hearts of a whole people’” (*Iubilare Deo*).<sup>141</sup>

Third, singing is a means of effectively expressing and experiencing the liturgical texts and “gives a more graceful expression to prayer” (*Musicam Sacram* 5). It enhances their audibility, helps keep the attention of the assembly during their proclamation, and makes them more memorable. Ideally, singing also shapes the faith and actions of those who participate in the liturgy: “The faithful . . . expressing their own faith in a harmonic and solemn way through song . . . will let their singing shape more and more each aspect of daily

---

<sup>140</sup> *Musicam Sacram* 7. See also John Paul II, Apostolic Letter *Dies Domini*, 31 May 1998: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 90 (1998), 50. Trans., *The Liturgy Documents: A Parish Resource*, vol. 2 (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1999), 31: “In ways dictated by pastoral experience and local custom in keeping with liturgical norms, efforts must be made to ensure that the celebration has the festive character appropriate to the day commemorating the Lord’s Resurrection. To this end, it is important to devote attention to the songs used by the assembly, since singing is a particularly apt way to express a joyful heart, accentuating the solemnity of the celebration and fostering the sense of a common faith and a shared love. Care must be taken to ensure the quality, both of the texts and of the melodies, so that what is proposed today as new and creative will conform to liturgical requirements and be worthy of the Church’s tradition which, in the field of sacred music, boasts a priceless heritage.”

<sup>141</sup> Congregation for Divine Worship, preface to the Booklet *Iubilare Deo*, 11 April 1974: Vatican Polyglot Press, 1974; DOL 524, margin no. 4243. See also Ambrose, *Explanationes psalmorum* in Ps. 1:9: PL 14, 925.



life” (*Mosso dal vivo desiderio*<sup>142</sup> 15).<sup>143</sup> Certainly, “charity, justice, and evangelization are . . . the normal consequences of liturgical celebration. Particularly inspired by sung participation, the body of the Word Incarnate goes forth to spread the Gospel with full force and compassion” (*Sing to the Lord* 9).

Fourth, the fact that singing is integral to the liturgy implies something important about the type of music that is most appropriate to liturgical celebration: it must facilitate singing and be suited to the human voice. Liturgical chant offers a model in this regard. It was created within an aural culture and transmitted by memory from cantor to cantor and from cantor to choir. As such, it is music that instinctively fits the liturgical text and matches the requirements of the human voice. To be sure, “the Church does not exclude any type of sacred music from liturgical services” (*Musicam Sacram* 9), but, for liturgical song, “singability” and the effective expression of liturgical texts are requisite characteristics.

Lastly, music helps to express “the shape of the rite” (*Sing to the Lord* 68). Not only will liturgical song “be the more holy the more closely it is joined to the liturgical rite” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112), but one can also say that certain texts are normatively sung because singing is a constituent element of certain ritual elements of the liturgy. Acclamations, antiphons, and psalms are fully expressed only when sung, and processions are fully realized only when accompanied by song.

---

<sup>142</sup> John Paul II, Chirograph *Mosso dal vivo desiderio*, celebrating the centenary of Pope St. Pius X’s motu proprio on sacred music *Tra le sollecitudini*. 3 November 2003. *Pastoral Music* (February-March 2004) 9-23. A Chirograph is a type of Apostolic Letter and carries the same legal authority. See also Mason, “The Pastoral Implications of John Paul II’s Chirograph for the Centenary of the *Motu Proprio* ‘Tra Le Sollecitudini’ on Sacred Music.” *Worship* 82:5 (September 2008) 386-413.

<sup>143</sup> “Faith grows when it is well expressed in celebration.” *Sing to the Lord* 5.

### The Active Participation of the Faithful

It is a fundamental principle of the post-Conciliar liturgical reform that the full and active participation of the faithful is “the aim to be considered before all else” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 14). To be sure, liturgical song, including the entrance song,<sup>144</sup> is an important means by which to accomplish this active participation (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 30). In fact, “Singing is one of the primary ways that the assembly of the faithful participates actively in the Liturgy” (*Sing to the Lord* 26). Active participation should be both “internal” and “external,” and is influenced by one’s “role within the worship of the entire liturgical assembly” (*Sing to the Lord* 10, 12, 13).<sup>145</sup> Note that the question is never “should the assembly sing?” but rather “what kind of music should the assembly sing?”

Pastoral considerations inevitably come into play when one considers how to best facilitate active participation. In terms of singing at the liturgy, there are two fundamental pastoral motives. First, the music must be within the ability of the gathered assembly.<sup>146</sup> One makes such a determination not only in light of the actual musical skill of the members of a particular parish, but also in light of several other factors: Does the parish have a choir? If so, how skilled is the choir? How stable is the membership of the parish? What are the skill levels of the choir director, organist(s), cantor(s), and so forth. These factors taken together

<sup>144</sup> See *Musicam Sacram* 33; and *Ordo cantus Missae* 1.

<sup>145</sup> On the different roles in regard to liturgical singing, including those of the Bishop, Priest, Deacon, assembly, choir, psalmist, cantor, organist, other instrumentalists, and music director, see also *Sing to the Lord* 15-47; and *GIRM (USA)* 48, 103, 104. To be sure, “active participation” includes listening, contemplation, meditation, as well as singing, processing, and praying aloud together. See, for example, James F. Caccamo, “The Listener as Musician: The Importance of Audience in the Moral Power of Music,” in *God’s Grandeur: The Arts and Imagination in Theology*, ed. David C. Robinson (Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books, 2007), 59-79.

<sup>146</sup> “So that the holy people may sing with one voice, the music must be within its members’ capability.” *Sing to the Lord* 27. “The choice of the style of music for a choir or congregation should be guided by the abilities of those who must do the singing. The Church does not exclude any type of sacred music from liturgical services as long as . . . [it] is not a hindrance to the required active participation of the people.” *Musicam Sacram* 8.

should determine “the choice of individual compositions for congregational participation” (*Sing to the Lord* 70), and should also determine the balance between variety and stability in a parish’s musical repertoire (*Sing to the Lord* 27). It is for such pastoral reasons, for example, that it is permissible “to replace the text proper to a day with another text belonging to the same season” (*Ordo cantus Missae* 4279).

The second fundamental motive is to ensure that the music program at a particular parish takes seriously the “legitimate requirements of adaptation and inculturation” (*Mosso dal vivo desiderio* 6). Indeed, “congregational singing is to be fostered by every means possible, even by new types of music suited to the culture of the people and to the contemporary spirit” (*Liturgicae instaurationes*<sup>147</sup> 3c).<sup>148</sup> Pastoral sensitivity to cultural context is particularly complex in the church in the United States because “cultural pluralism has been the common heritage of all Americans, and ‘the Catholic community is rapidly re-encountering itself as an immigrant Church’” (*Sing to the Lord* 57).<sup>149</sup> Cultural adaptation of this type is a complex process, but would include, at the very least, music in the native language or bilingual music resources (*Sing to the Lord* 57-58). “Culture” has not only to do with language and ethnicity, however. Other demographic factors, such as the median age of a parish community, must also be considered (*Sing to the Lord* 70). Most basically, “The choice of individual compositions for congregational participation will often depend on those

---

<sup>147</sup> Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction (third) *Liturgicae instaurationes*, on the orderly carrying out of the Constitution on the Liturgy, 5 September 1970: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 62 (1970) 692–704; *Notitiae* 7 (1971) 10–26; DOL 52.

<sup>148</sup> “Consideration should . . . be given to the idiom of different languages and the culture of different peoples.” GIRM (USA) 38.

<sup>149</sup> Quoting USCCB, *Welcoming the Stranger: Unity in Diversity*, 2001, 7.

ways in which a particular group finds it best to join their hearts and minds to the liturgical action” (*Sing to the Lord* 70).

Liturgical song is successful to the degree it matches the skill level and cultural requirements of the assembly, and thus fosters active participation, because active participation is critically important from the perspective of faith formation.

Our participation in the Liturgy is challenging. Sometimes, our voices do not correspond to the convictions of our hearts. At other times, we are distracted or preoccupied by the cares of the world. But Christ always invites us to enter into song, to rise above our own preoccupations, and to give our entire selves to the hymn of his Paschal Sacrifice for the honor and glory of the Most Blessed Trinity (*Sing to the Lord* 14).

To be sure, “A liturgical celebration can have no more solemn or pleasing feature than the whole assembly’s expressing its faith and devotion in song” (*Musicam Sacram* 16). It is by taking part in the liturgy again and again—with body, voice, mind, and heart—that one enters more deeply into the Christian mystery, for participating in the liturgy “is the primary and indispensable source from which the faithful are to derive the true Christian spirit” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 14).

### Which Texts of the Mass Should Be Sung?

While singing is a *normative* part of liturgical celebration, not all liturgical texts are *normatively* sung. Texts “that are of greater importance and especially . . . those to be sung by the priest or the deacon or the lector, with the people responding, or by the priest and people together” (GIRM [USA] 40) should be sung above all else.<sup>150</sup> Furthermore, if a text is

---

<sup>150</sup> “This includes dialogues such as . . . *The Lord be with you. And also with you.* . . . The dialogues of the Liturgy are fundamental because they ‘are not simply outward signs of communal celebration but foster and bring about communion between priest and people.’ By their nature, they are short and uncomplicated and

set to music in the actual ritual book, here the *Missale Romanum*, it is particularly appropriate that it be sung at Mass.<sup>151</sup> In the 2002 *Missale Romanum*, for example, many prefaces for solemnities are set to music *in situ* and thus should be sung whenever possible. Strictly speaking, the *Graduale Romanum* is part of the *Missale Romanum*, as it is the source for the proper chants of the Mass. This fact implies that the entrance song and other chants in the *Graduale* are normatively sung, even if they are not the most important liturgical texts.<sup>152</sup>

It is permissible and sometimes desirable that the choir sing certain liturgical songs alone during the Mass, including the entrance song, depending upon the particular context of the celebration (*Sing to the Lord* 30, *Musicam Sacram* 16c),<sup>153</sup> but participation in the entrance song “on the part of the assembly is commended” (*Sing to the Lord* 115b).<sup>154</sup> The assembly might participate by singing a hymn,<sup>155</sup> since “Church legislation today permits as

---

easily invite active participation by the assembly. Every effort should therefore be made to introduce or strengthen as a normative practice the singing of the dialogues. . . . The acclamations of the Eucharistic Liturgy . . . arise from the whole gathered assembly as assents to God’s Word and action. . . . They are appropriately sung at any Mass.” *Sing to the Lord* 115a. See also *Musicam Sacram* 7.

<sup>151</sup> See also, Congregation for Divine Worship, Note *Passim quaeritur*, on the music for inclusion in vernacular editions of the Roman Missal, May 1975: *Notitiae* 11 (1975) 129-32; nos. 2-3; DOL 538.

<sup>152</sup> One must be guided by the principle of “progressive solemnity,” however. If an entrance song is to be sung, therefore, the “dialogues and acclamations (Gospel Acclamation, *Sanctus*, Memorial Acclamation, Amen); litanies (*Kyrie*, *Agnus Dei*); [and] Responsorial Psalm” should also be sung. *Sing to the Lord* 116. See also *Passim quaeritur* 2-3; and *Musicam Sacram* 29-31.

<sup>153</sup> However, “The practice of assigning the singing of the entire Proper and Ordinary of the Mass to the choir alone without the rest of the congregation is not to be permitted.” *Musicam Sacram* 16c.

<sup>154</sup> “The assembly of the faithful should, as far as possible, have a part in singing the Proper of the Mass, especially by use of simple responses or other appropriate melodies.” *Musicam Sacram* 33.

<sup>155</sup> “Sometimes it is even quite appropriate to have other songs at the beginning, at the presentation of the gifts, and at the communion, as well as at the end of Mass. It is not enough for these songs to be ‘eucharistic’ in some way; they must be in keeping with the parts of the mass and with the feast or liturgical season.” *Musicam Sacram* 36.

an option the use of vernacular hymns at the Entrance,” as long as they are “appropriate to the liturgical action” and “in conformity with Catholic teaching” (*Sing to the Lord* 115d).<sup>156</sup>

The assembly and choir or assembly and cantor can also sing the entrance song together “in dialogue or alternation. . . . This approach often takes the form of a congregational refrain with verses sung by the choir” (*Sing to the Lord* 29; see also 37). Here, the proper antiphon and psalm of the entrance song should be used if circumstances permit. In light of liturgical history, it is the musical form most germane to the processions of the Mass of the Roman Rite.<sup>157</sup> As has been said, responsorial or antiphonal singing is especially suitable for processions because such songs have an open musical form, and thus a variable length that can accommodate the infinitely variable length of an entrance procession. They also facilitate active participation because the gathered faithful can sing the antiphon from memory (in contrast to singing a hymn from a book) and thus engage more fully in the entrance procession.

---

<sup>156</sup> “At Mass, in addition to the *Gloria* and a small number of strophic hymns in the *Roman Missal* and *Graduale Romanum*, congregational hymns of a particular nation or group that have been judged appropriate by the competent authorities mentioned in the GIRM, nos. 48, 74, and 87, may be admitted to the Sacred Liturgy. . . . these popular hymns are fulfilling a properly liturgical role. . . . In accord with an uninterrupted history of nearly five centuries, nothing prevents the use of some congregational hymns coming from other Christian traditions.” *Sing to the Lord* 115d.

<sup>157</sup> See *Sing to the Lord* 117. This issue is debated today because, while hymns are germane to the Liturgy of the Hours, their use at the entrance, offertory, communion, and recession in the Eucharistic liturgy is not reflective of the ancient Roman Rite. Kevin Irwin favors the traditional antiphon/verse structure of the processional chants over the hymn form for the reasons mentioned above. Even further, Irwin points out that the substitution of hymns for the traditional antiphon/verses of the introit (and their theological themes) can delete a traditional and substantial body of scripture put forth in the liturgy throughout the year. In his view, if hymns are to be used in spite of their stylistic inadequacy, they must be derived from the traditional introit texts. Indeed, hymns are only appropriate sources for liturgical theology “to the extent that their texts reflect the theology of the entrance antiphons found in the *Graduale Romanum* or *Missale Romanum*.” *Context and Text*, 236-38. See also Anthony Ruff, *Sacred Music and Liturgical Reform: Treasures and Transformations* (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2007), 102-104, 563-602. Ruff presents a generally positive evaluation of the use of strophic hymns in the Roman Rite Mass, especially as part of “a common heritage of many Western Christian traditions,” but admits that its “form relates only with difficulty with ritual action” (ibid., 601). He cites the entrance procession as one of the “elements of the Eucharistic Liturgy most amenable to strophic forms” (ibid.).

The genre of a particular text has bearing on whether or not it should be sung (GIRM [USA] 40). Certain texts, are “by their very nature”<sup>158</sup> intended for singing: psalms, acclamations, litanies, and—most importantly for the purposes of this study—antiphons (*Sing to the Lord* 115b). Indeed, “. . . it is above all necessary that those parts which of their nature call for singing are in fact sung and in the style and form demanded by the parts themselves” (*Musicam Sacram* 6). *Sing to the Lord* calls this the “ritual dimension of sacred music [which] refers to those ways in which [music] is ‘connected with the liturgical action’ so that it accords with the structure of the Liturgy and expresses the shape of the rite” (68). Because the entrance song accompanies the entrance procession, it must be “processional” music and facilitate the act of processing.<sup>159</sup>

The entrance song falls into two categories in terms of genre: a constituent and primary element of the Introductory Rites, and one of the chants of the celebration of the Eucharist that accompanies a ritual action (GIRM [USA] 37). This means the music that accompanies the entrance of the ministers should facilitate the overall purpose of the Introductory Rites, namely, “to ensure that the faithful who come together as one establish communion and dispose themselves to listen properly to God’s word and to celebrate the Eucharist worthily” (GIRM [USA] 46). More specifically, the entrance song is to “open the celebration, foster the unity of those who have been gathered, introduce their thoughts to the

---

<sup>158</sup> See Congregation for Divine Worship, *General Instruction of the Liturgy of the Hours*, 2 February 1971; no. 392; DOL 426.

<sup>159</sup> “The Entrance and Communion chant with their psalm verses serve to accompany the two most important processions of the Mass: the entrance procession, by which the Mass begins, and the Communion procession, by which the faithful approach the altar to receive Holy Communion.” *Sing to the Lord* 115b. See also *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112. “The tone of voice should correspond to the genre of the text itself, that is, depending on whether it is a reading, a prayer, a commentary, an acclamation, or a sung text; the tone should also be suited to the form of celebration and to the solemnity of the gathering.” GIRM (USA) 38.

mystery of the liturgical season or festivity, and accompany the procession of the priest and ministers” (GIRM [USA] 47). It begins what is concluded by the priest’s greeting after the sign of the Cross—namely, the manifestation of the “mystery of the Church gathered together,” which is a prerequisite to authentic active participation (GIRM [USA] 50).<sup>160</sup>

### Translating the Latin Proper Texts and Composing New Texts in the Vernacular

Conferences of Bishops are the competent authority concerning adaptation in the liturgy (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 22, 36, 39-40) and have the authority to promulgate vernacular translations and alternative collections of songs, in accord with *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 37-40, which provides for the use of culturally appropriate musical forms.<sup>161</sup> There are three principles put forth in the documents concerning the translation of the official Latin texts of the processional chants. First, Conferences of Bishops have the authority and responsibility to prepare and issue vernacular translations of the entrance antiphons and their accompanying psalm verses.<sup>162</sup> The Holy See must approve such translations. Second, translators are to strive for conformity with the original Latin text, but at the same time are to ensure that, stylistically, the translation lends itself to being set to music.<sup>163</sup> Third, official

---

<sup>160</sup> “When the Entrance chant is concluded, the priest stands at the chair and, together with the whole gathering, makes the Sign of the Cross. Then he signifies the presence of the Lord to the community gathered there by means of the Greeting. By this Greeting and the people’s response, the mystery of the Church gathered together is made manifest.” GIRM (USA) 50.

<sup>161</sup> “The competent ecclesiastical authority . . . is empowered to decide whether and to what extent the vernacular is to be used.” *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 36.

<sup>162</sup> “It is up to the Conferences of Bishops to decide on the adaptations indicated in this General Instruction and in the Order of Mass and, once their decisions have been accorded the recognition of the Apostolic See, to introduce then into the Missal itself. The adaptations include . . . the texts of the chants at the entrance, at the presentation of the gifts, and at Communion (see nos. 48, 74, 87).” GIRM (USA) 390.

<sup>163</sup> “It will also be up to the Conferences of Bishops to prepare . . . a translation of the other texts, so that, even though the character of each language is respected, the meaning of the original Latin text is fully and faithfully rendered. It should be borne in mind that the primary purpose of the translation of the texts is not with a view to meditation, but rather that they be proclaimed or sung during an actual celebration.” GIRM (USA) 392.



vernacular translations are official liturgical texts and, as such, should not be altered in musical settings.<sup>164</sup> Today, translation into the vernacular is guided by the norms set forth in the Instruction *Liturgiam authenticam*,<sup>165</sup> the fifth Instruction on the proper implementation of the *Sacrosanctum Concilium*. The instruction is not specifically concerned with music, however, which has its own unique requirements.<sup>166</sup>

The celebration of the liturgy in the vernacular has become a universal practice since the liturgical reform. Undeniably, “the use of the vernacular is the norm in most liturgical celebrations in the dioceses of the United States ‘for the sake of a better comprehension of the mystery being celebrated’” (*Sing to the Lord* 61).<sup>167</sup> Since at least 1968, the bishops’ conferences have had “the power to allow use of the vernacular for all or some chants contained in the *Graduale Simplex* and to give approval to a text for such chants” (*Instantibus pluribus* 1).

---

“Translators of texts to be set to music should take care to combine properly conformity to the Latin and adaptability to the music.” *Musicam Sacram* 54.

<sup>164</sup> “Under no consideration, not even the pretext of singing the Mass, may the official translations of its formularies be altered.” *Liturgicae instaurationes* 3.

<sup>165</sup> Congregation for Divine Worship and the Discipline of the Sacraments, Instruction (fifth) *Liturgiam authenticam*, on the orderly carrying out of the Constitution on the Liturgy, 7 May 2001.

<sup>166</sup> Translation of the Latin texts into the vernacular is certainly a central and critical task given to the Conferences of Bishops. Many Conferences of a particular language group have formed mixed commissions for the purpose of creating a common vernacular translation. In the United States and other English-speaking countries, ICEL plays a central role in this task. “The bodies of bishops concerned are to see to it that there is a single vernacular translation for a single language used in different regions.” *Musicam Sacram* 58. See also the instruction from the Congregation for Divine Worship on the translation of liturgical texts *Comme le prévoit* (1969), which was superseded by *Liturgiam authenticam*; and the recent *Ratio Translationis* for the English language also produced by the Congregation for Divine Worship (2007). One should note that the 1973 ICEL translation of the proper antiphons of the Roman Missal did not take into account as a primary criterion of translation the ‘singability’ of the antiphon texts. After all, the antiphon translations printed in the *Missal* were to be used only in the event there is no entrance song and the antiphon must be recited.

<sup>167</sup> Quoting GIRM (USA) 12.

Translation of the official Latin liturgical texts—a crucial and indispensable task—is only one part of the adaptation of the liturgy to particular churches and cultures, however.<sup>168</sup> After the completion of the translation of the official Latin texts, the bishops' conferences are to foster the expansion and improvement of this repertoire. It is not only the preservation of official Latin texts, then, that is important, but also the facilitation of the active participation of the assembly through music.<sup>169</sup>

Along with the new additions to the *Graduale Simplex* and post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum* from the Gregorian repertoire, the documents call for the composition of new texts and musical settings of the processional chants: “It is up to the Conferences of Bishops to decide on the adaptations . . . once their decisions have been accorded the *recognitio* of the Apostolic See, to introduce them into the Missal itself. The adaptations include . . . the texts of the chants at the entrance, at the presentation of the gifts, and at the communion” (GIRM [USA] 390). Ecclesiastical norms, both in legislation and in the liturgical books themselves,<sup>170</sup> allow for more flexibility when it comes to the processional chants of the Mass, than for other elements of the Proper such as the Collect.<sup>171</sup> This is not to say the

---

<sup>168</sup> “Within the limits set by the *editio typica* of the liturgical books, it shall be for the competent, territorial ecclesiastical authority . . . to specify adaptations, especially in the case of the administration of the sacraments, the sacramentals, processions, liturgical language, sacred music, and the arts. This, however, is to be done in accord with the fundamental norms laid down in this Constitution.” *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 39.

<sup>169</sup> “Congregational singing is to be fostered by every means possible, even by use of new types of music suited to the culture of the people and to the contemporary spirit.” *Liturgicae instaurationis* 3.

<sup>170</sup> “It is up to conferences of bishops to prepare a collection of vernacular texts for the songs at the entrance, presentation of the gifts, and communion.” Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction *Constitutione Apostolica*, on the gradual carrying out of the Apostolic Constitution *Missale Romanum* (3 April 1969), 20 October 1969: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 61 (1969) 749-53; *Notitiae* 5 (1969) 418-23; no. 12; DOL 209.

<sup>171</sup> “In some places there is the lawful practice . . . of substituting other songs for the entrance, offertory, and communion chants in the *Graduale*. At the discretion of the competent territorial authority this practice may be kept, on condition that the songs substituted fit in with those parts of the Mass, the feast, or the liturgical season. The texts of such songs must also have the approval of the same territorial authority.” *Musicam Sacram* 32.

ancient and official corpus of Latin introit texts are of no consequence, however. “Before the introduction of popular religious music into the vernacular as a substitute for the music traditional in the liturgy,” furthermore, “there should be an effort in every nation to compile a collection of melodies with vernacular texts, fully suited to the liturgical rites and having artistic worth” (*Le sarei grato* 3).<sup>172</sup> Indeed, new collections are to be “guided by the texts given in the new Roman Missal” (*Constitutione Apostolica* 12). As the entrance song is a proper text, new entrance texts should reflect the seasonal or festal character of their liturgical assignments, or even the theological theme<sup>173</sup> of the official Latin text. In Ordinary Time, they should reflect the over-arching paschal character of Sunday, and might draw upon themes of the scriptural readings of the day.

Such new music is to be fostered and approved by the Conferences of Bishops, given the *recognitio* of the Holy See, and influenced by the official Latin texts. But who is to compose them? In 1964, Paul VI established the *Consociatio Internationalis Musicae Sacrae*.<sup>174</sup> While the task of CIMS was not explicitly the composition of new texts, one sees in its creation a recognition by the Holy See that it must actively engage musical and linguistic experts to assist in the reform and renewal of liturgical music.<sup>175</sup> Diocesan

---

<sup>172</sup> Consilium, Letter *Le sarei grato* to papal nuncios and apostolic delegates, on the course to follow in reform of the liturgy, 25 March 1964, 3; DOL 79.

<sup>173</sup> See chapter 4 for a discussion of the theology of the entrance song.

<sup>174</sup> Paul VI, Epistle (autograph) *Nobile subsidium*, establishing canonically the *Consociatio Internationalis Musicae Sacrae*, 22 November 1963: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 56 (1964) 231-34; DOL 500.

<sup>175</sup> “The manifold objectives of these popes included the following: to create close ties between those dedicated to the art of sacred music and the Apostolic See; to put at the service of the Apostolic See an international institute that would keep it abreast of the needs of sacred music and also carry out the measures taken by the supreme authority of the Church in regard to sacred music; in a particular way, to provide missionaries with help for the solution of the difficult and important problem of music in mission lands and to coordinate efforts in this direction; finally, to promote publication of works on sacred music and studies of the Church’s musical heritage.” *Nobile subsidium*, DOL para. 4100.

commissions<sup>176</sup> and especially bishops' conferences are to guide the creation of a vernacular collection of songs. "Upon approval of such a collection, the conference of bishops will at the same time strongly encourage experts in the field to add to and improve this collection, guided by . . . the genius and idiom of each language" (*Constitutione Apostolica* 12). Proper texts for feasts specific to a diocese or religious order, including the processional chants of the Mass, should be composed by local experts.<sup>177</sup>

#### Official Sources of the Entrance Song in the Roman Rite

Sources for settings of the entrance song are the *Graduale Romanum*, *Graduale Simplex*, and compilations approved by the Conferences of Bishops. The GIRM (USA) 48 states that,

In the dioceses of the United States of America, there are four options for the Entrance Chant:

- the antiphon from the *Roman Missal* or the Psalm from the *Roman Gradual* as set to music there or in another musical setting;
- the seasonal antiphon and Psalm of the *Simple Gradual*;
- a song from another collection of psalms and antiphons, approved by the Conference of Bishops or the diocesan bishop, including psalms arranged in responsorial or metrical forms;
- a suitable liturgical song similarly approved by the Conference of Bishops or the diocesan bishop.

In *Sing to the Lord* 144, the USCCB provides the following guidelines, which serve to clarify the *General Instruction*:

---

<sup>176</sup> "Each diocese should also, as far as possible, have two other commissions, one for music, the other for art." Paul VI, Motu Proprio *Sacram Liturgiam*, on putting into effect some prescriptions of the Constitution on the Liturgy, 25 January 1964: *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 56 (1964) 139-44; DOL 20, margin no. 280.

<sup>177</sup> "The dioceses or religious institute most closely associated with offices and Masses common to several dioceses or religious institutes or to both dioceses and religious institutes should compose the texts and the others involved accept them." Congregation for Divine Worship, Letter *Novo Calendario Romano* to bishops and general superiors of religious, to speed up preparation of the particular calendars of dioceses and religious institutes, as well as of proper texts for the Roman Missal and Liturgy of the Hours, February 1974. *Notitiae* 10 (1974) 87-88; no. 3; DOL 482.

The text and music for the Entrance song may be drawn from a number of sources.

- The singing of an antiphon and psalm during the entrance procession has been a long-standing tradition in the Roman Liturgy. Antiphons may be drawn from the official liturgical books—the *Graduale Romanum*, or the *Graduale Simplex*—or from other collections of antiphons and psalms.
- Other hymns and songs may also be sung at the Entrance, providing that they are in keeping with the purpose of the Entrance chant or song. The texts of antiphons, psalms, hymns, and songs for the liturgy must have been approved either by the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops or by the local diocesan bishop.

It is to a consideration of these options and their implications for liturgical praxis that we move in chapter three.

## Conclusion

The idea that the official text or “textual tradition” of the Roman Rite is normative is particularly significant in regard to the entrance song, since its official text is rarely sung in present-day liturgical celebrations.<sup>178</sup> To be sure, a retrieval of an understanding of the proper chants as official liturgical texts in the *Missale Romanum*—as ancient as most other of the Latin texts therein—is laudable. Respect for the Latin texts should not lead us to a rejection of vernacular collections of new songs for the Mass, but, rather, to a new synthesis

---

<sup>178</sup> In response to a query in regard to *Musicam Sacram* 33, the Congregation for Divine Worship emphasized the importance of using the official texts of the liturgy rather than something else. But, given *Musicam Sacram* 32, an exception seems to apply to the processional chants of the Mass. “Query: Many have inquired whether the rule still applies that appears in the Instruction on sacred music and the liturgy, 3 September 1958, no. 33: ‘In low Masses religious songs of the people may be sung by the congregation, without prejudice, however, to the principle that they be entirely consistent with the particular parts of the Mass.’ Reply: That rule has been superseded. What must be sung is the Mass, its Ordinary and Proper, not ‘something,’ no matter how consistent, that is imposed on the Mass. Because the liturgical service is one, it has only one countenance, one motif, one voice, the voice of the Church. To continue to replace the texts of the Mass being celebrated with motets that are reverent and devout, yet out of keeping with the Mass of the day (for example, the *Lauda Sion* on a saint’s feast) amounts to continuing an unacceptable ambiguity: it is to cheat the people. Liturgical song involves not mere melody, but words, text, thought, and the sentiments that the poetry and music contain. Thus texts must be those of the Mass, not others, and singing means singing the Mass not just singing during Mass.” *Notitiae* 5 (1969): 406; DOL, p. 1299, R4. In any case, once collections of music are approved for liturgical use, even if they contain new texts in the vernacular, they become official.

of the ancient proper chant tradition and the present day needs of local worshipping assemblies—a mutual enrichment in which the official texts are the foundation or seed for new compositions.<sup>179</sup> A wholesale return to the medieval introit/psalm form is neither possible nor desirable; at the same time, composing new entrance songs that ignore the proper texts all together is to “cheat the people.”<sup>180</sup>

Admiration for the official texts should also inspire Conferences of Bishops and composers to seek quality musical settings that can match the best qualities of the proper antiphons and psalms of the *Graduale Romanum* and *Graduale Simplex*. “To this end, it is important to devote attention to the songs used by the assembly . . . Care must be taken to ensure the quality, both of the texts and of the melodies, so that what is proposed today as new and creative will conform to liturgical requirements and be worthy of the Church’s tradition which, in the field of sacred music, boasts a priceless heritage” (*Dies Domini* 50). The concern for quality is not based on a generic or individual preference for a particular style of music, but on specific criteria, which should be employed by bishops’ conferences, diocesan commissions, and parish music directors when selecting music for the liturgy. *Sing to the Lord* provides some clarity in this regard. One should ask, “Is this composition capable of meeting the structural and textual requirements set forth by the liturgical books for this particular rite?” (the “liturgical judgment,” *Sing to the Lord* 127); “Will this composition draw this particular people closer to the mystery of Christ, which is at the heart of this liturgical celebration?” (the “pastoral judgment,” *Sing to the Lord* 133); and, “Is this

---

<sup>179</sup> This does not imply a rejection of any particular musical style or form.

<sup>180</sup> *Notitiae* 5 (1969): 406; DOL, p. 1299, R4.

composition technically, aesthetically, and expressively worthy?” (the “musical judgment,” *Sing to the Lord* 134).

Certainly, the norms delineated throughout this chapter find strength in what McManus calls their “aim and reasonableness.”<sup>181</sup> The nature of liturgical law is that it consists of “ordinances of reason” for the common good of the Christian community in official public worship.<sup>182</sup> The task ahead is to think of the norms not as a burden, but as a guide to understanding and enhancing the permissible forms of the entrance song and their effective enactment. Sometimes this effective enactment will require accommodation and adaptation of the permissible forms, and the norms for such adaptation are present in the existing liturgical law. Indeed, “A willingness to understand and observe the liturgical law as it is, along with all the post-Conciliar openness to change and creative growth, is a true sign of liturgical renewal.”<sup>183</sup>

---

<sup>181</sup> McManus, “Liturgical Law,” *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 415.

<sup>182</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>183</sup> *Ibid.*, 419.

## PART TWO: IMPLICATIONS OF THE CONTEXTUAL STUDIES

### Chapter 3

#### Models of the Entrance Song

The entrance song is an “image of the choir of the prophets who announced the Messiah.”

—Amalarius of Metz, *Expositio Missae* (813-14)<sup>1</sup>

“The idea of entrance has a truly decisive significance for the understanding of the eucharist.” It is the “ascent and entry of the Church into the heavenly sanctuary.”

—Alexander Schmemmann<sup>2</sup>

#### Introduction

Part one of this study has focused in detail upon, first, the historical origins and development of the entrance song in the Roman Rite, and, second, the entrance song as revised and regulated by the liturgical reform of the Second Vatican Council.<sup>3</sup> The foundational goals have been, respectively, to paint a historical picture of the evolution and function of the entrance song in the Roman Rite through a careful analysis of the extant evidence, and, through an examination of the relevant ecclesiastical documents, to determine the functions and permissible forms of the entrance song in the post-Conciliar liturgy.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Martin Gerbert, *Monumenta veteris Liturgiae Alemannicae*, vol. 2 (St. Blaise, 1779), 150; and Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:89, 90 n. 74.

<sup>2</sup> Alexander Schmemmann, *The Eucharist: The Sacrament of the Kingdom* (Crestwood, NJ: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1990), 50.

<sup>3</sup> This focus on ecclesiastical norms and documents is not to deny the importance of many other aspects of the implementation of the liturgical renewal—first and foremost, the fervent work of local pastors, liturgists, musicians, and assemblies. History and ecclesiastical norms are but two windows of many into the function and development of the post-Conciliar entrance song.



The purpose of the present chapter is to delineate several “models” of the Roman Rite entrance song. These models are grounded in the historical and legislative contextual studies of part one, and function as lenses through which to view the liturgical enactment of the entrance song, past and present. The models of this chapter emerge from an early-twenty-first-century perspective on the liturgy articulated in light of the principles and insights of the Vatican II liturgical renewal. While each model is only a generalization about a particular way of enacting the entrance song, taken together they help to define and offer possibilities for the ritual enactment of the entrance song in present-day local worshipping communities. Even more, the models offer a critical edge for the evaluation of such local enactment. The over-arching motivating question is, based on its historical and legislative contexts, what forms *may* the entrance song take today, and then, more specifically and subjectively, what form *should* it take?

Models as a means of theological reflection have been employed by a number of contemporary theologians, including a number of liturgical theologians, as was pointed out in the introduction to this study. The models approach allows for a methodologically sound means by which to generalize about entrance song practice, while being faithful to what in reality is a practice with innumerable variations.<sup>4</sup> A single model cannot fully describe the entrance song at any one historical moment, but it can reveal authentic characteristics of the entrance song in general. The fact that no one model is a complete description of reality

---

<sup>4</sup> “Models suggest, disclose . . . a number of associations or possibilities. No one model is able to capture the Reality under consideration; each, however, can help a person enter into the Reality’s mystery in a kind of supra-rational way.” Bevans, *Models of Contextual Theology*, 24.

requires the articulation of not just one model, but several.<sup>5</sup> Taken together, the models portray an “integral understanding” of the entrance song and should be understood “as mutually enriching and as presuming each other to be adequate,” each with its own strengths and weaknesses, each relying on different historical, theological, and liturgical foundations.<sup>6</sup> Given the fourfold function of the entrance song,<sup>7</sup> as defined in ecclesiastical documents, to open the celebration, foster unity,<sup>8</sup> introduce the feast or season, and accompany the entrance procession,<sup>9</sup> it is likely that one model might emphasize one function more so than others. Because of this possibility, “these different facets of an opening song need to be maintained in a dynamic tension, so that in the regular pattern of Eucharistic gatherings, each is properly

---

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., 26. For example, “It is clear from the New Testament that the meaning of baptism was understood by means of several diverse, albeit complementary, images.” M. Johnson, *Images of Baptism*, vi. “The images are many but the reality is one.” World Council of Churches, *Baptism, Eucharist, Ministry* (1982), Baptism II, par. 2. “These images provide for us models by which we might glimpse some of the manifold riches that baptism is and offers us. . . . However, because any one model is itself limited to features that fit the model and must suppress features that don’t fit, none of these images should be taken individually in any kind of comprehensive way as the *only* way to envision baptism. . . . It is precisely because any given model does not present the whole picture of a particular phenomenon that a model can become a useful tool in illuminating significant aspects of the entire, in this case, baptismal process, which another model might necessarily suppress. Hence, like symbols themselves, models are most useful because they give rise to thought and invite further reflection.” M. Johnson, *Images of Baptism*, ix-x. See also Turner, *Confirmation: The Baby in Solomon’s Court*, xi-xii: “This book will present seven different models of Confirmation. They derive from the liturgical books and pastoral practice of several churches. . . . It seems to me that each model influences the others, and this leakage causes inconsistencies within each form and for Confirmation as a whole. The purpose of this book is to explain the complexities of the word ‘confirmation’ by exploring the different forms of its celebration. In doing so, I hope to equip the reader to join in the critique and the conversation.”

<sup>6</sup> K. Irwin, *Models of the Eucharist*, 33-34.

<sup>7</sup> The term “entrance song” always refers to both the text *and* the music of the song, given that it is normatively sung. See GIRM (USA) 47, and chap. 2 of this study. In *New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*, s.v. “Liturgical Gestures,” Robert Vereecke articulates a different but complementary set of functions for the entrance procession: “An entrance procession (a) expresses a particular attitude of celebration; (b) can symbolize a journey of the people; (c) expresses the relationship of the people who are gathering; and, (d) is functional in that it moves people and ministers to the place where the liturgical action will be.”

<sup>8</sup> See *New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*, s.v. “Gathering Rites” (by Kenneth Hannon). He relates the Introductory Rites, including the entrance song with the “establishment of identity.”

<sup>9</sup> For more on functional processions and other forms of liturgical movement, see *New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*, s.v. “Gesture and Movement” (by Thomas A. Krosnicki).

respected.”<sup>10</sup> This assertion implies three caveats to the enactment of the entrance song. First, no one model is perfectly adequate. Second, the choice of one model over another for a particular liturgical celebration must be contextually driven. Third, even if one model is the most appropriate in a particular context, one must take care to make sure none of the intrinsic functions of the entrance song is totally eclipsed by an exclusive use of one model.

The source of the models of the entrance song put forth in this chapter are derived directly but not verbatim from ecclesiastical documents<sup>11</sup>—in particular from the GIRM (USA), which serves as the normative guide for the celebration of the liturgies of the *Missale Romanum* in the dioceses of the United States. Other important sources include the *Missale Romanum* itself, the historical data and conclusions of chapter one, the *Graduale Romanum*, *Graduale Simplex* and, because this study is concerned most immediately with liturgy in the United States, the USCCB document *Sing to the Lord: Music in Divine Worship*.<sup>12</sup> The most relevant sections of these documents were already cited in chapter two, but given their importance, they can bear repetition here:

After the people have gathered, the Entrance chant begins as the priest enters with the deacon and ministers. The purpose of this chant is to open the celebration, foster the unity of those who have been gathered, introduce their

---

<sup>10</sup> Edward Foley, “The Structure of the Mass, Its Elements and Its Parts,” in *A Commentary on the General Instruction of the Roman Missal: Developed under the Auspices of the Catholic Academy of Liturgy and Cosponsored by the Federation of Diocesan Liturgical Commissions*, ed. Edward Foley, Nathan D. Mitchell, Joanne M. Pierce (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2007), 136.

<sup>11</sup> All of the models also have historical precedent, but the use of specific historical examples in this chapter creates methodological problems. One cannot assume a particular model ever worked perfectly in a particular place and time, that one model was ever used exclusively, or that those participating in the liturgy found a particular model to be an effective means of performing the entrance song. These uncertainties make it very difficult to consider here architectural settings for worship, aesthetics, and so on.

<sup>12</sup> In all instances, references are to the current editions of the liturgical books and documents. The other documents cited in chapter two are also important, but do not explicitly put forth specific forms for the entrance song. Chapter four will take more direct account of the general principles delineated in chapter two.

thoughts to the mystery of the liturgical season or festivity, and accompany the procession of the priest and ministers (GIRM [USA] 47).<sup>13</sup>

The singing at this time is done either alternately by the choir and the people or in a similar way by the cantor and the people, or entirely by the people, or by the choir alone. In the dioceses of the United States of America there are four options for the Entrance Chant: (1) the antiphon from the *Roman Missal* or the Psalm from the *Roman Gradual* as set to music there or in another musical setting; (2) the seasonal antiphon and Psalm of the *Simple Gradual*; (3) a song from another collection of psalms and antiphons, approved by the Conference of Bishops or the diocesan Bishop, including psalms arranged in responsorial or metrical forms; (4) a suitable liturgical song similarly approved by the Conference of Bishops or the diocesan Bishop.

If there is no singing at the entrance, the antiphon in the Missal is recited either by the faithful, or by some of them, or by a lector; otherwise, it is recited by the priest himself, who may even adapt it as an introductory explanation (GIRM [USA] 48).<sup>14</sup>

The text and music of the Entrance song may be drawn from a number of sources.

a. The singing of an antiphon and psalm during the entrance procession has been a long-standing tradition in the Roman Liturgy. Antiphons and psalms may be drawn from the official liturgical books—the *Graduale Romanum*, or the *Graduale Simplex*—or from other collections of antiphons and psalms.

---

<sup>13</sup> “Populo congregato, dum ingreditur sacerdos cum diacono et ministris, cantus ad introitum incipitur. Finis huius cantus est celebrationem aperire, unionem congregatorum fovere, eorumque mentem in mysterium temporis liturgici vel festivitatis introducere atque processionem sacerdotis ministrorumque comitari.” *Institutio Generalis Missale Romanum* 47. In translation *without* the U.S. adaptations, “After the people have gathered, as the Priest enters with the Deacon and ministers, the Entrance Chant begins. The purpose of singing at this time is to open the celebration, intensify the unity of those who are gathered, lead their thoughts to the mystery of the liturgical season or festivity, and accompany the procession of the Priest and ministers.” ICEL, 2010.

<sup>14</sup> “Peragitur autem a schola et populo alternatim, vel simili modo a cantore et populo, vel totus a populo vel a schola sola. Adhiberi potest sive antiphona cum suo psalmo in Graduali romano vel in Graduali simplici exstans, sive alius cantus, actioni sacrae, diei vel temporis indoli congruus, cuius textus ad Conferentia Episcoporum sit approbatus. Si ad introitum non habetur cantus, antiphona in Missali proposita recitatur sive a fidelibus, sive ab aliquibus ex ipsis, sive a lectore, sin aliter ab ipso sacerdote, qui potest etiam in modum monitionis initialis eam aptare.” *Institutio Generalis Missale Romanum* 48. In translation *without* the U.S. adaptations, “Singing at this time is done either alternately by the choir and the people or similarly by the cantor and the people, or entirely by the people, or by the choir alone. The antiphon with its psalm from the *Graduale Romanum* or the *Graduale Simplex* may be used, or another liturgical song suited to the sacred action, the day, or the season, the text of which should be approved by the Conference of Bishops. If there is no singing at the Entrance, the antiphon in the Missal is recited either by the faithful, or by some of them, or by a lector; otherwise, it is recited by the Priest himself, who may even adapt it as an introductory instruction.” ICEL, 2010.

b. Other hymns and songs may also be sung at the Entrance, providing that they are in keeping with the purpose of the Entrance chant or song. The texts of antiphons, psalms, hymns, and songs for the Liturgy must have been approved either by the United States Conference of Catholic Bishops or by the local diocesan bishop (*Sing to the Lord* 144).

As we have said, each of this chapter's models is equally permissible, and one would choose a model in light of the practical circumstances of a particular worshipping assembly. But, all other things being equal and according to both historical precedent and ecclesiastical norms, the more a model conforms to the introit of the *Graduale Romanum* the better. This general preference does not imply a universal or unmediated return to the introit of the Middle Ages. On the one hand, it acknowledges that in certain contexts the use of an introit as the entrance song might be wholly inappropriate. On the other hand, it recognizes the importance of the introit antiphon texts to the liturgical tradition of the Roman Rite, in addition to the way that the introit (form, text, and melody), when utilized in its proper context, is especially successful at achieving the normative functions of the entrance song expressed in the GIRM. We now move to the articulation of five models of the entrance song, which include (1) the proper antiphon and verses of the *Graduale Romanum*, (2) the proper or seasonal antiphon and verses of the *Graduale Simplex*, (3) alternative musical settings of the proper antiphon and verses of models one and two, (4) musical settings of texts other than the proper antiphons and verses, and (5) the spoken proper antiphon of the *Roman Missal*.

### Model One: The Proper Antiphon and Verses of the *Graduale Romanum*

Proper antiphons from the liturgical books are to be esteemed and used especially because they are the very voice of God speaking to us in the Scriptures. The Christian faithful are to be led to an ever deeper appreciation of the psalms as the voice of Christ and the voice of his Church at prayer.<sup>15</sup>

**Example 5** The Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper in the Post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum*.<sup>16</sup>

Cf. Gal. 6, 14; Ps. 66

**N** OS au- tem \* glo-ri- á- ri o-pór- tet,  
in cru-ce Dó- mi-ni nostri Ie- su Chri- sti: in quo est  
sa-lus, vi- ta, et re- surré-cti- o no- stra: per quem  
salvá- ti, et li- be- rá- ti su- mus. *Ps.* De- us mi- se-  
re- á- tur nostri, et be- ne- dí- cat no- bis: il- lú- mi- net vul-  
tum su- um super nos, et mi- se- re- á- tur nostri. *Ant.*  
2. Ut cognoscá- mus in terra vi- am tu- am: \* in ó- mni- bus  
génti- bus sa- lu- tá- re tu- um. *Ant.*  
3. Confi- te- ántur ti- bi pó- pu- li, De- us: \* confi- te- ántur ti- bi  
pó- pu- li omnes. *Ant.*

<sup>15</sup> U.S. Conference of Catholic Bishops, *Sing to the Lord* (2008) 117. See also Second Vatican Council, Dogmatic Constitution *Dei Verbum* (1965) 21; and Paul VI, Apostolic Constitution *Laudis canticum* (1970) 8.

<sup>16</sup> *Graduale Romanum* (Tournai, Belgium: Desclée & Co., 1974). Used with permission.

### Sources, Texts, and Music

This model is nearly synonymous with the introit, which chapter one described in detail. The U.S. adaptation of the *General Instruction* provides for two variations on this model. The primary option within Model One is the Gregorian chant introit (antiphon, psalm verses, doxology<sup>17</sup>) as found in the *Graduale Romanum*. Many of the antiphons in the *Graduale Romanum* have only one accompanying psalm verse printed along with them, but liturgical history, tradition, and pastoral sense imply, however, that any number of psalm verses are to be used,<sup>18</sup> depending upon the length of the entrance procession. The antiphons for the more important feasts of the liturgical year have several assigned psalm verses. The employment of several verses is beneficial in two ways. It creates an “open” musical form, which allows for a variable musical length to match the infinitely variable length of the procession. In addition, sometimes the introit antiphon and psalm are intimately connected through the antiphon’s typological or Christological interpretation of one or more of its verses. For certain antiphons in the Gregorian corpus of introits, this interpretive connection between antiphon and psalm occurs in a verse other than the first. The openness of the form to more than one psalm verse restores the ancient connection. If the length of the entrance

---

<sup>17</sup> See *Ordo Cantus Missae* II:1. The English translation of the *Graduale Simplex* indicates that during Holy Week and the Triduum the doxology is not sung with the introit. See *Simple Gradual*, pp. 27-34.

<sup>18</sup> The verses should be used consecutively, unless another tradition of use (or custom) can be gleaned from the sources.

procession requires, the doxology may be omitted<sup>19</sup> and only one psalm verse used.<sup>20</sup> The antiphon may also be sung by itself if the procession is especially short.<sup>21</sup>

The GIRM (USA) (48) also provides for the use of the entrance “antiphon from the *Roman Missal*.” While what is meant by this option is not entirely clear, it is likely the intent was to distinguish between the use of the Latin chant and its vernacular translation, and not to provide for the use of the antiphon alone as a normative option. One should assume, in light of the clarification provided in *Sing to the Lord* 144, that the intent of the GIRM (USA) is that the antiphon of the *Roman Missal* be sung with accompanying psalm verses and doxology. One should also understand this option to imply that not only the texts, but also the *melodies* of the Gregorian chants might be adapted in vernacular editions of the *Graduale Romanum*. This is a laudable goal in that many melodies are just as ancient and feast-specific as the texts they accompany, but such adaptation is notoriously difficult.<sup>22</sup>

Model One makes good sense, but its employment is complicated by some practical details. First, there is no official vernacular translation of the post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum*. In theory, one could simply use the vernacular translation of the antiphons found in the current U.S. *Roman Missal* along with one of the translations of the Psalms approved for liturgical use, following the psalm verse assignments in the *Graduale Romanum*. But this obviates a second practical complication: while one could use the eminently singable Grail

---

<sup>19</sup> However, “When the *Gloria Patri* and *Sicut erat* have a special musical termination, this must be used with each of the other verses.” *Ordo Cantus Missae* II:1.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid.

<sup>22</sup> An adequate presentation of the issues involved requires a study in itself and will be left outside the bounds of the current study.



translation for the psalm verses,<sup>23</sup> the antiphons in the 1973 *Roman Missal* were not translated with the criterion of “singability” in mind. Third, there are antiphons in the *Roman Missal* that are not found in the *Graduale Romanum* because the two liturgical books reflect different stages in the reform of the Roman Rite. Thus, on a handful of days in the post-Conciliar liturgical year, there is no proper chant to be found in the *Graduale Romanum*.

Some solutions are available. ICEL’s 1998 translation of the *Missale Romanum* includes a complete *Antiphonal* that provides singable proper antiphons along with their psalm verse assignments. The “official” solution, however, is still forthcoming. ICEL conducted its translation of the 2002 *Missale Romanum*’s antiphons<sup>24</sup> with a careful eye to the “singability” of the texts.<sup>25</sup> In terms of psalm assignments for these antiphons, the 1998 ICEL *Antiphonal* could serve as a guide. Also, if the *Graduale Romanum* is to be a useable liturgical book for the reformed Roman Rite, the Holy See would do well to promulgate a new edition containing chants and psalm assignments for all of the antiphons in the 2002 *Missale Romanum*. This revised *Graduale* could then be translated, adapted, and adopted by Conferences of Bishops.

---

<sup>23</sup> The psalter of the current U.S. *Lectionary for Mass* (*New American Bible*) is not easily set to music; the translations were not done with the criterion of “singability” in mind. Other English-speaking Conferences of Bishops adopted the Grail Psalter as part of their Lectionaries. A revised Grail Psalter has been produced and has received the *recognitio* of the Holy See. It is possible the USCCB will adopt this translation in the future.

<sup>24</sup> At the present time, ICEL has completed its translation of the 2002 *Missale Romanum* and most of its member Conferences of Bishops have approved it. Promulgation of the translation for liturgical use is up to each Conference and contingent upon the *recognitio* of the Holy See. To date, only the *Order of Mass* has received the *recognitio* and no Conference has yet promulgated it for liturgical use.

<sup>25</sup> ICEL formed an *ad hoc* committee for the translation of the antiphons (since its reconfiguration in 2001, ICEL has no standing committees), which worked from 2005-2006. The committee included a scripture scholar, musicologist, Latinist, and composer/pastor.

## Performance

The entrance song, along with the other processional chants (offertory and communion) and the *Agnus Dei* are musical elements of the Eucharistic liturgy that accompany other rites.<sup>26</sup> When there is to be music at the entrance procession of the Mass, the GIRM (USA) provides basic directives as to who should sing it. These options include:

1. alternately by the choir and the people<sup>27</sup>
2. alternately by the cantor and the people<sup>28</sup>
3. entirely by the people
4. by the choir alone<sup>29</sup>

Given the complexity of the introit antiphon melodies, however, the use of the Latin chant from the *Graduale Romanum* would almost always require that the choir sing the entire entrance song on its own.<sup>30</sup> From the earliest times, the introit in its entirety has been the

---

<sup>26</sup> See GIRM (USA) 37b.

<sup>27</sup> “An important ministerial role of the choir...is to sing various parts of the Mass in dialogue or alternation with the congregation. Some parts of the Mass that have the character of a litany, such as the *Kyrie* and the *Agnus Dei*, are clearly intended to be sung in this manner. Other Mass parts may also be sung in dialogue or alternation, especially the *Gloria*, the Creed, and the three processional songs: the Entrance, the Preparation of the Gifts, and Communion. This approach often takes the form of a congregational refrain with verses sung by the choir.” *Sing to the Lord* 29.

<sup>28</sup> “Especially when no choir is present, the cantor may sing in alternation or dialogue with the assembly. The cantor may . . . sing the verses of the psalm or song that accompany the Entrance, Preparation of the Gifts, and Communion.” *Ibid.*, 37.

<sup>29</sup> “At times the choir performs its ministry by singing alone. Appropriate times where the choir might commonly sing alone include a prelude before Mass, the Entrance chant, the Preparation of the Gifts, during the Communion procession or after the reception of Communion, and the recessional.” *Ibid.*, 30.

<sup>30</sup> “The assembly of the faithful should participate in singing the Proper of the Mass as much as possible, especially through simple responses and other suitable settings.” Congregation of Rites, Instruction *Musicam Sacram* (1967) 33. “When the congregation does not sing an antiphon or hymn, proper chants from the *Graduale Romanum* might be sung by a choir. As an easier alternative, chants of the *Graduale Simplex* are recommended.” *Sing to the Lord* 76.

domain of the choir or *schola*.<sup>31</sup> In the liturgy of the post-Conciliar period, nonetheless, the active participation of the assembly is a central concern that has served as a guide in the reform of the rites. In light of this concern, then, the GIRM (USA) takes the middle ground—its preferred performance practice is that the entrance song be sung by the choir *and* the people, thus creating a hybrid choral/responsorial chant genre. For congregational participation of any kind within Model One, then, a vernacular *Graduale Romanum* is essential.<sup>32</sup>

### Functional Strengths and Weaknesses

Model One's greatest strength is the particularity with which it leads the thoughts of the assembly "to the mystery of the liturgical season or festivity."<sup>33</sup> Most of the introit antiphon texts in the *Graduale Romanum* are unique to only one day of the liturgical year. The antiphon texts with their psalm verses not only announce the feast or engage the assembly in the theme of a liturgical season, but in doing so, unite the worshipping assembly with prior generations of Christians in a tradition of scriptural interpretation. This model makes use of the ancient corpus of Gregorian chant antiphon texts that have been part of the Roman Rite since at least the late seventh century, along with the expanded antiphon

---

<sup>31</sup> In contrast to the responsorial psalm or *gradual*, in which the verses were traditionally sung by a soloist and the response by the assembly.

<sup>32</sup> GIRM (USA) implicitly requires the creation of such a liturgical book. The instruction prefers that the assembly take part in the entrance song and the U.S. has adapted the text to list the antiphon of the *Roman Missal* before even the antiphon/psalm of the *Graduale Romanum* in its list of options. This implies (1) a preference for a vernacular translation of the introit text over the Latin original and (2) emphasizes the fact that the *Roman Missal* provides chant assignments not present in the *Graduale Romanum*. "The sequence of these four possible patterns [of performance] in the *IGMR2002* demonstrates the centrality of the assembly's voice in this musical ritual, since the possibility of the choir singing alone is given as the last option." Foley, et al., *Commentary on the General Instruction*, 136. "By its very nature song has . . . a communal dimension. Thus, it is no wonder that singing together in church expresses so well the sacramental presence of God to his people." *Sing to the Lord* 2.

<sup>33</sup> GIRM (USA) 47.

repertoire of the *Missale Romanum*, which, though containing more repetitions of antiphons and oftentimes providing two options for a particular feast, still achieves a high degree of festal or seasonal specificity. This model is also ritually and functionally effective. The open musical form of the antiphon-psalm structure allows the length of the entrance song to match the length of the entrance procession. The original and most basic function of the introit was, after all, to accompany the entrance procession.

Another strength of this model, especially of the chants in the *Graduale Romanum*, is the text-centered nature of its melodies.<sup>34</sup> The neumatic<sup>35</sup> style of the introit antiphons and simple recitation tones used to sing the psalm verses make the text clearly comprehensible in performance. As chapter one has shown, liturgical chant was born within a logogenic musical context that emphasized comprehensibility. For most worshipping assemblies, true comprehensibility would require the use of vernacular translations of the Latin texts. At the very least, when the original Latin chants are sung, translations in worship aids<sup>36</sup> and liturgical catechesis are essential, and, indeed, implicitly required.<sup>37</sup>

The specificity of this model is also a weakness. Within one liturgical year a community would sing or hear dozens (and hundreds for those who attend sung daily Mass)

---

<sup>34</sup> “Gregorian chant draws its life from the sacred text it expresses.” *Sing to the Lord* 78.

<sup>35</sup> Neumatic chants do not employ long series of notes on a single syllable as melismatic chants do, but are more elaborate than syllabic chants, which for the most part set each syllable to only one note.

<sup>36</sup> “Whenever a choir sings in Latin, it is helpful to provide the congregation with a vernacular translation so that they are able to [understand] what the choir sings.” *Sing to the Lord* 76. This principle can also be applied to Latin texts sung by the assembly. An earlier functional parallel would be the use of bilingual “hand Missals” before the institution of the post-Conciliar vernacular liturgy.

<sup>37</sup> “The use of the vernacular is the norm in most liturgical celebrations in the dioceses of the United States.” *Ibid.*, 61. “When the Latin language poses an obstacle to singers . . . it would be more prudent to employ a vernacular language in the Liturgy.” “In promoting the use of Latin in the Liturgy, pastors should always employ that form of participation which best matches the capabilities of each congregation.” *Ibid.*, 66. See also Second Vatican Council, Constitution on the Liturgy *Sacrosanctum Concilium* (1963) 54 and *Musicam Sacram* 47.

of different entrance songs. In a parish in which stable, long-term membership is the norm, the assembly might become familiar with the texts and melodies in the span of a few years.<sup>38</sup> Parishes with less stable memberships, however, such as in university towns or political centers, would have difficulty establishing a common congregational repertoire of texts and music within Model One.<sup>39</sup>

While it is true that active participation by the assembly pertains not only to singing but also to listening, another weakness of Model One is the fact that the Latin chants are generally too difficult for congregational singing. Even if the choir always sings the entirety of the introit, it is crucial that the assembly become familiar with the corpus of texts and melodies if Model One is to be successful. If the choir always sings the introit alone, the creation of a common congregational repertoire would be less of a concern in terms of the practical details of quality performance. But the permanent and exclusive adoption of this practice might inhibit the entrance song's function of fostering "the unity of those who have gathered,"<sup>40</sup> as singing together is a useful way to foster the assembly's sense of coming together as a community of believers at the start of the liturgy.<sup>41</sup> This is not to deny that the

---

<sup>38</sup> In certain large cathedrals or basilicas, or in communities with an especially advanced music program in the Western tradition, the choir might normatively sing the entire entrance song (the chant of the *Graduale Romanum*). Indeed, in places like this, virtuosic vernacular collections of entrance chants might also be useful.

<sup>39</sup> "So that the holy people may sing with one voice, the music must be within its members' capability. Some congregations are able to learn more quickly and will desire more variety. Others will be more comfortable with a stable number of songs so that they can be at ease when they sing. Familiarity with a stable repertoire of liturgical songs rich in theological content can deepen the faith of the community through repetition and memorization." *Sing to the Lord* 27.

<sup>40</sup> GIRM (USA) 47.

<sup>41</sup> "Participation must also be external, so that internal participation can be expressed and reinforced by . . . singing. The quality of our participation in such sung praise comes less from our vocal ability than from the desire of our hearts to sing together of our love for God." *Sing to the Lord* 13. "Singing is one of the primary ways that the assembly of the faithful participates actively in the Liturgy." *Sing to the Lord* 26. For a broad

choir<sup>42</sup> is a part of the parish community<sup>43</sup> or that some degree of active participation occurs by the rest of the assembly even when the choir sings the entire entrance song.<sup>44</sup>

---

study of the issue, see John Bell, *The Singing Thing: A Case for Congregational Song* (Chicago: G.I.A. Publications, 2000).

<sup>42</sup> “The choir must not minimize the musical participation of the faithful. The congregation commonly sings unison melodies, which are more suitable for generally unrehearsed community singing. This is the primary song of the Liturgy.” *Sing to the Lord* 28.

<sup>43</sup> “Choirs comprise persons drawn from the community.” *Sing to the Lord* 28.

<sup>44</sup> “Even when listening to the various prayers and readings of the Liturgy or to the singing of the choir, the assembly continues to participate actively as they ‘unite themselves interiorly to what the ministers of choir sing, so that by listening to them they may raise their minds to God.’” *Sing to the Lord* 12, quoting *Musicam Sacram* 15.

## Model Two: The Antiphon and Verses of the *Graduale Simplex*

**Example 6** The Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper in the *Graduale Simplex*, *editio typica altera*.<sup>45</sup>

VII c

Nos autem \* glo-ri- á-ri opór-tet in cruce

Dómi-ni nostri Ie-su Christi.

### Psalmus 66

De- us mi-se-re- á-tur nostri, et benedí- cat

no- bis; \* illúminet vultum su- um super nos.

Ant. Nos autem.

Flexa: gentes, †

- 2 *Ut cognoscátur in terra via tua, \* in ómnibus géntibus salutáre tuum.* Ant. Nos autem.
- 3 *Confiteántur tibi pópuli, Deus; \* confiteántur tibi pópuli omnes.* Ant. Nos autem.
- 4 *Laténtur et exsúltent gentes, † quóniam iúdicas pópulos in æquitáte, \* et gentes in terra dírigis.* Ant. Nos autem.
- 5 *Confiteántur tibi pópuli, Deus, \* confiteántur tibi pópuli omnes.* Ant. Nos autem.
- 6 *Terra dedit fructum suum; \* benedícat nos Deus, Deus noster.* Ant. Nos autem.
- 7 *Benedícat nos Deus, \* et métuant eum omnes fines terræ.* Ant. Nos autem.

Vel ad libitum ant. ad introitum Sacerdos in ætérnum, p. 201.

<sup>45</sup> *Graduale Simplex, editio typica altera* (Vatican City: Typis Polyglottis Vaticanis, 1975). Used with permission.

**Example 7** Vernacular Chant Adaptation of the Text and Melody of the *Graduale Simplex* Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper from *By Flowing Waters* (Paul Ford, 1999).<sup>46</sup>

Galatians 6:14

VII c

We — should — glo — ry \* in the  
cross of our Lord — Je — sus Christ.

Psalm 67 (66V)

1–7 (See Performance Notes)

Y 1 *May* *God* be gra-cious to us and bless us \*  
and make his face to shine up - on us, —  
Flex: and sing for joy, † Y 4 and guide the na - tions up -  
on earth. —

- 2 *that your* way may be **knówn** upon earth, \*  
your saving power **amóng** all **nations**.
- 3 *Let the* peoples **práise** you, O God; \*  
let all the **péoples** **praise** you.
- 4 *Let the* nations be glad and sing for jòy, †  
for you judge the **péoples** with **equity** \*  
and guide the **nátions** upon **earth**.
- 5 *Let the* peoples **práise** you, O God; \*  
let all the **péoples** **praise** you.
- 6 *The earth* has **yielded** its **increase**; \*  
God, our **Gód**, has **blessed** **us**.
- 7 *May God* **contínue** to **bless** us; \*  
let all the ends of the **éarth** **revere** **him**.

<sup>46</sup> Paul Ford, *By Flowing Waters: Chant for the Liturgy. A Collection of Unaccompanied Song for Assemblies* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999), 72-73. Used with permission.



This model is the most specific in terms of source, text, and melodic stability.<sup>47</sup> The chants for Model Two are all found in the *Graduale Simplex*—basically a simplified *Graduale Romanum* that employs the principle of commons—and its official vernacular translation, the *Simple Gradual*. While being similar to Model One in nearly every way—musical form, text-centeredness of melodies, ritual functionality—Model Two overcomes most of Model One’s weaknesses. First, it would take a particular assembly much less time to become familiar with its smaller repertoire of chants. Thus, “*unionem congregatorum fovere*” could be more easily achieved. Second, the simplicity of the antiphon melodies would mean that the choir would never need to sing the *Graduale Simplex* chants without the assembly. Third, the Model provides seasonal chants for the entire liturgical year. Unlike Model One, which to be useful would require new musical settings and psalm verse assignments for those antiphons in the *Missale Romanum* that are not in the *Graduale Romanum*, the *Graduale Simplex* as a liturgical book for use at worship is useable ‘as is’ and requires no supplementary material. Because the *Graduale Simplex* took substantial freedom in its simplification and adaptation of the Gregorian melodies (though with a skilled and deliberate hand, to be sure), the melodies in vernacular editions could take similar liberties. The goal would be recognizable adaptations of the chant melodies of the *Graduale Simplex* that truly fit the nature of the vernacular language.

One of Model Two’s greatest strengths is also its greatest weakness: its use of seasonal chants. The model mutes some of the festal specificity that is possible in Model One. Many introit antiphons traditionally associated with a particular day of the liturgical

---

<sup>47</sup> There is no official musical setting of the vernacular translation of the *Graduale Simplex*.

year are not provided in the *Graduale Simplex*, in favor of a smaller, more congregationally useable collection of chants. One should not overstate this problem, however. The *Graduale Simplex* retains the ancient tradition of chant assignments for the most important days of the liturgical year (with alternative, simplified chant melodies) and can always be supplemented by the *Graduale Romanum*. Another weakness is that the simplified melodies separate text from melodies they have been associated with for centuries. It does maintain a particular text/melody relationship, however—in other words, one text, one melody.

Even though the original purpose of this collection of chants was to enable smaller parishes to participate in the Church's Gregorian chant tradition, Model Two might also be a pastorally appropriate option for large communities that wish to maintain a high degree of congregational participation in the entrance song, while at the same time using Gregorian chant.

### Model Three: Alternative Musical Settings of the Proper Antiphon and Verses

**Example 8** Metrical Strophic Hymn Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper from *Hymn Introits for the Liturgical Year* (Christoph Tietze, 2005).<sup>48</sup>

Meter: LM

Suggested Tune: Duguet

Antiphon: Then let us glory in the cross  
Of Jesus Christ, who sets us free;  
He rescues us and gives us life  
That we may sing eternally.

Verses: My God be merciful to us,  
Bless us, shine on us from above;  
Let all earth's people know your ways,  
All nations know your saving love.

Let all the nations praise you, Lord,  
Let them praise you, be glad, and sing;  
You judge with equity all lands  
And rule the nations as their king.

Let all the nations praise you, Lord,  
And may the earth yield its increase;  
Then God, our God, will bless our land  
And nations worship him in peace.

Doxology: Then praise the Father, praise the Son,  
And praise the Spirit equally,  
Who was before the light of day,  
Is now, and reigns eternally.

---

<sup>48</sup> Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 161. Reprinted from *Hymn Introits for the Liturgical Year: The Origin and Early Development of the Latin Texts* by Christoph Tietze © 2005, Archdiocese of Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications. 1-800-933-1800. [www.ltp.org](http://www.ltp.org). All rights reserved. Used with permission.

**Example 9** Metrical Refrain Hymn Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper (WAREHAM / Anthony Corvaia, 2002).<sup>49</sup>

Come, let us glo - ry in the Cross Of Je - sus

Christ, our Sav - ing Lord: Our res - sur - rec - tion,

health and life Whence we are res - cued and re - stored.

1. May God be mer - ci - ful to us, Bless us, shine  
 2. Let all the na - tions praise you, Lord, Let them praise  
 3. Let all the na - tions praise you, Lord; And may the  
 4. All glo - ry to the Fa - ther, Son And to the

on us from a - bove; Let all earth's peo - ple  
 you, be glad and sing; You judge with e - quit -  
 earth yield its in - crease; Then God, our God, will  
 Ho - ly Spi - Rit be; As from the first it

know your ways, All na - tions know your sav - ing love.  
 y bless all lands And rule the na - tions as their king.  
 bless our land And na - tions wor - ship him in peace.  
 was, is now And will be for e - ter - ni - ty.

D.C.

<sup>49</sup> Text: *Nos autem gloriari*; Psalm 66. Adapt. Anthony Corvaia, 2002. Tune: WAREHAM, LM; William Knapp, 1698-1768. Commissioned by the Basilica of the National Shrine of the Immaculate Conception, Washington, DC. Used with permission.

**Example 10** Responsorial Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper from "Newly-composed Eucharistic Entrance Antiphons (David Farr, 1986).<sup>50</sup>

HOLY THURSDAY SUPPER OF THE LORD      TONE X

WE GLORIFY IN THE CROSS OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST:

HE IS OUR SALVATION, OUR LIFE AND RESURRECTION. GAL 6:14

+      TONE X (a.)

PSALM 23

Tone X

# ANTIPHON

- a 1. The LORD is my shepherd, I shall not want;  
 b 2. he makes me lie down in green pastures.  
 c He leads me beside still waters;  
 d 3. he restores my soul.  
 c He leads me in paths of righteousness  
 d for his name's sake.

# ANTIPHON

- a 4. Even though I walk through the valley of the  
 shadow of death,  
 b I fear no evil;  
 c for thou art with me;  
 d thy rod and thy staff, they comfort me.

# ANTIPHON

- a 5. Thou preparest a table before me  
 b in the presence of my enemies;  
 c thou anointest my head with oil,  
 d my cup overflows.  
 a 6. Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me  
 b all the days of my life;  
 c and I shall dwell  
 d in the house of the LORD for ever.

<sup>50</sup> Farr, "Newly-composed Eucharistic Entrance Antiphons," 113-14.

**Example 11** Responsorial Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper from *The Simple Gradual for Sundays and Holy Days* (Clifford Howell, 1969).<sup>51</sup>

Ant: We should glo-ry in the cross of our Lord Je - sus Christ.

(All repeat Ant.) (C.H.)

ALTERNATIVE ENTRANCE SONG: as on *Corpus Christi*, No. 221.

Ant. Ps. BEV 5

GEL 40

MUR 2

(twice)

Psalm 66

1. *Semi-Choir*: O Gód, be gráicious and bléss us  
and let your fáce shed its<sup>1</sup> light upón us.  
So will your wáys be knówn<sup>1</sup> upon éarth  
and all nátions learn your<sup>1</sup> sáving hélp.  
[Gel: repeat C & D Bev: repeat A & D Mur: repeat]  
*Full Choir*: Let the péoples práise<sup>1</sup> you, O Gód;  
let áll the<sup>1</sup> péoples práise you. Ant.
2. *Semi-Choir*: Let the nátions be glád<sup>1</sup> and exúlt  
for you rúle the<sup>1</sup> wórlð with jústice.  
With fáirness you<sup>1</sup> rúle the péoples,  
you guíde the nátions on éarth.  
[as verse 1]  
*Full Choir*: Let the péoples práise<sup>1</sup> you, O Gód;  
let áll the<sup>1</sup> péoples práise you. Ant.
3. *Semi-Choir*: The éarth has yield<sup>1</sup>ed its frúit  
for Gód, our<sup>1</sup> Gód, has bléssed us.  
May Gód still gíve<sup>1</sup> us his bléssing  
till the énds of the<sup>1</sup> éarth revére him.  
[as verse 1]  
*Full Choir*: Let the péoples práise<sup>1</sup> you, O Gód;  
let áll the<sup>1</sup> péoples práise you. Ant.

There is no Doxology.

<sup>51</sup> John Ainslie, ed. *The Simple Gradual for Sundays and Holy Days* (London, Dublin & Melbourne: Geoffrey Chapman, 1969), 47. Continuum Publishing, the owner of Geoffrey Chapman, was unable to determine if they still hold the copyright for this work. The book is out of print.

**Example 12** Responsorial Setting of a Vernacular Translation of the Introit *Nos autem gloriari* for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper from *Psallite: Sacred Song for Liturgy and Life* (Collegeville Composers Group, 2008).<sup>52</sup>

**Antiphon** ♩ = 88

Our glo - ry and pride is the cross of Je - sus Christ; re -  
deemed by him, we have life, raised from the dead.

**Verses** *Psalm 67*

1. O God, be gracious and bless us and let your face shed its light upon us.  
2. Let the nations be glad and ex - ult for you rule the world with justice.  
3. The earth has yielded its fruit for God, our God, has blessed us.

1. So will your ways be known up - on earth and all nations learn your sav - ing help.  
2. With fairness you rule the peoples, you guide the nations on earth.  
3. May God still give us blessing till the ends of the earth stand in awe.

1.-3. Let the peoples praise you, O God; let all the peo - ples praise you.

<sup>52</sup> Collegeville Composers Group, *Psallite: Sacred Song for Liturgy and Life* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008), 178. Used with permission.

### Sources, Texts, and Music

What Model Three suggests is the use of new musical settings of the vernacular translation of the Proper antiphons and psalm verses of the *Graduale Romanum* and/or *Graduale Simplex*.<sup>53</sup> Such musical settings can be in any musical style, as the examples above show, but, in contrast to vernacular settings in Models One and Two, are not concerned with maintaining melodic characteristics of particular Gregorian chants or with maintaining a “Gregorian style”—for example, using typical Gregorian intervals and modes. Several composers have completed such settings for the entire liturgical year.<sup>54</sup> Some collections provide metrical settings of the antiphon along with reciting tones for the psalm verses (Ainslie, Farr, Collegeville Composers Group). Others offer metrical hymn settings of the antiphon and psalm verses (Tietze, Corvaia). Lastly, it is within Model Three that polyphonic settings of the proper antiphons and psalms find their place (see chapter one and Appendix B of this study for several examples).

### Performance

Vernacular settings are inherently more suited to congregational singing, except in those rare places where the entire congregation is familiar with Latin—for example, at some seminaries or gatherings of bishops, clergy, liturgical chant scholars, and so on. Given the variety of musical forms Model Three permits, performance of the entrance song could be entirely by the congregation, by the congregation in alternation with the cantor or choir, or by

---

<sup>53</sup> “Composers seeking to create vernacular translations of the appointed [entrance and communion] antiphons and psalms may...draw from [the antiphons in the *Missale Romanum* and] the *Graduale Romanum*, either in their entirety or in shortened refrains for the congregation or choir.” *Sing to the Lord* 77

<sup>54</sup> In addition to the examples above, see Columba Kelly, *Entrance and Communion Antiphons for Sundays and Feasts* (Portland, OR: Oregon Catholic Press, 2008); and Leo Nestor, *Plain-song New* (unpublished collection created for the Choir of the Basilica of the National Shrine of the Immaculate Conception, Washington, DC).



the choir alone. Model One, on the other hand, would generally not allow for a congregation-alone performance of the entrance song.

### Functional Strengths and Weaknesses

Model Three is the only one of these five models that has the potential to achieve all four of the functions of the entrance song as articulated in the GIRM (USA) without qualification or limitation.<sup>55</sup> Like Model One, it achieves a high degree of festal specificity. Its source texts are the Proper antiphons and psalms of the *Roman Missal* and *Graduale Romanum*. Like Model Two it facilitates congregational singing and fosters a sense of unity among the gathered assembly.<sup>56</sup> Like Models One and Two, this model can be an effective means of opening the celebration and, if an open musical form is utilized, it can successfully adapt to the variable length of the entrance procession.

Model Three can also utilize the antiphons and psalm verses of the *Graduale Simplex*. The pastoral motivation here would be to create a smaller, seasonal, common repertoire of music for the entrance song in a particular worshipping community. Such a pastoral need could be met more effectively by Model Four below, however. The complexity of the Gregorian melodies of the *Graduale Romanum* are no longer a stumbling block, so there is no need to eclipse the festal specificity of the *Graduale Romanum* in order to facilitate congregational participation. Imitation of the Latin melodies is also no longer a concern, so Model Three can oftentimes achieve a more natural melodic contour and stress pattern for the

---

<sup>55</sup> See GIRM (USA) 47.

<sup>56</sup> This is especially true of Model Three in that *any* musical style is permissible. For many Roman Rite Catholics throughout the world, the Gregorian musical style would be completely foreign and their own native musical styles would more effectively foster a sense of unity and common musical heritage. The model also encourages local musical creativity.

vernacular language. One weakness of this model is that it eclipses the melodic tradition of the Latin chants. The association of a particular melody with a particular text can help the assembly learn and become familiar with a large number of texts. The infinite melodic variability of Model Three diminishes the utility of melody as a mnemonic device.

### Model Four: Musical Settings of Texts other than the Proper Antiphons and Verses.

**Example 13** Metrical Refrain Hymn “Lift High the Cross” for Use as the Entrance Song at the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper (CRUCIFER, Nicholson / Kitchin, Newbolt, 1916).<sup>57</sup>

Lift high the cross, the love of Christ pro-claim till  
all the world a-dore his sa-cred name.

1. Come, Chris-tians, fol-low where the Mas-ter trod, our  
2. Led on their way by this tri-um-phant sign, the  
3. Each new-born fol-l'wer of the Cru-ci-fied bears  
4. O Lord, once lift-ed on the glo-rious tree, your  
5. So shall our song of tri-umph ev-er be: praise

D.C.

King vic-to-rious, Christ, the Son of God.  
hosts of God in con-que-ning ranks com-bine.  
on the brow the seal of him who died.  
death has bought us life e-ter-nal-ly.  
to the Cru-ci-fied for vic-to-ry!

<sup>57</sup> Text: 1 Corinthians 1:18; George W. Kitchin, 1827-1912, and Michael R. Newbolt, 1874-1956, alt. Tune: CRUCIFER, 10 10 with refrain: Sydney H. Nicholson, 1875-1947. Hope Publishing Co., 1978. © *Hymns Ancient and Modern*. Used with permission.

**Example 14** Metrical Strophic Hymn “In the Cross of Christ I Glory” for Use as the Entrance Song at the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper (RATHBUN, Conkey / Browning, 1849).<sup>58</sup>

John Bowring Ithamar Conkey

1. In the cross of Christ I glo - ry,  
 2. When the woes of life o'er - take me,  
 3. When the sun of bliss is beam - ing  
 4. Bane and bless - ing, pain and plea - sure,

Tow'r - ing o'er the wrecks of time;  
 Hopes de - ceive and fears an - noy;  
 Light and love up - on my way;  
 By the cross are sanc - ti - fied;

All the light of sa - cred sto - ry  
 Nev - er shall the cross for - sake me,  
 From the cross the ra - diance stream - ing  
 Peace is there that knows no mea - sure,

Gath - ers round its head sub - lime.  
 Lo! it glows with peace and joy.  
 Adds more lus - ter to the day.  
 Joys that thro' all time a - bide.

<sup>58</sup> Text: John Browning. Tune: Ithamar Conkey RATHBUN, 1849. Public Domain.

### Sources, Texts, and Music

This Model is currently the one most often employed in parishes across the United States.

In the years immediately following the liturgical reforms of the Second Vatican Council, especially because of the introduction of vernacular language, composers and publishers worked to provide a new repertoire of music for indigenous language(s). In subsequent decades, this effort has matured, and a body of worthy vernacular music continues to develop. . . . Today, as they continue to serve the Church at prayer, composers are encouraged to concentrate on craftsmanship and artistic excellence in all musical genres.<sup>59</sup>

In accord with an uninterrupted history of nearly five centuries, nothing prevents the use of some congregational hymns coming from other Christian traditions, provided that their texts are in conformity with Catholic teaching and they are appropriate to the Catholic Liturgy.<sup>60</sup>

Neither the GIRM (USA) nor *Sing to the Lord* requires that melodies be approved by the Conference of Bishops or diocesan bishop, only texts. The GIRM (USA) provides no specific criteria for the selection of such a “suitable song,” other than that the song must be from an “approved” collection and perform the functions of the entrance song (GIRM [USA] 47). *Sing to the Lord* provides three “judgments” that help to answer the question, “Is this particular piece of music appropriate for this use in the particular Liturgy?”<sup>61</sup>

- Liturgical: “Is this composition capable of meeting the structural and textual requirements set forth by the liturgical books for this particular rite?”<sup>62</sup>
- Pastoral: “Does a musical composition promote the sanctification of the members of the liturgical assembly by drawing them closer to the holy mysteries being

---

<sup>59</sup> *Sing to the Lord* 84.

<sup>60</sup> Ibid., 115d.

<sup>61</sup> Ibid., 126.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid., 127.

celebrated? Does it strengthen their formation in faith by opening their hearts to the mystery being celebrated on this occasion or in this season? Is it capable of expressing the faith that God has planted in their hearts and summoned them to celebrate?”<sup>63</sup>

- Musical: “Is this composition technically, aesthetically, and expressively worthy?”<sup>64</sup>

In the end, it is up to the local community to weigh the criteria and choose the most appropriate song.

The principle that texts and songs to be used in the liturgy need to meet with episcopal approval<sup>65</sup> is not new to ecclesiastical legislation.<sup>66</sup> Another recent articulation of the principle is found in *Liturgiam authenticam* 108:<sup>67</sup>

Sung texts and liturgical hymns have a particular importance and efficacy. Especially on Sunday, the ‘Day of the Lord,’ the singing of the faithful gathered for the celebration of Holy Mass, no less than the prayers, the readings and the homily, express in an authentic way the message of the Liturgy while fostering a sense of common faith and communion in charity. If they are used widely by the faithful, they should remain relatively fixed so that confusion among the people may be avoided. Within five years from the publication of this Instruction, the Conferences of Bishops, necessarily in collaboration with the national and diocesan Commissions and with other experts, shall provide for the publication of a directory or repertory of texts intended for liturgical singing. This document shall be transmitted for the

---

<sup>63</sup> Ibid., 130.

<sup>64</sup> Ibid., 134.

<sup>65</sup> See GIRM (USA) 48.

<sup>66</sup> See Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction *Constitutione Apostolica*, on the gradual carrying out of the Apostolic Constitution *Missale Romanum* (3 April 1969), 20 October 1969, no. 12; DOL 209; Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction *Liturgiae instaurationes* (1970) 3; Congregation for Bishops, Directory *Ecclesiae imago* (1973) 90d.

<sup>67</sup> Fifth Instruction on the implementation of the Constitution on the Liturgy, on the vernacular translation of the liturgical books of the Roman Rite, Congregation for Divine Worship and the Discipline of the Sacraments, 28 March 2001. For a discussion and critique of *Liturgiam authenticam* from a liturgical music perspective, see Bob Hurd, “*Liturgiam Authenticam* (2001),” in *Song of the Assembly*, 75-77.

necessary *recognitio* to the Congregation for Divine Worship and the Discipline of the Sacraments.<sup>68</sup>

This directive follows the heading “*De novis textibus liturgicis in lingua vulgari conficiendis*,” so does not intend that the proper entrance antiphons and psalm verses, whether in the vernacular or Latin, would be included in such a directory. Such texts are already found in the official liturgical books. Because it is the text that requires approval and not the musical setting, vernacular settings of the proper antiphons and psalms do not require episcopal approbation.

This renewed call for bishops to guide the faithful in the selection of vernacular liturgical songs follows logically upon principles put forth in the fourth Instruction on the implementation of the Constitution on the Liturgy *Varietates legitimae*, the focus of which was liturgical inculturation. It is the responsibility of the Episcopal Conference to regulate the introduction of elements to the liturgical celebration not found in the official liturgical books.<sup>69</sup> Indeed, Model Four is in itself a type of liturgical inculturation. In terms of melody, musical style, or musical form, this Instruction defines no intrinsic limits on the types of

---

<sup>68</sup> Trans. USCCB, 2001. Cantus et hymni liturgici peculiaris momenti et efficacitatis sunt. Praesertim dominica, «die Domini», cantus populi fidelis ad celebrationem sacrae Missae congregati, non minus quam orationibus, lectionibus et homilia, ratione authentica nuntium afferant Liturgiae, dum sensum communis fidei et communionis in caritate foveant. Si a populo fideli diffusius adhibentur, satis sint stabiles, ita ut confusio in populo vitetur. Intra quinquennium ab aditione huius Instructionis computandos, Conferentiae Episcoporum, necessarium operam conferentibus Commissionibus nationalibus aut dioecesanis ad quas pertinet, aliisque peritis, edendum curent directorium seu repertorium textuum cantui liturgico destinatum. Eiusmodi repertorium transmittatur, necessariae recognitionis causa, ad Congregationem de Cultu Divino et Disciplina Sacramentorum.

<sup>69</sup> See *Varietates legitimae* 31-32.

music that can be used in the liturgy.<sup>70</sup> Still, *Varietates legitimæ* prefers Models One, Two and Three.<sup>71</sup>

It is clear in *Sing to the Lord* that when the document speaks of settings of texts not found in the liturgical books, it is referring mainly to strophic hymns.<sup>72</sup> Though other forms are certainly permitted and encouraged,<sup>73</sup> the fact remains that hymns have in practice been the most common substitutes for the proper antiphons and psalms of the Mass. In many local worshipping communities, hymns have become the norm for the processions of the Mass. The repertoire is vast and includes hymns from both Roman Catholic and non-Catholic traditions.<sup>74</sup>

### Performance

Advocates of the antiphon/psalm form typically cite its variable length as a characteristic that makes the form especially suitable for accompanying liturgical

---

<sup>70</sup> See *ibid.*, 40.

<sup>71</sup> Singing the liturgical text itself is preferred. Other songs should “grow organically from forms already existing.” *Ibid.*, 40, 46, trans. USCCB. The incorporation of new texts and musical forms into the liturgy should be seen on the whole as positive progress in the reform and renewal of the liturgy. Chupungco observes that “by and large modern liturgical renewal is conditioned by historical data, and the program of adaptation can be realized only in the light of historical development of liturgical forms. This means in effect that progress in the liturgy has to recognize the process of evolution, whereby original forms are elaborated and brought to fuller perfection in the course of history. Obviously not every detail of evolution has been felicitous or praiseworthy.” Anscar J. Chupungco, “Greco-Roman Culture and Liturgical Adaptation,” *Notitiae* 15 (1979): 202. See also *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 21 on removing accretions out of harmony with the liturgy.

<sup>72</sup> “At Mass, in addition to the *Gloria* and a small number of strophic hymns in the *Roman Missal* and *Graduale Romanum* [none of these at the Entrance], congregational hymns of a particular nation or group that have been judged appropriate by the competent authorities mentioned in GIRM, nos. 48, 74, and 87, may be admitted to the Sacred Liturgy. Church legislation today permits as an option the use of vernacular hymns at the Entrance, Preparation of the Gifts, Communion, and Recessional.” *Sing to the Lord* 115d.

<sup>73</sup> “Sufficiency of artistic expression, however, is not the same as musical style, for ‘the Church has not adopted any particular style of art as her own. She has admitted styles from every period, in keeping with the natural characteristics and conditions of peoples and the needs of the various rites.’ Thus, in recent times, the Church has consistently recognized and freely welcomed the use of various styles of music as an aid to liturgical worship.” *Ibid.*, 136. See also *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 123.

<sup>74</sup> “In accord with an uninterrupted history of nearly five centuries, nothing prevents the use of some congregational hymns coming from other Christian traditions, provided that their texts are in conformity with Catholic teaching and they are appropriate to the Catholic liturgy.” *Sing to the Lord* 115d.



processions. This is indeed true. This advocacy, however, is often within the context of a critique of the use of hymns in the Roman Rite Mass. Closed forms like the hymn cannot vary in length along with the infinitely variable length of liturgical processions. If one is to do justice to their integral poetic form, hymn texts should be performed in their entirety. Practically speaking, this often results in either the truncation of the poetic text or the arrest of the ritual progression of the Introductory Rites in order to complete the hymn, even if it is longer than the entrance procession.<sup>75</sup>

On the other hand, one can assert that the psalm is also a closed poetic form that should be sung in its entirety and that singing only a handful of verses violates this form. This is an important point that deserves further study and reflection. In the *Liturgy of the Hours* we note, for example, that psalms are generally chanted beginning to end.

While the psalms form the heart of the Office,<sup>76</sup> at the entrance and communion processions of the Mass psalms are used in a different way. Here the antiphons are most important and, because they are sung in alternation with the verses,<sup>77</sup> comprise a larger part of the entrance song. One of the purposes of the verses is to amplify the antiphon's themes and to allow the assembly to meditate upon them. Furthermore, it is part of the ancient tradition and still part of the current liturgical norms<sup>78</sup> that the verses of an entrance song need not begin with the first verse of a psalm and that verses can even be taken out of order

---

<sup>75</sup> A similar problem characterized the truncated, single psalm verse introit form, in that it might be too short to accompany the entire entrance procession.

<sup>76</sup> "In the liturgy of the hours the Church in large measure prays through the magnificent songs that the Old Testament authors composed under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit." *General Instruction of the Liturgy of the Hours* 100; DOL 426.

<sup>77</sup> See *Ordo Cantus Missae* II:1.

<sup>78</sup> See Introduction to the *Graduale Simplex* 15.

or skipped all together—a type of large-scale centonization. The acceptability and integrity of such use relies upon the ancient tradition of performance and of liturgy’s use of scripture more so than upon any study of poetic form. In terms of the strophic hymn, there is no such tradition of free rearrangement and/or elimination of verses.

This is not to deny, to be sure, that scripture scholars today might rightly balk at such free adaptation of the psalms and their poetic structure. As David Power suggests, “Exegetically, some of this accommodated use causes embarrassment. . . . Christian congregations need to be careful not to reduce readings about Israel to Christian and sacramental symbolism.”<sup>79</sup> He also reminds us, however, that “what needs to be remembered is that it is their quality as poetry which makes the psalms so adaptable. their expression of emotion and their rich imagery fit quite a diversity of situations, as will be found indeed with poems that written in one set of circumstances readily fit into others.”<sup>80</sup>

#### Functional Strengths and Weaknesses

The weakness of this Model is two-fold. First, when the song is a strophic metrical hymn, it has a closed musical form. There is no real solution to this problem, other than to play instrumental interludes between the verses to lengthen it or to select especially short or long hymn texts depending on the details of a particular liturgical celebration. Second, Model Four has the capacity to eclipse completely the proper chant tradition of the Roman Rite in favor of new texts or texts from other traditions.

---

<sup>79</sup> David N. Power, *“The Word of the Lord”: Liturgy’s Use of Scripture* (Maryknoll, NY: Orbis, 2001), 60, 62.

<sup>80</sup> *Ibid.*, 60.

The strengths of this model, however, greatly outweigh its weaknesses. Good vernacular texts set to music are extremely memorable. Model Four would thus be very effective in creating a common repertoire and fostering a sense of unity among the assembly at the start of the Mass. Finally, such songs can effectively announce the feast or season. The means by which Model Four songs achieve this entrance song function is admittedly different than how it is achieved by the antiphon / psalms of Models One, Two, and Three. Similar to tropes, sequences, and Latin liturgical hymns, newly composed vernacular songs add a fresh “didactic, theological,” and “poetic”<sup>81</sup> (while still orthodox) perspective to the celebration to the liturgy.<sup>82</sup> Such songs, carefully chosen, can be effective sources of festal specificity and can provide fresh interpretations of the liturgical-theological tradition,<sup>83</sup> while at the same time providing opportunities for local creativity and inculturation within the fixed ritual structure of the Mass. Within this local creativity, vernacular entrance songs can be even more particular and specific than the proper antiphons and verses in that they can add elements of local interpretation and insight.<sup>84</sup>

---

<sup>81</sup> Hiley, *Western Plainchant*, 196.

<sup>82</sup> “It is not enough that cultural elements [incorporated into the liturgy through inculturation] be free of error; they should also have the connaturality to be integrated with the liturgical mystery.” Chupungco, “Greco-Roman Culture,” 217.

<sup>83</sup> This is especially so when hymns or other vernacular songs are written with a particular feast or seasonal theme in mind. Ideally, these songs might even be loosely based upon the proper antiphon texts.

<sup>84</sup> Hymns can also function as liturgical “propers.” “They allow an appropriate emphasis to be made according to the season or the occasion. They do this within the overall context which the creeds, like the fixed texts and the stable ritual scheme, continue to recall.” Geoffrey Wainwright, *Doxology: The Praise of God in Worship, Doctrine and Life. A Systematic Theology* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1980), 215.

## Model Five: The Spoken Proper Antiphon of the *Roman Missal*

### Source and Text

The GIRM (USA) provides that the presider can recite the entrance antiphon of the *Roman Missal* if there is no singing during the entrance procession.<sup>85</sup> The antiphon texts in the *Roman Missal* are in place there primarily for this purpose,<sup>86</sup> even though the antiphon may be sung by itself when necessary.<sup>87</sup>

### Performance

In certain situations, it might be necessary or preferable that there be no music at the beginning of Mass, and that the *Roman Missal* antiphon be recited.<sup>88</sup> Certainly, Masses said by the priest with only one other minister present are normally (but not normatively) celebrated without music, and there are several other situations in which this model might be appropriate:

1. A Mass at which no cantor or organist or other musical leader can be present.

In this circumstance, silence at the entrance might be appropriate if the

---

<sup>85</sup> “If there is no singing at the entrance, the antiphon in the Missal is recited either by the faithful, or by some of them, or by a lector; otherwise, it is recited by the priest himself, who may even adapt it as an introductory explanation.” GIRM (USA) 48. “Only in the absence of song is the entrance antiphon used as a spoken or recited text. Since these antiphons are too abrupt for communal recitation, it is preferable when there is no singing that the priest, the deacon, or another minister adapt the antiphon and incorporate it in the introduction to the Mass of the day.” USCCB, foreword to *The Sacramentary* (1985).

<sup>86</sup> Paul VI explains that “the text of the *Graduale Romanum* has not been changed as far as the music is concerned. In the interest of their being more readily understood, however, the responsorial psalm . . . as well as the entrance and communion antiphons has been revised for use in Masses that are not sung.” Paul VI, Apostolic Constitution *Missale Romanum*. Speaking of the work of Group 14, which was assembled during the Second Vatican Council to study forms of singing within the Mass, Bugnini relates that “The entrance and communion antiphons of the Missal were intended to be recited, not sung, and to inspire the creation of suitable songs in the vernacular.” Bugnini, *Reform of the Liturgy*, 891.

<sup>87</sup> “. . . vel etiam sola antiphona, nullo addito versu.” *Ordo Cantus Missae* II:1.

<sup>88</sup> *Musicam Sacram* 7 recognizes that in some circumstances there will be no singing at a liturgical celebration. Furthermore, “Singing by the gathered assembly and ministers is important at all celebration. Not every part that can be sung should necessarily be sung at every celebration.” *Sing to the Lord* 115.

assembly has no shared musical repertoire or would be unable to sing without musical accompaniment or leadership from a cantor.

2. A Mass at which there are no music books or worship aids available.
3. A Mass at which there is no entrance procession (for example, in worship space with no processional route or when the Liturgy of the Hours is combined with Mass).

No matter the circumstance, however, if those participating in the liturgy desire to sing, it is never inappropriate to begin in song, for “singing is the sign of the heart’s joy.”<sup>89</sup> Singing at the beginning of the liturgy might still be desirable, for example, for the purposes of opening the celebration, fostering unity, and announcing the feast even if there can be no entrance procession, so that the liturgy might begin in a more joyous manner than could be achieved by a simple recitation of the *Roman Missal* antiphon. Indeed, music “make[s] the liturgical [texts] of the Christian community more alive and fervent so that everyone can praise and beseech the Triune God more powerfully, more intently and more effectively.”<sup>90</sup>

#### Functional Strengths and Weaknesses

Model Five is a model for exceptional circumstances. In terms of the functions intrinsic to the entrance song, it achieves only one: the introduction of the assembly’s “thoughts to the mystery of the liturgical season or festival.”<sup>91</sup> To be sure, then, a recited antiphon from the *Missale Romanum* is better than the omission of this part of the Mass entirely. It is important to remember, however, that “psalms are poems that are meant,

---

<sup>89</sup> See Acts 2:46 and GIRM (USA) 39.

<sup>90</sup> *Musicae Sacrae Disciplina* 31. See also *Sing to the Lord* 5.

<sup>91</sup> GIRM (USA) 47.

whenever possible, to be sung.”<sup>92</sup> The proper antiphons facilitate this musical proclamation of the Psalter, and in themselves are also inherently musical texts.

## Conclusion

The Church awaits an ever richer song of her entire gathered people. “The faith of countless believers has been nourished by melodies flowing from the hearts of other believers. In song, faith is experienced as vibrant joy, love, and confident expectation of the saving intervention of God.”<sup>93</sup>

Each of the five models serves to describe one way of enacting the entrance song at Mass. They generalize, of course, and cannot account for every possibility, which can only be thoughtfully and carefully dealt with in local parish communities.

In a broad sense, the models show forth the need for the creation or compilation of a vernacular *Roman Gradual*.<sup>94</sup> All of the models, taken together (with the exception of Model Five) would comprise this liturgical musical resource. Again, a truly useable collection of this sort would require the assignment of psalm verses to all of the antiphons in the *Roman Missal*, and that the Missal’s antiphons be singable translations of the Latin.<sup>95</sup> The proper chant tradition would be enriched by quality songs of the type described by Model Four. The liturgical translation of the Psalter, furthermore, must be a translation that facilitates public proclamation and singing.<sup>96</sup> The list of approved texts from the Conference of Bishops would

---

<sup>92</sup> *Sing to the Lord* 15b. See also, GIRM (USA) 102.

<sup>93</sup> *Sing to the Lord* 85, quoting John Paul II, *Letter to Artists* (1999) 12.

<sup>94</sup> See Jo Hermans, “The Directory of Liturgical Songs in the Vernacular: Background and Liturgical Criteria” *Antiphon* 11:1 (2007): 64.

<sup>95</sup> The translation of the sung texts of the Latin typical editions must be “understandable by participants, suitable for proclamation and singing . . . and the relationship between the text and the liturgical action” must be taken into account by the translators. *Varietates legitimæ* 53.

<sup>96</sup> The translation need not be slavishly musical, but rather “poetic” in a general sense, as is the original Hebrew text. Whatever the final result, both the translation of the Psalter used for the responsorial psalm and for the processional chants should be the same.

help this “Vernacular Gradual” to become a reality—an invaluable liturgical resource, to be sure.

## Chapter Four

### Toward a Theology of the Entrance Song at Eucharist

#### Introduction

#### Foundations for a Theology

The articulation of a theology rightly comes after the contextual studies of chapters one and two and the models of chapter three.<sup>1</sup> The goal of this chapter is to discover within these contexts and models an emerging theology of the entrance song at Eucharist. In a broad sense, how does the entrance song *function* within the Roman Rite and what is its *purpose*? In a more specific sense, what does or should a text and melody of a particular entrance song *express* theologically? The historical and legislative contexts form the foundation for theological reflection, while the articulation of a theology must take place in dialogue with the models of the entrance song so as to be connected to actual liturgical praxis.<sup>2</sup>

Any theology of the entrance song that seeks to be relevant must in its formulation take into account practical issues regarding its ritual enactment in particular worshipping

---

<sup>1</sup> Jeffery says, “Theologically one might say that eternal truths become incarnated in historical texts. But from a historical perspective, liturgies develop in the opposite order: action is primary, then text, then theology. Human beings do not begin with timeless principles, then formulate texts, and finally add ceremonies . . . Historically speaking, theology comes last. The systematizers and commentators and reformers appear on the scene after the actions and texts are already in place, once the need is beginning to be felt for interpretation or improvement.” Jeffery, “Meanings and Functions of *Kyrie Eleison*,” 141-42. See also Ronald Grimes, “Victor Turner’s Definition, Theory and Sense of Ritual,” in *Victor Turner and the Construction of Cultural Criticism: Between Literature and Anthropology*, ed. Kathleen M. Ashley (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1990), 141-42.

<sup>2</sup> Here, a consideration of “actual liturgical praxis” means a consideration of precisely defined models that will be enacted in actual worshipping communities. The methodology of this study does not allow direct access to the communal and individual experience of the enacted liturgy. Participant-observer studies, reader-response criticism, and ethnography, for example, would be more able—but not without limitations—to directly access liturgical experience and systematically articulate its meaning. See, for example, McGann, *A Precious Fountain*; and McGann, *Exploring Music as Worship and Theology*. She states, “As yet . . . little has been done to develop methods for studying music within a community’s worship performance, and for assessing how a community’s musical performance affects the entire continuum of liturgical action, shaping and expressing an embodied theology. This essay addresses that challenge.” *Exploring Music as Worship and Theology*, 10-11.



communities, or “specific motivating problems.”<sup>3</sup> The “problem” from the perspective of this study is the question as to what Roman Catholics should sing at the beginning of Mass. This general problem encompasses a number of more specific problems:

- What are the most appropriate musical forms for the entrance song at Mass in view of the song’s function?
- What kind of regulation of the entrance song would be most pastorally appropriate in light of *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 48, and what liturgical resources might facilitate a more integral enactment of the entrance song?
- How should the proper chant tradition of the *Graduale Romanum* and *Missale Romanum* in general, as well as the texts of particular introit antiphons and verses, influence the present day entrance song in terms of musical form, text, enactment, and theology? In other words, is it possible to restore the important theological “residue of meaning”<sup>4</sup> of the introit to the celebration of the Mass?

To be sure, our argument for the importance of the theology of the introit tradition does not favor one particular model of the entrance song over another.<sup>5</sup> The point is that the introit antiphons and their accompanying verses comprise an ancient and official part of the liturgical tradition, and, therefore, should influence present-day liturgical praxis. Likewise, a “theology of the entrance song” is not synonymous with a theology of the introit. For, as has

---

<sup>3</sup> McGann, *Exploring Music as Worship and Theology*, 10-11.

<sup>4</sup> Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 17. See also Joyce Anne Zimmerman, *Liturgy as Language of Faith: A Liturgical Methodology in the Mode of Paul Ricoeur’s Textual Hermeneutics* (Lanham / New York / London: University Press of America, 1988), 48-49; and Paul Ricoeur, *Interpretation Theory: Discourse and the Surplus of Meaning* (Fort Worth: Texas Christian University Press, 1976), 25-29.

<sup>5</sup> Chupungco reminds us that “the Church’s attitude towards culture is not governed by an a-priori principle in favor or against any particular cultural form.” This also applies to musical forms, which are inherently culturally specific. Chupungco, “Greco-Roman Culture and Liturgical Adaptation,” 218.

been explained above, the broader “entrance song tradition,” past and present, encompasses a variety of musical forms and models. Nevertheless, the introit, if not encompassing the entire entrance song tradition, does form the heart of this tradition in the Roman Rite.

The previous chapters of this study have shown that the official chants from the *Graduale Romanum*, *Graduale Simplex*, and *Missale Romanum* function together as an archetypal entrance song. This fact implies that not only the characteristics of the introit chants in general<sup>6</sup> should be embodied somehow in the entrance songs used at Mass today, but also the theological themes and scriptural allusions of particular introit texts, and perhaps even particular introit melodies. How this theology is articulated in practice is left to the inexhaustible depths of human creativity, within the bounds of liturgical history and tradition, ecclesiastical law, ritual and pastoral effectiveness, and culture-specific judgments of quality.<sup>7</sup>

#### Methodological Perspectives on the Theology of Liturgical Music

The progression of this study as a whole follows the synthetic method outlined in the introduction in which one explores the “contextual” layer (here, the history of the entrance song and its place in ecclesiastical documents) and the “functional” layer (here, the models of

---

<sup>6</sup> These characteristics include musical form, relationship of text and music, festal/seasonal specificity, openness to elaboration and local creativity, appropriateness to the human voice, etc., and enable the introit to function effectively as an entrance song. See Anthony Ruff, “The Music ‘Specially Suited to the Roman Liturgy’: On the One Hand . . .” *Pastoral Music* 32:5 (June-July 2008): 15-16. One might note that the functions of the entrance song as articulated in current ecclesiastical legislation are likely based on the characteristics of the introit, rather than vice versa. But, since this study restricts itself to official liturgical texts and ritual forms, this distinction is not methodologically significant.

<sup>7</sup> J. H. Kwabena Nketia offers some useful insights in regard to how different musical forms are appropriate for different cultural groups and should influence inculturated entrance song forms. He states, “People’s approach to the nexus relationship between music and ritual is determined by their belief system, the forms of musical expression and communication they cultivate, the meanings they assign to specific sounds and movements and the modes of interaction they establish in ritual and worship.” J. H. Kwabena Nketia, “Musical Interaction in Ritual Events,” 123.

the entrance song), and then, by means of a “creative dialectic,” the “spiritual” or “abstract” layer, which, for our purposes, is the theology of the entrance song. It is through the interaction of context and function that theological themes emerge, along with basic conclusions about “pastoral solutions”<sup>8</sup> to our motivating problems.

There are many approaches to understanding the theology of liturgical music, methodologically speaking.<sup>9</sup> Mark David Parsons has delineated three such approaches that prevail among liturgical-musical theologians today. The first is a text-centered approach in which “the text has primary significance and music becomes . . . a channel through which a text is transmitted. . . . Music in worship can *assist* the communication event . . . but fundamentally the process is carried by the words associated with the music.”<sup>10</sup> In this model “texted musical forms are primary,” “musical expression is not integral to worship” (even if desirable), and “music enables a congregational response” by preparing the assembly to receive Word and Sacrament and then acting as a vehicle through which they can voice their praise.<sup>11</sup> The second approach focuses on music *qua* music. The idea is “that music has

---

<sup>8</sup> See Figure 1 of this study.

<sup>9</sup> Significant works on the theology of music include, among others, Jeremy Begbie, *Theology, Music and Time* (Cambridge University Press, 2000); Teresa Berger, *Theology in Hymns? A Study in the Relationship of Doxology and Theology According to A Collection of Hymns for the Use of the People Called Methodists (1780)*, trans. Timothy E. Kimbrough (Nashville: Kingswood Books, 1995); Albert Blackwell, *The Sacred in Music* (Louisville: Westminster / John Knox Press, 1999); Lucien Deiss, *Visions of Liturgy and Music for a New Century* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996); Q. Faulkner, *Wiser Than Despair*; Kathleen Harmon, *The Mystery We Celebrate, the Song We Sing: A Theology of Liturgical Music* (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008); Erik Routley, *Words, Music and the Church* (Nashville: Abingdon Press, 1968); Don E. Saliers, *Music and Theology* (Nashville: Abingdon Press, 2007); Victoria Sirota, “An Exploration of Music as Theology,” *The Arts in Religious and Theological Studies* 5 (Summer 1993): 24-28; Karen B. Westerfield Tucker, “Music as a Language of Faith,” *Ecclesia Orans* 23 (2006): 81-98; Brian Wren, *Praying Twice: The Music and Words of Congregational Song* (Louisville: Westminster / John Knox Press, 2000).

<sup>10</sup> Parsons, “Text, Tone, and Context: A Methodological Prolegomenon for a Theology of Liturgical Song,” 57.

<sup>11</sup> *Ibid.*, 58. See also Erik Routley, *Hymns Today and Tomorrow* (Nashville: Abingdon Press, 1964), 18-21; and Routley, *The Divine Formula: A Book for Worshipers, Preachers and Musicians and All Who Celebrate the Mysteries* (Princeton: Prestige Publications, 1986), 117-28.

theological potential without words”<sup>12</sup> and can surpass the limitations of language. In this model “music itself has theological significance,” “the text becomes secondary to music,” and, therefore, “music is integral to worship.”<sup>13</sup> The third approach focuses on liturgical music’s function. It “ascribes theological significance to music primarily by virtue of its utility to Christian worship,” which implies that “theological meaning in music is functional,” the text identifies its function, and “music is integral” to worship because it functions to promote participation.<sup>14</sup>

As was made clear in the discussion of theological and ritual models in the introduction and chapter three, respectively, varied approaches work best not in isolation, but in conversation with one another.<sup>15</sup> One can presume all three of the approaches above to be adequate, as long as one does not assume any particular approach to be exhaustive or complete in and of itself. Each offers different insights, and approaches liturgical music from a different methodological and theological perspective. One’s choice of approach should not be determined by a personal or intellectual commitment to a particular method, but rather by determining which method is most appropriate in a specific context or for a specific task.

The method in this chapter must be a synthesis of the models described above by Parsons. First, our concerns are primarily *functional* in that our focus is the function and purpose of the entrance song in the liturgy, and because our intention is to determine what kind of music best facilitates this function and purpose. From this perspective, as Parsons

---

<sup>12</sup> Parsons, “Text, Tone, and Context,” 59.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid., 62-63.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid., 67-68.

<sup>15</sup> According to Parsons, “Liturgical song represents a mutuality between liturgical texts, musical experience, and ritual processes that establishes the fulfillment of God’s Word by its incarnation in ordinary experience.” Ibid., 69.

explains, “Music realizes its theological potential through its contextualization in worship as a functional process.”<sup>16</sup> Second, our concerns are also *textual*. Entrance song texts in general have a particular liturgical function, as chapter two has shown, and, according to Parsons, “in the practice of liturgy, the text is an ‘explicit performative’ that indicates how to read the ritual act of singing and understand the liturgical act being accomplished.”<sup>17</sup> Thus, the genre of the entrance song text influences how it is set to music and how it is performed. The text also reveals something about the larger ritual categories of entrance procession and introductory rites of which it is a constituent part. But our concern is also with specific entrance song texts and what they express theologically in terms of feast-specific and seasonal themes. Third, one must affirm that music is integral to worship, both because it *facilitates* active participation, the enactment of the entrance song, and the fulfillment of its function, and because it is the normative means by which the entrance song’s text is expressed.

Finally, for the purposes of this study, this chapter must bracket an exploration of the theology of music as sound (music *qua* music) and the affective dimension of music. The methodology here employed does not grant us access to this dimension, and this bracketing is warranted in that the origins of liturgical chant melodies mainly had to do with the aural transmission of liturgical texts, and because the purpose of the study is not to analyze any particular melodies or musical settings in terms of music theory or aesthetics. As Peter Jeffery reminds us, “A chant melody records a reading of its text; the melody is the record of

---

<sup>16</sup> Parsons, “Text, Tone, and Context,” 67.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid., 67-68.

its maker's responses to the relationships among word order, syntax, and phrasing and to the ways these are related to the text's meaning. . . . In this process, melody plays a role similar to that of punctuation by clearly marking off syntactical units."<sup>18</sup>

This chapter will proceed by setting down a theology of the entrance song from these three perspectives: function, text, and facilitation. This theology emerges through the interplay of *function* and *text*, while from this theology emerge principles that *facilitate* solutions to our practical problem: what to sing at the beginning of Mass. *Function* encompasses many different aspects of the entrance song: how it “opens,” “disposes,” “accompanies,” “unifies,” “announces,” and “appropriates” within its liturgical context. *Text* involves a consideration of the context of a particular entrance song text. The one examined here will be the entrance antiphon and psalm verses of the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper. This text opens the Paschal Triduum (*Ordo Hebdomadae Sanctae Instauratus*)<sup>19</sup> and is thus one of the most important antiphons of the liturgical year. There are many facets to this text's context, which will be explored below: the origin and development of the Holy Thursday Mass and of the broader liturgical periods of which it is a part (preparation for Easter, Paschal Triduum), the manuscript tradition of the *Nos autem gloriari* introit and the textual sources of this antiphon, and the theological themes expressed

---

<sup>18</sup> Peter Jeffery, “Chant East and West: Toward a Renewal of the Tradition,” in *Music and the Experience of God*, ed. Mary Collins, David N. Power, and Mellonee Burnim, *Concilium* 202 (Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1989), 24. Thus the primary way in which the chant melodies are related to their texts is through syntax. The melodies do not as a rule reflect Latin accent patterns, nor do they often reflect the semantics of the text by word painting, and so forth (see *ibid.*). See also Ritva Jonsson and Leo Treitler, “Medieval Music and Language: A Reconsideration of the Relationship,” in *Music and Language*, *Studies in the History of Music* 1 (New York: Broude, 1983), 22.

<sup>19</sup> See Congregation of Rites, Instruction, 16 November 1955.

in the text and how they relate and interact with other texts within the immediate liturgical orbit (Holy Week, Triduum, Easter).

After a consideration of *function* and *text*, the chapter moves on to the principle of *facilitation*, and will mark out the boundaries of the answer to our problem through a set of criteria for choosing entrance songs for the celebration of the Eucharist. With these criteria, the study comes full circle, having moved with methodological care from contextual studies of the entrance song, to a delineation of models for present-day practice, through the study's specific motivating problems, to a theology of the entrance song, ending at last with useable pastoral solutions.

### **The Theology of the Entrance Song: Function, Text, and Facilitation**

#### The Theological Function of The Entrance Song in Its Ritual Context

As was noted in chapter two, the entrance song at Mass falls into two ritual categories. First, it is a constituent element of the Introductory Rites. Second, it is the music that accompanies the entrance procession of the Mass. This means that the entrance song should help to accomplish the overall purpose of the Introductory Rites and achieve the basic functions of a Roman Rite entrance song.

*The entrance song opens the celebration of the Eucharist (General Instruction of the Roman Missal 47).* On a purely functional level, the entrance song brings order to the assembly by focusing everyone's attention toward the liturgy that has just begun. It is a kind of culmination of the gathering of the assembly that necessarily has taken place before Mass. One can also say that when the entrance song begins all of the elements of the ritual come together—it actualizes a symbiosis of movement, music, text, and even architecture, because

processional routes are in many ways determined by the floor plan of a church building. As the first ritual element of the Mass, the entrance song also sets the tone for the entirety of a liturgical celebration and can determine whether the mood of the celebration will be generally festive, somber, and so forth.<sup>20</sup>

*The entrance song, along with the other Introductory Rites, disposes the assembly to listen to the Word of God and to celebrate the Eucharist worthily (General Instruction of the Roman Missal 46).* In a less tangible but real manner, it is by means of the entrance song that the gathered community shifts from an everyday to a ritual mode of acting,<sup>21</sup> and, because they are gathered together as the Church (the Body of Christ, the living temple), out of the everyday world and into the house of God.<sup>22</sup> Through the song and through the act of singing God invites the assembly and those gathered to establish their identity as Church and to invite one another to the eucharistic feast.

---

<sup>20</sup> See *New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*, s.v. “Gestures, Liturgical.”

<sup>21</sup> See, for example, the USCCB document *Built of Living Stones*: “The Church marks time as holy by setting aside Sunday and by celebrating the liturgical year with its rhythm and seasons. It demonstrates God’s reign over all *space* by dedicating buildings to house the Church and its worship. Each Sunday the baptized are challenged to reset from their daily labors, to contemplate the goodness of God, to make present the victory and triumph of Christ’s death (SC, no. 6), to enter the joy of the Risen Lord, [and] to receive the life-giving breath of the Spirit.” USCCB, *Built of Living Stones: Art, Architecture, and Worship* (Washington, 2000), no. 20.

<sup>22</sup> Speaking of the entrance rite in general (and not about any song in particular), Schmemmann says it is the “ascent and entry of the Church into the heavenly sanctuary.” Alexander Schmemmann, *Eucharist*, 50. See also USCCB, *Built of Living Stones* nos. 16-17. The entrance song possesses liminal qualities. It is a type of ritual threshold on the other side of which the assembly recognizes itself more fully as the Church. Every enactment of the Mass is itself a liminal experience that occurs outside one’s everyday life and that ideally works to transform the participant so that afterward one is conformed more fully to the Body of Christ. The celebration of the Eucharist reveals a permanent communal bond between the members of the Body of Christ, but is also a “momentary community” or *communitas* that is not the same as one’s “community of work” or “neighborhood.” See Ronald Grimes, “Emerging Ritual,” in *Proceedings of the North American Academy of Liturgy*, Annual Meeting, Saint Louis, January 2-5, 1990 (Valparaiso, IN: North American Academy of Liturgy, 1990), 25.



*The entrance song accompanies the entrance procession of the priest and ministers at the beginning of Mass (General Instruction of the Roman Missal 47).*<sup>23</sup> Because the entrance song is liturgical music that accompanies ritual action and thus is “closely . . . joined to the liturgical rite” (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112), it must meet “the demands of the rite itself” (*Sing to the Lord* 128). The entrance procession at Mass is truly a functional procession. Its primary purpose is to move persons from one place to another, in contrast to the other two types of liturgical processions. Thomas Krosnicki calls the first of these “ordinary processions”<sup>24</sup> like the procession with the candle at the Easter Vigil. Another such procession is the procession with the blessed sacrament on the Solemnity of the Body and Blood of Christ. Processions of this type, while also functional, are surrounded by layers of theological interpretation.<sup>25</sup> The second he calls “extraordinary processional movements,”<sup>26</sup> the focus of which is not to move from one place to another, but the act of processing itself, in addition to “witnessing to the faith by public expressions of praise, petition, penance, etc.”<sup>27</sup> Processions of this type include those with sacred relics or images of the Blessed Virgin, or for a good harvest.<sup>28</sup>

As was explained in chapter one, getting the priest and ministers from the entrance of the church building or from the sacristy to the sanctuary was the originating function of the entrance procession and introit during the era when the liturgy experienced a period of

---

<sup>23</sup> For studies of liturgical processions in general, see, for example, Baldovin, “Kyrie Eleison,” 36; Herman Wegman, “Procedere und Prozession: eine Typologie,” *Liturgisches Jahrbuch* 27 (1977): 28-39; and I. H. Dalmais, “Note sur la sociologie des processions,” *La Maison-Dieu* 43 (1955): 37-43.

<sup>24</sup> *New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*, s.v. “Gesture and Movement in the Liturgy.”

<sup>25</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>26</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>27</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>28</sup> *Ibid.*

formalization, imperialization, and elaboration. The length of the introit varied, in accord with the length of the procession, but from the late Middle Ages, the functional relationship between the length of the introit and the length of the entrance procession dis-integrated. This functional connection was restored, however, in the reform of the liturgy instigated by the Second Vatican Council, so that today one can confidently assert that processional chants should accompany processional movement (*Sing to the Lord* 115b). For the introit, the melody is also functional in that the reciting tone for the verses is determined by the antiphon's mode and the conclusion of the tone must correspond with the beginning notes of the antiphon.<sup>29</sup> Indeed, modally and melodically speaking, the tone for the verses is often only musically complete when it is sung with the antiphon.<sup>30</sup>

*The entrance song establishes and intensifies the unity of the gathered assembly* (*General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 46-47). In other words, as Baldovin states, the entrance song helps the assembly "to be and become more intensely the body of Christ."<sup>31</sup> One should remember that the entrance song finds its origins not only in the ritual needs of an entrance procession, but also in the desire of the assembly to joyfully acclaim and respond to the Paschal Mystery. In the present-day Roman Rite Mass, it accomplishes this unity in large part through the act of singing together. In a sense, through the entrance song, the community truly enters the celebration of the Eucharist,<sup>32</sup> affirming its identity as the

---

<sup>29</sup> *New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians*, s.v. "Antiphon."

<sup>30</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>31</sup> Baldovin, "Kyrie Eleison," 334. As Nketia says, "The significance of the music of a ritual occasion does not lie only in the symbolic interaction it generates, but also it means it provides for the affirmation of communal values and the renewal of the bonds and sentiments that bind a community or the devotees of a god." Nketia, "Musical Interaction in Ritual Events," 117.

<sup>32</sup> See Deiss, *Visions of Liturgy and Music*, 121.

community of the redeemed and Christ's body,<sup>33</sup> while recognizing and welcoming the Priest celebrant as a symbol of Christ the head.<sup>34</sup>

Liturgical chant as a whole, as Robert Taft says, is "both proclamation and acclamation: proclamation of the *mirabilia Dei* culminating in the Paschal Mystery of Christ and pointing to his return in glory, and acclamation of Christ present to the Church in the *actio*."<sup>35</sup> The entrance song also serves a particular function, however, in that *it announces the feast or season through the appropriation of the Word of God and other ancient liturgical-textual traditions to the assembly* (see GIRM 47).<sup>36</sup> This is especially true on the major feasts and solemnities of the liturgical year. On Sundays without a particular theme, the entrance song serves to announce the liturgical season or simply the ever-present theme of the Paschal Mystery.<sup>37</sup> It serves to announce and recall those things most basic to the Christian world of meaning and to particularize the liturgical celebration that follows.

The official introit antiphons and verses are a good example of this "announcing" and "appropriating" function of the entrance song in that they not only convey specific themes,

---

<sup>33</sup> Begbie notes that "the Holy Spirit opens our present (and us) to Christ's past and future, and, as in the case of music, this entails not the refusal of 'our' temporality, but its healing and re-formation." Begbie, *Theology, Music and Time*, 173. See also St. Augustine of Hippo, who states, "Let us recognize both our voice in his, and his voice in ours." Augustine, *Ennarationes in Psalmos* 85:1, trans. ICEL, 1974.

<sup>34</sup> See Deiss, *Visions of Liturgy and Music*, 121.

<sup>35</sup> Robert Taft, "Toward a Theology of Christian Feast," in *Beyond East and West* (Washington, D.C.: Pastoral Press, 1984), 7-9.

<sup>36</sup> Jungmann notes that "the opportunity was here presented to accentuate the tone or temper with which the celebration was to begin." Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 329. "This latter was done often by selecting for the antiphon a psalm verse that seemed to fit the celebration. Thus for the Christmas midnight Mass Psalm 2 is sung at the introit, and verse 7 is chosen as the antiphon: *Dominus dixit ad me, Filius meus es tu*. Or in the introit of a *Confessor non pontifex*, Psalm 91, with the stress on verse 13 as antiphon: *Iustus ut palma florebit*" (ibid.).

<sup>37</sup> Tietze notes that "the texts assigned to the feasts of the Lord are usually specific to the theme, whereas others tend to be more general and uphold a seasonal idea." Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 23. Jungmann recognizes, however, that "there are days . . . for which there is no special theme to which the introit antiphon might lead. Then the chant master takes up his psalter and chooses one of the psalms that in some way expresses the relationship of the Christian community to God: trust, praise, petition." Jungmann, *Mass of the Roman Rite*, 1:330.

but also specific texts. The introit antiphon texts make use of scriptural (and sometimes non-scriptural) texts in a variety of ways. They are, however, not proclamations of long excerpts from the scriptures, as in the Liturgy of the Word. On the other hand, neither are they simple scriptural allusions, which one frequently finds in the presidential prayers of the Mass. Consider, for example, the collect for 21 January, the memorial of Saint Agnes, Virgin and Martyr:

Almighty everlasting God,  
who choose what is weak in the world  
to confound the strong,  
mercifully grant  
that we who celebrate the heavenly birthday  
of your Martyr Saint Agnes  
may follow her constancy of faith.  
Through our Lord . . .<sup>38</sup>

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus,  
qui infirma mundi eligis,  
ut fortia quaeque confundas,  
concede propitius,  
ut, qui beatae Agnetis martyris  
tuae natalicia celebramus,  
eius in fide constantiam subsequamur.  
Per Dominum.<sup>39</sup>

Here the first half of the collect alludes to 1 Corinthians 1:27, which reads, “Rather, God chose what is foolish in the world to shame the wise, and God chose what is weak in the world to shame the strong” (NRSV).<sup>40</sup> The collect does not directly quote the passage and surrounds this allusion with a substantial amount of other text.

Indeed, antiphons are a unique liturgical-textual genre. Their purpose is neither to proclaim nor allude to the ancient Christian textual tradition (mainly scripture), but to *appropriate* it. In so doing, antiphons (1) reflect and pass on a tradition of textual interpretation. This occurs through the way a specific antiphon text employs the textual

<sup>38</sup> *The Roman Missal, Third Typical Edition*, trans., ICEL, 2010.

<sup>39</sup> This prayer is found in the 2002/2008, 1975, 1970, and 1962 editions of the *Missale Romanum*. It is derived from the *Sacramentarium Veronese* and *Sacramentarium Gelasianum*. For more precise source details see Cuthbert Johnson, *Sources of the Roman Missal* (1975), *Notitiae* 32 (1996): 105.

<sup>40</sup> The text of the Vulgate reads, “*sed quae stulta sunt mundi elegit Deus ut confundat sapientes et infirma mundi elegit Deus ut confundat fortia.*”

tradition and (2) relates to and interacts with its verses (usually taken from the psalms) to produce a particular Christian meaning, and then (3) how the antiphon and verses together relate to and reveal something about a specific day of the liturgical year, thereby announcing “the mystery of the liturgical season or festivity (*General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 47).

There are three primary interpretive relationships, then: the interaction of an antiphon and the broader scriptural/textual tradition of the Church, the interaction of an antiphon and its verses, and the interaction of the entrance song and a liturgical feast. This interaction is the essence of the Mass antiphon as a textual genre, and this relationship between scripture and liturgical celebration is an integral characteristic of the Roman Rite. The meaning of a psalm, for example, is augmented and reinterpreted when it is part of the processional chant at Mass.<sup>41</sup>

One can rightly say, then, that antiphons are not scriptural texts in the same way as the readings at Mass, even if both are what Power calls “the oral and liturgical exchange of Christian communities.”<sup>42</sup> Rather, they are *textuum manu ecclesiastica compositorum* or

---

<sup>41</sup> As David Power says, “What we have . . . is a christological use of an Old Testament psalmodic text.” D. Power, “*The Word of the Lord*,” 28. Here “christological” can mean an explicit reinterpretation of the psalm so as to make it speak of Christ, but can also mean that it simply draws the psalm into the broad Paschal Mystery by including it in the celebration of the liturgy. Another pertinent point is that the function of antiphons in the Mass is not exactly the same as their function in the Liturgy of the Hours. One should note, however, that in its origins, the practice of antiphonal psalmody was brought into the Mass from the Office. Jeffery notes that the accompaniment of the procession of the bishop with psalms and antiphons is documented by Egeria, and the ancient practice of celebrating the Office prior to Mass influenced the way in which the Mass began—with psalm and antiphon. See Jeffery, “Meanings and Functions of *Kyrie Eleison*,” 149-50. He also notes that the free incorporation of elements from one type of liturgical rite into another has multiple precedents in history. For example, the twelfth-century Roman Pontifical adapted the “earliest rite for consecrating a newly-elected bishop of Rome . . . into the beginning of a Mass” in which “the psalmody has become the Introit” (ibid., 189-90).

<sup>42</sup> D. Power, “*Word of the Lord*,” 44.

“texts of ecclesiastical composition” (*Liturgiam authenticam* 23), which draw on “centuries of ecclesial experience in transmitting the faith of the Church received from the Fathers” (*Liturgiam authenticam* 20). Unlike a scripture reading, as Power says, “the genre of [which] will command to some extent the place that it is given” in the liturgy, it is the genre and liturgical function of the antiphon and entrance song that has over time *determined the text*, and the way the text makes use of the scriptural, psalmic, and to a lesser extent other early textual traditions of the Church.<sup>43</sup> Antiphons were composed for the liturgy. The biblical readings, while inextricably bound up with the liturgy (some of the earliest uses of what became the canonical scriptures were for the purposes of worship), exist separately from it as a witness to salvation history.

The fact that antiphons are “texts of ecclesiastical composition”<sup>44</sup> is especially relevant when it comes to liturgical translation. Translation is at the heart of present-day liturgical praxis because celebration of the liturgy in the vernacular has become a nearly universal practice. The antiphons of a vernacular edition of a liturgical book must clearly translate the antiphon texts of the Latin *editio typica*. This means that when their texts are clearly derived from sacred Scripture,<sup>45</sup> their translation should not simply quote a modern

---

<sup>43</sup> Ibid., 45.

<sup>44</sup> As Finn says, “The Latin texts of the antiphons in light of the numerous adaptations and their reliance on an earlier Latin translation of the Scriptures seem to fall more naturally into the category of what *Liturgiam authenticam* calls text of ‘ecclesiastical composition’ that borrow from the Scriptures but often adapt the biblical texts and do not quote them literally.” Finn/ICEL, “Questions and Issues Related to the Translation of the Antiphons,” 2.

<sup>45</sup> Some antiphons do not quote scripture at all, and an even greater number of them heavily adapt it.

English translation of the Bible (*Liturgiam authenticam* 24). To do so would be to lose sight of the line of interpretation followed in the Roman liturgical tradition.<sup>46</sup>

In the case of the entrance antiphons of the *Missale Romanum*, *Graduale Romanum*, and *Graduale Simplex*, this principle of translation addresses a practical problem in addition to preserving liturgical tradition. Because the antiphon texts, when derived from scripture, are derived from the Latin Vulgate or an Old Latin translation,<sup>47</sup> a particular excerpt from a modern scripture translation—based upon more recent scholarship and source criticism—often might not be an accurate translation of the Latin text of the antiphon.<sup>48</sup> Furthermore, some antiphons draw upon apocryphal books in the Vulgate that are sometimes not found in more recent scripture translations.<sup>49</sup> The arrangement and numbering of chapters and verses, especially in these apocryphal books and in the psalms, is sometimes unique to the Vulgate and Old Latin translations as well.

These translation complexities can also apply to the verses that accompany the antiphons. “So that conformity with the Latin liturgical text may be maintained” (*Liturgiam authenticam* 37), translators should look to the ancient Latin translations of the Psalms. The first psalm verse that accompanies *Nos autem gloriari* at the entrance on Holy Thursday, for example, contains the phrase “et misereatur nostri,” which is found neither in the Neo-

---

<sup>46</sup> See D. Power, “*Word of the Lord*,” 29.

<sup>47</sup> In the case of antiphons that are derived from the Psalms, Jerome’s earlier Gallican Psalter, which relies on the Greek *Septuagint*, was the source, rather than the Hebrew Psalter.

<sup>48</sup> For example, see the entrance antiphon for the Fourth Sunday of Advent: *Rorate, caeli, desuper, et nubes pluant iustum; aperiatur terra et germinet Salvatorem*. This antiphon is clearly based on the Vulgate version of Isaiah 45:8, which uses the words “*iustum*” and “*salvatore*.” The Vulgate interpreted these two words to refer to Christ. The Neo-Vulgate and more recent English translations, however, while translating the two words more accurately according to the most ancient sources (“*iustitiam*” / “righteousness” and “*salvationem*” / “salvation”), do not reflect the Latin text of the antiphon found in the *editio typica*.

<sup>49</sup> See 4 Esdras, for example.

Vulgate nor in recent English translations of the Psalms, but only in Jerome's translation of the Psalms based on the Septuagint. This is not to deny that more recent translations often more accurately reflect the earliest biblical sources. To ignore them would be to disregard and disrespect a text's original context. In fact, "it is often permissible that a variant reading of a verse be used, on the basis of critical editions and upon the recommendation of experts" (*Liturgiam authenticam* 38). Nevertheless, "this is not permissible in the case of a liturgical text where such a choice would affect those elements of the passage that are pertinent to its liturgical context" (*Liturgiam authenticam* 38). In order that the traditional relationship between an antiphon and its verses be maintained:

The effort should be made to ensure that the translations be conformed to that understanding of biblical passages which has been handed down by liturgical use and by the tradition of the Fathers of the Church, especially as regards very important texts such as the Psalms . . . ; in these cases the greatest care is to be taken so that the translation express the traditional Christological, typological and spiritual sense, and manifest the unity and the inter-relatedness of both Testaments. . . . [in order to express] the manner in which a text has traditionally been read and received within the Latin liturgical tradition (*Liturgiam authenticam* 41)<sup>50</sup>

These same principles apply to antiphons that derive from non-scriptural sources, even if sometimes "it is useful with the assistance of historical and other scientific tools to consult a source that may have been discovered for the same text" (*Liturgiam authenticam* 23).

---

<sup>50</sup> See also *General Instruction of the Liturgy of the Hours* 100-109. *Liturgiam authenticam* 46 states that "the norms . . . regarding Sacred Scripture, should also be applied, *mutatis mutandis*, to the texts of ecclesiastical composition."



The Theology of the Entrance Song as Text: *Nos autem gloriari*

**Table 4** Latin and English Translations of *Nos autem gloriari*.

*Graduale Romanum* (1974)    *The Sacramentary* (1973)    *The Roman Missal* (2009)  
*Graduale Simplex* (1975)

Antiphon

Nos autem gloriari oportet in Cruce Domini nostri Iesu Christi; in quo est salus, vita et resurrectio nostra: per quem salvati, et liberati sumus. <sup>51</sup>	We should glory in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, for he is our salvation, our life and our resurrection; through him we are saved and made free. <sup>52</sup>	It is right for us to glory in the Cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, in whom is our salvation, our life and resurrection, through whom we have been saved and set free. <sup>53</sup>
--	--	---

Psalm 66 (67)

1. Deus misereatur nostri, et benedicat nobis: illuminet vultum super nos, et misereatur nostri. <sup>54</sup>	1. O God, be gracious and bless us and let your face shed its light upon us (and have mercy on us).
2. Ut cognoscamus in terra viam tuam: in omnibus gentibus salutare tuum.	2. So will your ways be known upon earth, and all the nations learn your saving help.
3. Confiteantur tibi populi, Deus: confiteantur tibi populi omnes.	3. Let the peoples praise you, O God; let all the peoples praise you.
4. Laetentur et exsultent gentes, quoniam iudicas populos in aequitate, et gentes in terra dirigis.	4. Let the nations be glad and exult for you rule the world with justice. With fairness you rule the peoples, you guide the nations on earth.
5. Confiteantur tibi populi, Deus, confiteantur tibi populi omnes.	5. Let the peoples praise you, O God; let all the peoples praise you.
6. Terra dedit fructum suum; benedicat nos Deus, Deus noster.	6. The earth has yielded its fruit for God, Our God, has blessed us.
7. Benedicat nos Deus, et metuant eum omnes fines terrae. <sup>55</sup>	7. May God still give us his blessing till the ends of the earth revere him. <sup>56</sup>

<sup>51</sup> The *Graduale Simplex* antiphon ends after “Christi.”

<sup>52</sup> Trans., ICEL, 1973.

<sup>53</sup> Trans., ICEL, 2009.

<sup>54</sup> “Et misereatur nostri” is not found in the *Graduale Simplex*.

A consideration of liturgical text *as text* is important because a particular text influences its musical setting and performance, and, more importantly, expresses themes and ideas of a particular liturgical feast or season. In so doing, as Margaret Mary Kelleher notes, the text “plays a mediating role by providing certain imagery for God, oneself, and the Christian community.”<sup>57</sup> Any entrance song rightly so-called must be able to function as such. In a reciprocal manner, however, a particular entrance song text reveals something about the function of *the* entrance song as it pertains to a particular liturgical celebration. In other words, *an* entrance song, when enacted, accomplishes the functions of *the* entrance song through its unique text and melody. As an example of a particular entrance song text, then, we turn to the introit of the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper.

### *The Origins of the Feast*

According to Egeria’s account, in Jerusalem, by the late fourth century Christians celebrated the Eucharist at 2 P.M. on the Thursday before Easter Sunday at the Martyrium (the basilica built over the place the Cross was discovered).<sup>58</sup> A second Eucharist took place immediately following the first (around 4 P.M.).<sup>59</sup> The location of this second celebration—the *Post Crucem* chapel next to Golgotha—must have been of some significance, but there is no indication in the extant sources as to how or why. Egeria’s record indicates that “on this

---

<sup>55</sup> The *Graduale Romanum* includes only the first three psalm verses.

<sup>56</sup> Trans., The Grail, *The Psalms: A New Translation*, 1963. The Grail translation is given here because it is especially suitable for singing. With the addition of “and have mercy on us” to verse one, it sufficiently translates the Latin so as to be appropriate to the liturgical context.

<sup>57</sup> Margaret Mary Kelleher, “Liturgy and the Christian Imagination,” *Worship* 66:2 (March 1992): 148.

<sup>58</sup> Wilkinson, ed., *Egeria’s Travels*, 35.1.

<sup>59</sup> *Ibid.*, 35.2. See also John Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem* (Nottingham, England: Grove Books Limited, 1989), 40.

one day the Offering is made Behind the Cross, but on no other day in the whole year.”<sup>60</sup> John Baldovin and George Gingras suggest that the Eucharist held at *Post Crucem* was simply to accommodate the overflow crowd that could not take part in the first Eucharist at the Martyrium.<sup>61</sup> If this was the case, then the location’s significance might simply be that it was close to the Martyrium and thus a logical solution to a practical problem. Thomas Talley suggests, however, that this second Eucharist was celebrated at this particular time and place to accommodate Johannine Christians, who believed Jesus’ death coincided with the traditional time of the slaying of the lambs for the Temple feast.<sup>62</sup> Indeed the *Post Crucem* liturgy was celebrated at this time, and just behind the place tradition locates Jesus’ death on the Cross.

After the second Eucharist, the crowd was dismissed to go home and take their final meal before the Easter fast was to begin.<sup>63</sup> At 7 P.M., all gathered at the *Eleona* (the chapel on the Mount of Olives) to begin an all night vigil of readings, hymns and prayers.<sup>64</sup> There, “they read the passages from the Gospel about what the Lord said to his disciples when he sat in the very cave which is in the church.”<sup>65</sup> At midnight, the vigil moved to the *Imbomon* (the place of Jesus’ Ascension), then, at cockcrow, to “the place where the Lord prayed.”<sup>66</sup> Here

---

<sup>60</sup> Wilkinson, ed., *Egeria’s Travels*, 35.2.

<sup>61</sup> See Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*, 40, citing the George E. Gingras edition: *Egeria: Diary of a Pilgrimage*, Ancient Christian Writers: the Works of the Fathers in Translation 38 (New York: Newman Press, 1970), p. 236.

<sup>62</sup> Thomas J. Talley, *The Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 2<sup>nd</sup> emend. ed. (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1991), 45.

<sup>63</sup> Wilkinson, ed., *Egeria’s Travels*, 35.2.

<sup>64</sup> *Ibid.*, 35.3.

<sup>65</sup> *Ibid.*, 35.3-4.

<sup>66</sup> *Ibid.*, 36.1.

Luke 22:41 was read.<sup>67</sup> Next, while it was still dark, they processed to Gethsemane where there was a reading about the Lord's arrest.<sup>68</sup> Then, on Good Friday morning, when day was breaking, they processed, singing, from Gethsemane into Jerusalem, ending at the atrium Before the Cross.<sup>69</sup> Though it took place on Good Friday, it is the gathering Before the Cross that marked the end of the vigil that had begun the night before. The central theme that emerges from Egeria's account of the liturgical celebrations on the Thursday before Easter, then, is the commemoration and celebration of the Cross.

Baldovin argues that the first Eucharist at the Martyrium "seems to have commemorated the Last Supper of Jesus," while admitting that "Egeria . . . says nothing about a thematic character to this celebration."<sup>70</sup> His argument is strengthened by two slightly later (fifth century) lectionaries, both of which reflect liturgical practice in Jerusalem. The Armenian lectionary provides readings that pertain to the institution of the Eucharist for this celebration, and the Georgian lectionary provides for a foot washing service at the afternoon Eucharist at the Martyrium.<sup>71</sup> In the Armenian source, the second Eucharist has moved from the chapel *Post Crucem* to the more spacious atrium Before the Cross,<sup>72</sup> likely

---

<sup>67</sup> Ibid., 36.1, and p. 154 n. 2.

<sup>68</sup> Ibid., 36.2-3.

<sup>69</sup> Ibid., 36.3-4.

<sup>70</sup> Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*, 40. See also Wilkinson, ed., *Egeria's Travels*, p. 153.

<sup>71</sup> Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*, 40. It also provides for a service for reconciling penitents. This source does not provide a second or third Eucharist on Thursday. See Michel Tarchnischvili, ed., *Le grand lectionnaire de l'Église de Jérusalem (Ve-VIIIe siècle)* (Louvain : Secrétariat du Corpus SCO, 1959-60).

<sup>72</sup> Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*, 40; and Talley, *Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 44.

to accommodate a larger assembly. It also provides for a third celebration of the Eucharist at *Sion* (the site of the Last Supper) later in the afternoon.<sup>73</sup>

The Armenian lectionary is more specific than Egeria's account as to which readings were proclaimed where. During the first Eucharist at the Martyrium, Psalm 22[23] (*Dominus reget me et nihil mihi deerit*) and 1 Corinthians 11:23-32 (a Eucharist institution narrative) were read, along with Matthew's account of the institution of the Eucharist.<sup>74</sup> There were no readings at the second Eucharist, and at the third the readings were the same as at the first, with the exception that the Gospel account of the institution is now taken from Mark.<sup>75</sup> Finally, this source clearly indicates that the reading at the Eleona was the Last Supper discourse from the Gospel of John (13:16-18:1).<sup>76</sup>

By the fifth century, then, it is clear that the commemoration of the Last Supper was integral to the liturgies of the Thursday before Easter.<sup>77</sup> Note, however, that only in the Armenian Lectionary does a celebration of the Eucharist take place at the site of the Last Supper—not in Egeria's account. This likely represents a later stage of liturgical

---

<sup>73</sup> Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*, 40. See Athanase Renoux, *Le Codex arménien Jérusalem 121*, vol. 2, *Édition comparée du texte et de deux autres manuscrits*, *Patrologia Orientalis* 36.2:168 (Turnhout, 1969), 269; and Talley, *Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 38.

<sup>74</sup> Renoux, *Le Codex arménien Jérusalem 121*, vol. 2, no. 39. See also Wilkinson, ed., *Egeria's Travels*, 185; and Talley, *Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 45.

<sup>75</sup> Talley, *Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 45.

<sup>76</sup> Armenian Lectionary, no. 39.

<sup>77</sup> In the Old Gelasian Sacramentary, the tripartite liturgical structure of Thursday of Holy Week is present: Reconciliation of Penitents, Chrism Mass, and the Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper. See Leo Cunibert Mohlberg, ed., *Liber Sacramentorum Romanae Ecclesiae Ordinis Anni Circuli (Cod. Vat. Reg. lat. 316 / Paris Bibl. Nat. 7193, 41/56) (Sacramentarium Gelasianum)* (Rome: Casa Editrice Herder, 1960), 55-64. See also Mario Righetti, *Manuale di Storia Liturgica*, vol. 2 (Milan: Editrice Ancora, 1969), 206; and Herman Wegman, *Christian Worship in East and West: A Study Guide to Liturgical History*, trans. Gordon W. Lathrop (Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990), 80, 174-5.

development in Jerusalem.<sup>78</sup> Is it possible, then, that in the early centuries there was a gradual shift in which the remembrance of the institution of the Eucharist comes to be more theologically discrete—less connected to the other aspects of the broader Easter celebration? Perhaps Cross and Table competed to be the central theme of Thursday from the beginning. Indeed, the eventual inclusion of Holy Thursday as part of the Triduum (see below) might reflect a gradual shift from a Cross/Resurrection-centered theology to one more Eucharist-centered.

All of this information has been included here to make a single point: the liturgies of the Thursday before Easter, from very early on, focused not only upon the Eucharist and Last Supper, but also upon the Cross. In fact, the entire day—from the afternoon Eucharist at the place where the Cross was discovered, to the second Eucharist that took place near Golgotha behind the Cross—is imbued with the remembrance of the Cross. It is clear from the vigil that follows, which concludes Before the Cross, and from the remaining services on Friday that the Cross is the context that envelopes the entirety of the Triduum until the Easter resurrection.

As in Jerusalem, the liturgies of the Triduum in Rome were stationary. The station for the Mass of the Lord's Supper was the basilica of St. John on the Lateran hill, the cathedral of Rome. It is not clear exactly when this station came to be associated with this particular liturgy,<sup>79</sup> but likely from the start. Originally dedicated by Constantine as St. Savior in 324

---

<sup>78</sup> Talley observes that “celebrations that commemorate events at the very place of their occurrence represent a secondary stratum in the hagiopolitan liturgical tradition.” Talley, *Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 54.

<sup>79</sup> None of the manuscripts of the *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex* indicate the station for this Mass, though they do for other days. Many old Sacramentary manuscripts indicate that an evening Mass took place at St. John Lateran on Holy Thursday, however. See *Liber Sacramentorum Paduensis* (Padova, Biblioteca Capitolare,

A.D., the dedications to Sts John the Baptist and John the Evangelist were added in the tenth and twelfth centuries, respectively. According to tradition, the basilica houses a piece of the table at which Jesus and his Apostles celebrated the Last Supper. An ancient altar is also a fixture of the basilica—for centuries, only has the bishop of Rome been allowed to celebrate the Eucharist at it. Its possession of both artifacts make the Lateran a logical location for the celebration of the Holy Thursday evening Mass, though not reflecting in any explicit way the Cross context so fundamental to Holy Thursday in Jerusalem.

*The History of the Triduum and Its Restoration*

The Paschal Triduum, which forms the immediate context for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass, “shines out as the culmination of the entire liturgical year” (*General Norms for the Liturgical Year and Calendar* 18).<sup>80</sup> In the post-Conciliar *Roman Missal* it begins with the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper and ends after Evening Prayer on Easter Sunday (*General Norms for the Liturgical Year and Calendar* 19). Other liturgical celebrations that take place earlier in the day on Holy Thursday, namely any reconciliation of penitents and the Chrism Mass at which the oils and chrism are blessed by the bishop, fall outside the Triduum and are part of Holy Week.<sup>81</sup> As Cyrille Vogel notes, the Triduum grew out of an earlier, more basic, celebration of the Resurrection on Easter Sunday, as a period of intense preparation:

The period preparing for Easter was gradually established by working back from the feast itself. The step-by-step formation of a full Lent can only be

---

*Cod. D 47*), eds. Alcestis Catella, Ferdinandus Dell’Oro, and Aldus Martini. Biblioteca “Ephemerides Liturgicae” – Subsidia. Monumenta Italiae Liturgica III (Rome: CLV Edizioni Liturgiche, 2005), 237.

<sup>80</sup> Trans., ICEL, 2007. See also *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 5, 106.

<sup>81</sup> See *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 204a, 380; and *General Norms for the Liturgical Year and Calendar* 16a, 31. See also Baldovin, *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*, 40.

understood by working back from Easter through the Triduum, Holy Week and, ultimately, all the weeks of Lent and even pre-Lent.<sup>82</sup>

With the exception of the Easter Vigil, then, the Triduum is the most ancient liturgical form of preparation for Easter. Such a period is one of two “primitive constants of the annual liturgical cycle.”<sup>83</sup> Vogel asserts that the earliest Triduum consisted of Good Friday, Holy Saturday and Easter Sunday, and not Holy Thursday, Good Friday, and the Vigil of Easter on Saturday. Friday and Saturday were days of fasting since at least the beginning of the third century and culminated in the celebration of the Eucharist on Easter morning.<sup>84</sup> The distinction is not perfectly clear, however, since liturgical days begin the preceding evening at the vigil, thus including Holy Thursday evening.<sup>85</sup> This structure of the Triduum endured into at least the fifth century.<sup>86</sup> The period of preparation for Easter was extended by the fifth century to include Holy Week—the time between Palm Sunday and Holy Thursday evening.<sup>87</sup>

Lent, the prolonged period of preparation for Easter, was officially established in Rome by the late fourth century.<sup>88</sup> Between the fourth and seventh centuries, this preparatory period was extended from three weeks to seventy days,<sup>89</sup> ending on Holy Thursday evening, which began the Triduum. “In the seventh century,” however, as Vogel notes, “the paschal

---

<sup>82</sup> C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 309.

<sup>83</sup> *Ibid.*, 308.

<sup>84</sup> *Ibid.*, 309, and 385 n. 85, citing Ambrose (*Epistula* 23), Augustine of Hippo (*Epistula* 55), and the *Apostolic Tradition*.

<sup>85</sup> C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 309.

<sup>86</sup> *Ibid.* See also *ibid.*, 385 n. 86.

<sup>87</sup> *Ibid.*, 309.

<sup>88</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>89</sup> *Ibid.*, 310.



Triduum as a distinct entity faded from view and the fast days [of Lent] were henceforth calculated backwards from Easter Sunday, rather than from Holy Thursday as before.”<sup>90</sup>

This subsumation of the Triduum into Lent persisted for centuries and was only universally and officially remedied for the Roman Rite under Pius XII (1939-58). In 1951 he restored the celebration of the Easter Vigil for experimental use.<sup>91</sup> The experiment was such a success that the Pope mandated the restoration of Holy Week and the other parts of the Triduum. This revised rite, the *Ordo Hebdomadae Sanctae Instauratus*, was promulgated in 1955 for first use in 1956.<sup>92</sup> In this liturgical book, the Triduum is once again clearly distinguished from Lent. Most important for our purposes, as Anthony Ward states, the decree of promulgation “laid down that the Mass *In Cena Domini* of Maundy Thursday was to be celebrated ‘*vespere, hora magis opportuna, non autem ante horam quintam post meridiem, nec post horam octavam*’ (*Maxima redemptionis* 7). With this simple disposition, the *veritas temporum* of this celebration was restored and the scene set for a rediscovery of the spiritual and theological wealth of the celebration, with the habitual participation of the people.”<sup>93</sup>

These restored rites for Holy Week and the Triduum were incorporated into the *Missale Romanum* (1962), and then further revised—their overall structure remaining

---

<sup>90</sup> Ibid.

<sup>91</sup> Congregation of Rites, *De Solemni Vigilia Paschali Instauranda*. *Acta Apostolica Sedes* 43 (1951), 128-37. See also Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music*, 341.

<sup>92</sup> Congregation of Rites, Decree *Maxima redemptionis* (16 November 1955). *Acta Apostolica Sedes* 47 (1955), 838-47. “Additional decrees of clarification were issued on March 15, 1956 [*Acta Apostolica Sedes* 48 (1956), 153], and February 1 1957 [*Acta Apostolica Sedes* 49 (1957), 91].” Hayburn, *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music*, 341.

<sup>93</sup> Anthony Ward, “Euchology for the Mass ‘In Cena Domini’ of the 2000 *Missale Romanum*,” *Notitiae* 45:11-12 (2008): 611-34. This article provides a brief but useful study of the sources of the Collect, Prayer over the Offerings, and Eucharistic Prayer (Preface and Embolisms) of the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper found in the current *Missale Romanum*. It does not consider the introit.

intact—to accommodate the liturgical reforms of the Second Vatican Council (1962-65) as part of the post-Conciliar *editio typica* of the *Missale Romanum* (1970). The rites have been incorporated into the subsequent editions of the reformed *Missale Romanum* (1975, 2002) and remain the normative form for celebrating Holy Week and the Triduum in the Roman Rite. On 16 January 1988, the Congregation for Divine Worship issued the circular letter *Paschalis solemnitatis* on the preparation and celebration of the Easter liturgies. It is not a revision of the rites of Holy Week and the Triduum, but an exhortation for a more observant celebration of the rites currently in force, as well as a more overt explanation of the details of enacting the rites<sup>94</sup> and some theological reflection upon them.

*The Introit Nos autem gloriari*

The chants of the people and also of the ministers and the celebrating priest are of special importance in the celebration of Holy Week and particularly of the Easter Triduum because they add to the solemnity of these days, and also because the texts are more effective when sung. (*Paschalis solemnitatis* 42)<sup>95</sup>

Before the late seventh or early eighth century, the Holy Thursday Evening Mass in the Roman Rite had no introit because it began with the offertory.<sup>96</sup> The Mass was assigned texts for the Introductory Rites and Liturgy of the Word, and thus for the introit, by Gregory

---

<sup>94</sup> Compared to the *Ordo Hebdomadae Sanctae Instauratus* or *Institutio Generalis Missalis Romani*.

<sup>95</sup> The document mentions those chants that only occur on Holy Thursday: the procession with the gifts and the procession to the repose of the blessed sacrament (42c). But one should interpret the statement to include those chants that are normatively sung at every Mass, e.g., entrance, communion.

<sup>96</sup> Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum, 99 n. 35. See also Righetti, *Manuale di Storia Liturgica*, v. 2, 206. See, for example, A. Wilmart, “Le lectionnaire d’Alcuin,” *Ephemerides Liturgicae* 51 (1937): 136-97. There are no readings assigned in the manuscript for the Holy Thursday evening Mass. The contents and arrangement of Alcuin’s lectionary date from the early seventh century and, aside from some minor details, reflect Roman practice. See C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 340-42; and Gamber, *Codices liturgici latini antiquiores*, 1:438-39.

II (715-731) or perhaps Sergius I (687-701).<sup>97</sup> At this time, the introit *Nos autem gloriari* was borrowed from the antiphon's more ancient and likely original liturgical assignment—Tuesday of Holy Week,<sup>98</sup> where the antiphon is sung with Psalm 66 (*Deus misereatur nostri*).<sup>99</sup> The manuscripts of the *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex* (eighth and ninth centuries) reflect this change.<sup>100</sup> What one finds in these manuscripts represents a chant tradition that has already developed nearly complete melodic and textual stability, so that what one finds from manuscript to manuscript are minute differences in detail, not transformations of text or melody.<sup>101</sup> Any earlier layers of development have been lost to

---

<sup>97</sup> Kirby notes that these texts were assigned “for use in non-cathedral or monastic churches.” Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum,” 99 n. 35. This seems to imply that the texts were added for parish church use, and that in cathedrals and monasteries the liturgy continued to begin at the offertory, having been preceded by two other Masses (Reconciliation of Penitents and the Chrism Mass). The tradition of using the account of the Last Supper in 1 Corinthians on Holy Thursday looks to have been maintained from the earliest times, as we know it was already listed in the Armenian Lectionary for use on Holy Thursday. The Comes of Würzburg (early seventh century, reflecting Roman usage) does not list any readings for the evening Mass, but assigns the Corinthians text to the Chrism Mass. When the evening Mass was supplied with its own readings, the Corinthians reading was one of them. The Epistolary of Würzburg assigns no Gospel reading to Holy Thursday. In the Tridentine Lectionary, which is based on the late eighth-century Comes of Murbach (a Romano-Frankish lectionary), this assignment is maintained, and the account of Jesus washing his disciples’ feet (John 13:1-15) is also assigned. It is an abbreviation of the Gospel reading traditionally assigned to Tuesday of Holy Week (John 13:1-32), which included the account of Judas’ betrayal. The reading assignments for the evening Mass in the post-Vatican II Lectionary are Exodus 12:1-9, 11-14; 1 Corinthians 11:23-26; and John 13:1-15. See G. Morin, “Le plus ancien lectionnaire ou Comes de l’Eglise romaine,” *Revue bénédictine* 27 (1910): 41-74; and A. Wilmart, “Le Comes de Murbach,” *Revue bénédictine* 30 (1913): 25-69. Note that Morin’s edition includes both the epistolary and the evangeliary, even though these are really separate lists. See also C. Vogel, *Medieval Liturgy*, 349-55, especially 354-55; and Tietze, *Hymn Introits*, 59-81, especially 69-70.

<sup>98</sup> Hesbert writes, “L’introït, nous venons de le rappeler, est emprunté à la messe du Mardi.” Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, LIX. See also Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum,” 95, 99.

<sup>99</sup> See *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, 90-91; and Kirby, “Proper Chants of Paschal Triduum,” 95.

<sup>100</sup> See Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum,” 95, 97; and Hesbert, *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex*, 92-3. That is, except for the manuscript from Monza, which only includes the Lectionary chants.

<sup>101</sup> The minute differences in melodic detail are of interest to chant musicologists, however. To explore these variations, one would begin with the various notated Gradual manuscripts available in facsimile editions, and might find that certain variants are typical of a particular region or sphere of liturgical influence. In such an exploration, it is important the novice chant researcher recognize that the Office antiphon *Nos autem gloriari* is not the same as the Mass introit antiphon that begins like it. The text of the Office antiphon is shorter and the melody is different. As one would expect, the Office antiphon melody is not unique (but the *Nos autem gloriari* introit antiphon is) and is comprised mainly of a theme that occurs frequently in mode seven (mixolydian) Office antiphons.

history. Consequently, paleographical interpretation and comparison of the chant in various manuscripts is not particularly revealing or useful for the purposes of this study, and the antiphon provides a stable text for theological reflection.

In four of the six *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex* manuscripts,<sup>102</sup> the psalm assigned to the antiphon is Psalm 95 (“*Cantate Domino*”) rather than Psalm 66 as on Tuesday of Holy Week. This assignment makes sense, given the psalm’s ancient association with the mystery of the Cross.<sup>103</sup> At some point in the Middle Ages, the assigned Psalm was changed to Psalm 66 (“*Deus misereatur nostri*”). The reason for the change is not clear—perhaps to match the use on Tuesday of Holy Week. Both psalms are psalms of praise and relate to the antiphon through their mention of salvation (*salutare*).

While our focus here is the use of *Nos autem gloriari* on Holy Thursday, it is also employed on a certain other days of the liturgical year, which comprise part of the context of the antiphon as a discrete liturgical chant. *Nos autem gloriari*, then, is not unique to Holy Thursday, but to Feasts of the Cross. The assignments of the antiphon are fairly but not exactly consistent among the sources. Psalm verse assignments also differ from feast to feast, and serve to make each introit distinct both textually and theologically.

---

<sup>102</sup> Though it does for most other feasts, the Corbie manuscript includes no psalm verse assignment for *Nos autem gloriari* on Holy Thursday.

<sup>103</sup> Kirby explains that “psalm 95 is frequently used in connection with the mystery of the Cross, partly because of a reading of verse 10, found in the so-called Italic version: *Dicite in gentibus quia Dominus regnavit a ligno*. The last two words are, in fact, a Christian gloss. See the Alleluia verse for the Friday within the Octave of Easter, *Graduale Romanum*, 212, and the fourth strophe of the hymn *Vexilla Regis* [dicendo nationibus: regnavit a ligno Deus], sung at Vespers during Holy Week and on September 14.” Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum,” 97 n. 33. See also Bernard Capelle, “Regnavit a ligno,” in *Travaux liturgiques de doctrine et d’histoire*, vol. 3 (Louvain: Abbaye du Mont César, 1967), 211-14.

**Table 5** The Liturgical Uses of *Nos autem gloriari*.

Day of the Liturgical Year	Liturgical Book or Manuscript	Liturgical Function	Assigned Psalm (Vulgate numbering of <i>Psalmi iuxta LXX</i> )
Tuesday of Holy Week	<i>Rheinau Antiphonal</i>	Introit	66 <sup>104</sup>
		Communio	Not provided.
	<i>Mont-Blandin Antiphonal</i>	Introit (begins <i>Nobis</i> )	66? (MS indicates “ <i>Deus me.</i> ”) <sup>105</sup>
		Communio	66? (MS indicates <i>ut supra.</i> ) <sup>106</sup>
	<i>Compiègne Antiphonal</i>	Introit (begins <i>Nobis</i> )	66
	<i>Corbie Antiphonal</i>	Introit	66
	<i>Senlis Antiphonal</i>	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1974) <sup>107</sup>	Introit	66
Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper	<i>Rheinau Antiphonal</i>	Introit	95
	<i>Mont-Blandin Antiphonal</i>	Introit (begins <i>Nobis</i> )	95
	<i>Compiègne Antiphonal</i>	Introit	95
	<i>Corbie Antiphonal</i>	Introit	Not provided. <sup>108</sup>

<sup>104</sup> The first two verses of this psalm constitute the text of another introit antiphon (its verses are the subsequent verses of the same psalm), which is employed in the *Graduale Romanum* (1908) and *Missale Romanum* (1962) for the Votive Mass *pro Fidei Propagatione*. It is also found in the *Missale Romanum* (2008), where it functions as the entrance antiphon for the Votive Mass for the Evangelization of Peoples.

<sup>105</sup> The letters “*me*” are merely the beginning of a word, the rest of which cannot be deciphered from the manuscript. Hesbert suggests the full word might be “*meus*,” which implies Psalm 21. This is possible, but its deviation from what seems an otherwise universal assignment of Psalm 66 would be puzzling. Perhaps the scribe merely misspelled “*misereatur*.”

<sup>106</sup> “*Ut supra*” in these manuscripts indicates that the Psalm for the communion is the same as for the introit.

<sup>107</sup> In the post-Conciliar editions of the *Missale Romanum*, the introit antiphon for Tuesday of Holy Week is *Ne tradideris me, Domine*.

	<i>Senlis Antiphonal</i>	Introit	95
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1974)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Simplex</i> (1975) <sup>109</sup>	Introit <sup>110</sup>	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1970/1975/2002)	Introit	N/A
<b>Ignatius of Antioch (1 February)</b>	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570) <sup>111</sup>	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> <sup>112</sup> )	131 ( <i>Memento domine David</i> )
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	131
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	131

<sup>108</sup> The lack of an assigned psalm verse might imply that the verse from Tuesday of Holy Week should be used (Psalm 66), but this would deviate from what seems to be an established tradition of using Psalm 95 in the other four manuscripts.

<sup>109</sup> The occurrences of *Nos autem gloriari* / *Mihi autem absit gloriari* are fewer in the *Graduale Simplex* than in the *Graduale Romanum* (1974) not because the chant assignments are different between the two books, but because the *Graduale Simplex* only contains chants for the more important days of the liturgical year.

<sup>110</sup> The text of the antiphon *Nos autem gloriari* is abbreviated in the *Graduale Simplex* (it ends after *Iesu Christi*) and is set to a simpler chant melody.

<sup>111</sup> For St. Ignatius of Antioch, for St. Francis of Assisi, and for the Votive Mass of the Holy Cross, *Mihi autem absit gloriari* appeared in earlier manuscripts/editions of the *Missal* and *Gradual*, but not in manuscripts as early as those collected in the *Antiphonal Missarum Sextuplex*.

<sup>112</sup> The introit antiphon *Mihi autem absit gloriari*, while not the same antiphon as *Nos autem gloriari*, is related to it. Both are based in Galatians 6:14; in fact, *Mihi autem absit gloriari* is an exact quotation of this biblical verse. It is included in this table because in the *Graduale Romanum* (1974) it is replaced by *Nos autem gloriari* for the feasts of Ignatius of Antioch and Francis of Assisi, though in the post-Conciliar *Missale*, *Nos autem gloriari* has been replaced by other chants on these two feasts.

Note also that *Mihi autem absit gloriari* is not the same as the introit and offertory antiphons that begin *Mihi autem nimis*. These two antiphons, which employ the same text but different melodies, were used for feasts of the Apostles in the pre-Conciliar *Missale* and *Graduale*, and are included in the Common of Apostles in the 1974 *Graduale*. They are not found in the post-Conciliar *Missale Romanum*.

<b>Finding (<i>Inventio</i>) of the Holy Cross (3 May)</b> <sup>113</sup>	<i>Compiègne Antiphonal</i>	Introit (begins <i>Nobis</i> )	66
		Communio	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit	66
<b>Exaltation of the Holy Cross (14 September)</b>	<i>Corbie Antiphonal</i>	Introit	92 ( <i>Dominus regnavit decore</i> )
		Communio	104 ( <i>Annunciate inter gentes</i> )
	<i>Senlis Antiphonal</i>	Introit	92
		Communio	Not provided.
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1974)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Simplex</i> (1975)	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1970/1975/2002)	Introit	N/A
<b>Stigmata of Francis of Assisi (17 September)</b>	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	141( <i>Voce mea ad dominum</i> ) <sup>114</sup>
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	141
<b>Francis of Assisi (4 October)</b>	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	141
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	141
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> )	141
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1974) <sup>115</sup>	Introit (now <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> )	141

<sup>113</sup> In 1955, because of the addition of St. Joseph the Worker to the universal calendar on 1 May, this feast was displaced by that of Sts. Philip & James and removed from the universal calendar.

<sup>114</sup> Psalm 141 is the psalm traditionally believed to have been prayed by Francis immediately before his death.

<b>Ignatius of Antioch</b> (17 October <sup>116</sup> )	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1974) <sup>117</sup>	Introit (now <i>Nos autem gloriari</i> )	131
<b>John of the Cross</b> (14 December)	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1970/1975/2002)	Introit ( <i>Mihi autem absit gloriari</i> ) <sup>118</sup>	N/A
<b>Votive Mass of the Holy Cross</b>	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1570)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1908)	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1962)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Romanum</i> (1974)	Introit	66
	<i>Graduale Simplex</i> (1975)	Introit	66
	<i>Missale Romanum</i> (1970/1975/2002)	Introit	N/A

One can see by means of this table a gradual move toward standardization in terms of the introit for “feasts of the Cross.” From its original liturgical assignment of Tuesday of Holy Week, *Nos autem gloriari* is “borrowed” very early on for the Exaltation of the Cross,<sup>119</sup> Finding of the Cross, votive Mass of the Cross, and most importantly for this study, the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper. In some of the earliest manuscripts the antiphon serves as both the introit and communion, but not on Holy Thursday. In

<sup>115</sup> In the post-Conciliar editions of the *Missale Romanum*, the introit antiphon for this feast is *Vir Dei Franciscus reliquit*.

<sup>116</sup> The feast for Ignatius was moved to this date in the post-Conciliar liturgical calendar.

<sup>117</sup> In the post-Conciliar editions of the *Missale Romanum*, the introit antiphon for this feast is *Christo confixus sum cruci*.

<sup>118</sup> This feast was added to the universal calendar in 1738, where it was assigned to 24 November. In the 1908 Gradual the introit antiphon is *Os iusti meditabitur* (still on 24 November). In the 1962 Missal the introit antiphon is *In medio Ecclesiae* (taken from the Commons; the feast was still on 24 November). In the 1974 Gradual, the antiphon assigned is again *Os iusti meditabitur* and, as of 1969, the feast had been transferred to 14 December (the anniversary of his death; made possible by the suppression of the Octave the Immaculate Conception). In the post-Conciliar editions of the *Missale Romanum*, the antiphon is *Mihi autem absit gloriari*.

<sup>119</sup> It is less likely that the original liturgical assignment was the Exaltation of the Cross, which is also an ancient commemoration. See Talley, *Origins of the Liturgical Year*, 47.



addition, the feasts of Ignatius of Antioch,<sup>120</sup> the Stigmata of Francis of Assisi, and of Francis of Assisi<sup>121</sup> were assigned the similar antiphon text *Mihi autem absit gloriari*, which directly quotes Galatians 6:14.<sup>122</sup> In the post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum*, the antiphons for Ignatius and Francis were changed to *Nos autem gloriari*.

The early proliferation of the antiphon probably speaks to its popularity and success in communicating the necessary themes regarding the Cross in relation to certain feasts. The reasons for the replacement of *Mihi autem absit gloriari* with *Nos autem gloriari* in the 1974 *Graduale Romanum* are not known, but one can guess the change was an attempt at simplifying the repertoire. Perhaps the collective “*nos*” was deemed preferable to the singular “*mihi*.”

From at least the mid-twentieth century, however, one can see a parallel trend toward simplification and specificity. The feast of the Finding of the Cross, which was likely seen as an unnecessary thematic duplication of the Exaltation of the Holy Cross,<sup>123</sup> was removed from the universal calendar in 1955. In the post-Conciliar calendar, the feast of the Stigmata of Francis of Assisi was removed, again to simplify the calendar and to avoid any duplication

---

<sup>120</sup> The commemoration of Ignatius of Antioch can be called a “feast of the Cross” for several reasons. In his famous *Letter to the Smyrnaeans* (c. 110) he argues against docetism, emphasizing that Jesus truly suffered in the flesh (2:1) on the cross, and that the Eucharist is indeed Christ’s flesh (7:1). Further, the letter begins, “I Glorify God, even Jesus Christ, who has given you such wisdom. For I have observed that you are perfected in an immovable faith, as if you were *nailed to the cross* of our Lord Jesus Christ, both in the flesh and in the spirit” (1:1, my italics). There is also a tradition that sees Ignatius’s journey to Rome for martyrdom, during which he wrote his seven letters to the Christian churches, as his own Way of the Cross.

<sup>121</sup> Francis’s association with the Cross is strong, given his experience of the stigmata.

<sup>122</sup> The appropriation of the scriptural tradition is much more complex in *Nos autem gloriari*, as will be shown later in this chapter.

<sup>123</sup> Though at that time in the Roman Church, the feasts commemorated two different occasions: the feast of the Exaltation of the Cross the retrieval of the Cross from the Persians, and the “Invention” of the Cross the finding of the Cross by St. Helen.

of the 4 October commemoration of Francis.<sup>124</sup> The trend toward specificity in terms of the proper chants of the Mass is especially clear in the post-Conciliar *Missale Romanum*, which reflects a more advanced stage of liturgical reform than do the post-Conciliar *Graduale Romanum* and *Graduale Simplex*. In the *Missale Romanum*, Tuesday of Holy Week, Francis of Assisi, and Ignatius of Antioch are assigned unique entrance antiphons other than *Nos autem gloriari*. As a result, *Nos autem gloriari* now appears only three times in the post-Conciliar Missal—Holy Thursday,<sup>125</sup> the Exaltation of the Cross, and the votive Mass of the Cross. It is also true that in the reformed Missal there is now only one occurrence of the related antiphon *Mihi autem absit gloriari*, for St. John of the Cross.

---

<sup>124</sup> This feast was removed from the liturgical calendar by Pius V in his 1570 *Missale Romanum* as part of a general program of simplification, but later reintroduced by Urban VIII.

<sup>125</sup> It is interesting that the *Graduale Simplex* provides a second option for the introit on Holy Thursday evening: *Sacerdos in aeternum* with Psalm 109 (*Dixit Dominus Domino meo*) from the Solemnity of the Most Holy Body and Blood of Christ. This antiphon emphasizes the institution of the ordained priesthood and thus moves away from the broader theme of *Nos autem gloriari*.

*The Antiphon's Use of the Biblical Text*

**Table 6** Source Texts of the Antiphon *Nos autem gloriari*

<b>Antiphon</b>	Nos autem gloriari oportet in cruce Domini nostri Iesu Christi, in quo est salus, vita et resurrectio nostra, per quem salvati et liberati sumus.	
	<b><u>Latin Vulgate</u></b>	<b><u>Douay-Rheims</u></b> (American Edition, 1899) <sup>126</sup>
<b>Galatians 6:14</b>	mihi autem absit gloriari nisi in cruce Domini nostri Iesu Christi per quem mihi mundus crucifixus est et ego mundo	But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ; by whom the world is crucified to me, and I to the world.
<b>John 11:25</b>	dixit ei Iesus ego sum resurrectio et vita qui credit in me et si mortuus fuerit vivet	Jesus said to her: I am the resurrection and the life: he that believeth in me, although he be dead, shall live:
<b>1 Corinthians 1:28-31</b>	et ignobilia mundi et contemptibilia elegit Deus et quae non sunt ut ea quae sunt destrueret  ut non gloriatur omnis caro in conspectu eius  ex ipso autem vos estis in Christo Iesu qui factus est sapientia nobis a Deo et iustitia et sanctificatio et redemptio  ut quemadmodum scriptum est qui gloriatur in Domino gloriatur	and the base things of the world, and the things that are contemptible, hath God chosen, and things that are not, that he might bring to naught things that are:  That no flesh should glory in his sight.  But of him are you in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and justice, and sanctification, and redemption:  That, as it is written: He that glorieth, may glory in the Lord.
<b>Psalms 7:2</b>	Domine Deus meus in te speravi salvum me fac ex omnibus persequentibus me et libera me	O Lord my God, in thee have I put my trust: save me from all them that persecute me, and deliver me.

<sup>126</sup> The Douay-Rheims translation is employed here because it is the one that most closely matches the Latin Vulgate from which most of the antiphons are derived. The translation is in the Public Domain.

<b>Psalm 70:2</b>	in iustitia tua libera me et eripe me inclina ad me aurem tuam et salva me	Deliver me in thy justice, and rescue me. Incline thy ear unto me, and save me.
<b>Psalm 107:7</b>	ut liberentur dilecti tui salvum fac dextera tua et exaudi me	That thy beloved may be delivered. Save with thy right hand and hear me.
<b>Daniel 3:88</b>	quia eruit nos de inferno et salvos fecit de manu mortis et liberavit de medio ardentis flammae et de medio ignis eruit nos	For he hath delivered us from hell, and saved us out of the hand of death, and delivered us out of the midst of the burning flame, and saved us out of the midst of the fire.
<b>4 Esdras 12:34</b>	nam residuum populum meum liberabit cum misericordia, qui salvati sunt super fines meos, et iucundabit eos, quoadusque veniat finis, dies iudicii, de quo locutus sum tibi ab initio.	But in mercy he will set free the remnant of my people, those who have been saved throughout my borders, and he will make them joyful until the end comes, the day of judgment, of which I spoke to you at the beginning (NRSV).
<b>2 Timothy 4:18</b>	liberabit me Dominus ab omni opere malo et salvum faciet in regnum suum caeleste cui gloria in saecula saeculorum amen	The Lord hath delivered me from every evil work: and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom, to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.
<b>Deuteronomy 7:12-13</b>	si postquam audieris haec iudicia custodieris ea et feceris custodiet et Dominus Deus tuus tibi pactum et misericordiam quam iuravit patribus tuis	If after thou hast heard these judgments, thou keep and do them, the Lord thy God will also keep his covenant to thee, and the mercy which he swore to thy fathers:
	et diliget te ac multiplicabit benedicetque fructui ventris tui et fructui terrae tuae frumento tuo atque vindemiae oleo et armentis gregibus ovium tuarum super terram pro qua iuravit patribus tuis ut daret eam tibi	And he will love thee and multiply thee, and will bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy vintage, thy oil, and thy herds, and the flocks of thy sheep upon the land, for which he swore to thy fathers that he would give it thee.

As has been said above, antiphons reflect a tradition of biblical interpretation and appropriation more so than they are scriptural quotations. The textual sources of the antiphon also comprise part of its context. The primary text appropriated by the antiphon is Galatians

6:14.<sup>127</sup> Marc-Daniel Kirby asserts that the antiphon's list of benefits (*salus, vita, resurrectio*) "are to be compared with" the list found in Deuteronomy 7:12, which pertain to faithful observance of the Law.<sup>128</sup> But this comparison only applies by means of *ex post facto* theological interpretation of the antiphon. There is no evidence that the Deuteronomy text is one of the antiphon's sources.

In the *Rheinau* manuscript—one of the earliest of the *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex* manuscripts—the *Nos autem gloriari* antiphon does not contain the word "*salus*," but only "*vita*" and "*resurrectio*." It is possible, then, that this form of the antiphon reflects an earlier stage of development, and that the source text for this section of the antiphon is John 11:25, which speaks of "*resurrectio et vita*." The equally early manuscript of *Mont-Blandin*, however, does contain the word "*salus*," as do *Compiègne* and *Corbie*. The full text of the antiphon is not found in the *Senlis* manuscript. This possibility implies one of three things: that at some point early on the word "*salus*" was added to the antiphon, that *Rheinau* reflects a variant textual tradition for this antiphon, or that the scribe inadvertently left out the word "*salus*" when copying the manuscript. The latter is the most likely, especially since a variation in the text would also imply a variation in what by that time was almost certainly a common melodic tradition. It is also possible that John 11:25 was the inspiration for this part of the antiphon text in all of the manuscripts, or that some Old Latin version of John 11:25 included the word "*salus*." But all these possibilities, however interesting and plausible, cannot be proven based on the extant evidence.

---

<sup>127</sup> The post-Conciliar Missal provides the citation as "Cf. Gal 6.14."

<sup>128</sup> Kirby, "Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum," 96.

Kirby's argument that 1 Corinthians 1:28-31 was the inspiration for the second half of the antiphon (beginning *in quo est salus*) is more convincing. The list of benefits found in 1 Corinthians 1:30 (wisdom, justice, sanctification, redemption) could have been the inspiration for the list in the antiphon, and the appearance of *gloriari* in both the antiphon and the scripture passage might indicate some relationship between the two texts.<sup>129</sup> Still, this connection is not self-evident. The final phrase, "*salvati et liberati sumus*" could have been adapted from any number of biblical texts. Forms of the words "*salvati*" and "*liberati*" occur together in Scripture only sixteen times, and of these a smaller number are possible source texts (see Table 6 above). 2 Timothy 4:18 seems the most likely candidate, though it is possible the words were so common to Christian parlance when the antiphon was composed as to require no direct textual source.

*Nos autem gloriari* employs several methods of textual adaptation typical of liturgical antiphons in order to express its Cross-centered theme or theology.<sup>130</sup> The antiphon *substitutes* the singular "*mihi*" of Galatians 6:14 with the plural "*nos*." It also *omits* "*absit*" and "*nisi*." If 1 Corinthians is indeed a source text, then bits and pieces of it were incorporated into the antiphon through *centonization*. The antiphon could also be said to *substitute* the benefits listed in the Corinthians text with other benefits. Finally, either *enhancement* was employed with the addition of the final phrase "*salvati et liberati sumus*," or *centonization* and *paraphrase*, if the phrase has a biblical source.

---

<sup>129</sup> Ibid., 97.

<sup>130</sup> See the discussion of the use of biblical texts in antiphons in chapter 1; and Kirby, "Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum," 96.

*Theological Themes and Ideas Expressed by the Chant in Context*

The introit *Nos autem gloriari* functions in a multi-layered liturgical context. First, the chant functions as the song that accompanies the entrance of the ministers. Second, it functions as the entrance song for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper, at which "the Church begins the Easter Triduum" (*Ceremoniale Episcoporum* 297) and which serves to commemorate "the institution of the Eucharist,<sup>131</sup> the institution of the priesthood, and Christ's command of brotherly love" (*Paschalis solemnitatis* 45). Third, it functions as the first text of the great Easter Triduum, wherein "is celebrated the paschal mystery, that is, the passing of the Lord from this world to his Father. The Church, by the celebration of this mystery through liturgical signs and sacramentals, is united to Christ, her spouse, in intimate communion" (*Paschalis solemnitatis* 38). Thus, the theological themes and connections are multivalent, depending not only on these layers of liturgical context, but also upon the singers and/or hearers of the chant.<sup>132</sup> Some will hear the antiphon as talking about grace received (the fully initiated among the assembly), others grace restored (penitents who were reconciled to the Church on Thursday morning), and others grace to come (the elect and those to be received into full communion at the Easter Vigil).<sup>133</sup>

The Church throughout the liturgical year moves from mystery to mystery, but also within the one Great Mystery—that is the mystery of the Cross through which people are saved from death through Jesus' death and his rising in glory. As Pfatteicher notes, "The

---

<sup>131</sup> The *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* (3) states that "the Christian people are drawn on Thursday in Holy Week, which is the day of the Lord's Supper . . . to show particular devotion towards this wonderful Sacrament."

<sup>132</sup> See Kirby, "Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum," 100.

<sup>133</sup> See *Ibid.*, 100-101.

mystery of the risen Christ is so radically different from all human expectations” that the entire Triduum and indeed the entire Easter Season and liturgical year are required “liturgically to ponder it.”<sup>134</sup> *Nos autem gloriari* both begins the Triduum and reaches forward to Easter Sunday,<sup>135</sup> telescoping the suffering of the Cross, wherein is found “*salus, vita et resurrectio nostra*,” into the glory of the resurrection “*per quem salvati et liberati sumus*.” The introit is both a lens through which to view the Triduum and the climax of the previous holy week. It also announces the joyous sense of relief that follows Lent—our fasting is over and our salvation finally at hand.

The ritual function of *Nos autem gloriari* is the same as any other introit—to accompany the entrance of the ministers, to open the celebration, and to unite the assembly through common song. The introit urges the assembly to action—to gather, to sing together, to worship. This particular introit is especially effective in this regard, however, with its use of the plural/collective “*nos*.” This word reflects and emphasizes the exceptionally communal nature of Holy Thursday: “According to the ancient tradition of the Church, all Masses without the participation of the people are on this day forbidden” (*Paschalis solemnitatis* 47).<sup>136</sup>

---

<sup>134</sup> Philip H. Pfatteicher, *Commentary on the Lutheran Book of Worship: Lutheran Liturgy in Its Ecumenical Context*. (Minneapolis: Augsburg Fortress, 1990), 292.

<sup>135</sup> Note that both *Nos autem gloriari* and the introit for Easter Sunday are in mode 4, “subtly suggesting that the Cross and the Resurrection are two facets of a single mystery.” Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum,” 99.

<sup>136</sup> The document also states that “hosts for the Communion of the faithful should be consecrated during that celebration [and] . . . the Eucharist [is to be] borne directly from the altar . . . at the moment of communion for the sick and infirm who must communicate at home, so that in this way they may be more closely united to the celebrating Church (*Paschalis solemnitatis* 48, 54). This is always the norm, but the Holy See found it necessary to emphasize this norm for Holy Thursday. Admittedly, every celebration of the Eucharist is inherently communal.



Its particular theological function, however, is unique among introits. Rather than announcing the themes of the Holy Thursday Mass (Eucharist, Priesthood, *Mandatum; Paschalis solemnitatis* 45), it announces the entirety of the Triduum by inviting the assembly into, as Kirby says, “the wider context of a universal soteriology, and a confession of the benefits that ever flow from the glorious and glorifying Cross of Christ.”<sup>137</sup> The sung antiphon connects the glorification of the assembly in Jesus’ Cross to their glorification in his resurrection, and its psalm verses express their praise and wonderment. The Cross serves as a bridge between Lent and Easter—as both an instrument of death and the tree of life. The antiphon reflects this dichotomy, which is the great mystery of salvation. By means of the other liturgical texts of the Mass of the Lord’s Supper, this over-arching theology of the Cross as expressed in the introit is bound to the institution of the Eucharist and the other themes particular to the day.<sup>138</sup> The connection between Jesus’ death on the Cross and the Lord’s Supper is made in the Collect:

We gather, O God, for the most sacred Supper,  
in which your Only Begotten Son,  
*when he was about to hand himself over to death,*  
entrusted to the Church for ever  
the new sacrifice and the banquet of his love;  
grant us, we pray,  
that out of so great a mystery  
we may draw the fullness of charity and life.  
Through our Lord . . .;<sup>139</sup>

---

<sup>137</sup> Kirby, “Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum,” 101.

<sup>138</sup> See also *ibid.*, 99-100.

<sup>139</sup> Trans., ICEL, 2010.

But the connection is even more effectively made in the Responsorial Psalm (Psalm 116:12-13, 15-16bc, 17-18; 1 Cor 10:16), where the imagery of “blood” and “death” is clearly linked to the eucharistic “cup” and “sacrifice of thanksgiving:”

R. Our blessing-cup is a communion with the Blood of Christ.

How shall I make a return to the Lord for all the good he has done for me?  
The cup of salvation I will take up, and I will call upon the name of the Lord.  
R.

Precious in the eyes of the Lord is the death of his faithful ones.  
I am your servant, the son of your handmaid; you have loosed my bonds. R.

To you will I offer sacrifice of thanksgiving, and I will call upon the name of the Lord.  
My vows to the Lord I will pay in the presence of all his people. R.

Thereby, the profound paradox of the Eucharist is revealed. The joyous *koinonia* of the Mass is firmly rooted in the bloody sacrifice of the Cross.

#### Choosing an Entrance Song: The Principle of Facilitation<sup>140</sup>

What, then, should Catholics sing at the beginning of the Mass? Chapter three included several models and examples, and now we put forth some specific criteria for selecting entrance songs at particular celebrations. These criteria—functional, aesthetic, pastoral, and traditional—are grounded in the “liturgical,” “pastoral,” and “musical” judgments of *Sing to the Lord* 127-36. As always, the effective application of these criteria must be contextually driven, and one set of criteria must always be applied in conversation with the other three.

---

<sup>140</sup> The term “enactment” might be preferable to “facilitation,” but the latter has been retained because it fits better with the models delineated in Parson’s article.

*Is the Song Functionally Appropriate?*

Here, liturgical function pertains to both the ritual and theological function of the entrance song, which as was shown earlier in this chapter cannot really be separated. Simply said, liturgical music should cohere in style and text with the purpose of the rite.<sup>141</sup>

- Is the song processional music? Music that is to accompany a procession should match fairly closely the speed at which the procession will be moving, and should match a particular culture's idea of what type of music is appropriate for processions (see *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 47).
- Can the song's musical form be accommodated to fit the variable length of an entrance procession (see *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 47)?
- Does the music set the appropriate tone for the celebration? In other words, can it effectively open the celebration and is it appropriately festive, solemn, and so forth (see *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 46-47)?
- Does the text announce the day's particular feast by drawing upon the textual tradition of the Church (see *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 47)?
- Is the text (if it is an original text) or translation of the text (if it is the proper chant of the day) suitable for singing and sufficiently engaging so as to bear repetition (see *Liturgiam authenticam* 62)?
- Does the enactment of the entrance song allow all gathered to actively participate in the manner proper to their liturgical role (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 28)? This implies both that the active participation of the assembly must be facilitated, and that, when

---

<sup>141</sup> K. Irwin, *Context and Text*, 237. See also *ibid.*, 238-39, 245 on "intrinsicity" and "genre."

fitting, the cantor and choir should not hesitate to sing the entrance song on their own, which according to tradition and ecclesiastical norms is a function proper to their ministry. Mutual respect is always paramount in this regard, in order to avoid abuses of power or conflicts of interest between different liturgical ministries.

*Is the Song Aesthetically Appropriate?*

Aesthetic appropriateness and adequacy are to some degree contingent upon the cultural context of the group engaging in the ritual action,<sup>142</sup> and thus specific aesthetic principles and judgments are difficult to establish. It is possible to suggest some general criteria, nevertheless. Most basically, liturgical music must be of high quality, whatever way “quality” is defined in a particular context.

- Does the song bring beauty to the liturgical celebration? “Beauty” implies a degree of musical (melodic, harmonic, rhythmic) complexity and memorability. Chapter two emphasized the importance of singing in the liturgy; beauty comprises part of this importance (see *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 112, *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 39-40, *Sing to the Lord* 1-2).
- Is the text of the song a quality text?<sup>143</sup> If it is an original text, does it draw “from Sacred Scripture or from the liturgical patrimony” (*Liturgiam authenticam* 61)? Do original texts reflect the literary and rhetorical genre of the Roman Rite introit as far

---

<sup>142</sup> See *ibid.*, 221, 250.

<sup>143</sup> Quality is difficult to define and its standards, always culture-specific, can be reached in a variety of ways. As David Power reminds us, “Those texts survive best which have a rhetorical and poetic force. In their creative power, they both make connections with the past and are open to interpretations that point to the future that may arise out of the present that is being lived through.” D. Power, *Word of the Lord*, 45.

as possible (*Liturgiam authenticam* 58)? To be sure, the survival of antiphon texts for centuries speaks to their quality.

*Is the Song Pastorally Appropriate?*

This criterion is arguably the most important and most contextually-determined. If a song is of high quality from a musical/textual perspective, and if it functions effectively as an entrance song, what good is it unless it successfully engages a particular assembly within a particular celebration of the Mass, thereby appropriating and passing on the its theological themes? It is especially for pastoral reasons that the *lex agendi* must always be emphasized as methodologically important,<sup>144</sup> because it is through the actual performance of the liturgy that the theology of the entrance song is truly “communicated and created by and for the Church.”<sup>145</sup>

- Does the song enable and promote the active participation of the assembly (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 14)?<sup>146</sup> Without an actively participatory and engaged assembly, none of the ritual and theological functions of the entrance song can come to fruition in a particular celebration of the Mass. Active participation can mean a variety of things, and how it is achieved will vary depending upon the type of song (see *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 30). The assembly might sing the entire song, or it might be sung in dialogue with the cantor or choir. Though congregational singing is

---

<sup>144</sup> See the introduction to this study; and K. Irwin, *Context and Text*, 55, 219, 229, 233.

<sup>145</sup> Margaret Mary Kelleher, “Liturgy: An Ecclesial Act of Meaning,” *Worship* 59:6 (November 1985): 489. See also K. Irwin, *Context and Text*, 65, 230-31. One can assume a perfect assimilation by the assembly of the theology almost never happens, given the unavoidable imperfections in human communication (individual and communal neuroses[in the technical sense of the word], mistakes or variations in performance or pronunciation, faulty acoustics, and so on). The reader-response model of sociological analysis might be one effective way to evaluate the appropriation of theology to the assembly.

<sup>146</sup> See also Parsons, “Text, Tone, and Context,” 58, 68.

the norm (*Sing to the Lord* 28-30), the choir might even sing the entire song. When the choir sings the entrance song, it is crucial that the assembly participates by active listening (*Musicam Sacram* 15). In such cases, one must ask if the song is in a style comprehensible to the assembly; if not, another song should be chosen or time taken to make it familiar.

- Can the song be enacted effectively in a particular assembly? Liturgy is an event, not only a prescribed ritual spelled out in liturgical books,<sup>147</sup> and thus the entrance song is, among other things, a musical performance.<sup>148</sup> This implies both that pastors need to strive to ensure that their assemblies have the best musical leadership possible, and that directors of music make sure a song is not beyond the skills of the musicians and the rest of the assembly, while at the same time working constantly to improve these skills (see *Sing to the Lord* 45, 120-21). The development of a parish-specific repertoire—related, of course, to the broader diocesan, national, cultural, and universal repertoires—is crucial in this regard.
- Does the song help to unite the assembly (*General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 47)? This unitive quality of the entrance song relates to active participation and effective performance. Chapter two has shown that singing is one of the primary means of establishing unity among a liturgical assembly. The assembly, therefore, must be afforded the opportunity to participate in it and must be able to sing it naturally, even instinctively.

---

<sup>147</sup> See Zimmerman, *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*, 19.

<sup>148</sup> “Performance” here means “something accomplished or done” not an “artistic presentation” as at a concert or play.

- Does the song dispose the assembly to listen to the Word of God and celebrate the Eucharist worthily (*General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 46)? This is a rather amorphous requirement of the entrance song and one difficult to define for particular celebrations. Quality of text and music come into play again here, however, as does the source of an entrance song text. A song of high quality is more likely to engage the assembly and bring them to the prayerful and celebratory state of mind proper to the Mass. The corpus of ancient proper introits is one certain source of texts that can achieve this requirement. They are of high quality and often relate to the texts that will be proclaimed in the rest of the liturgy. Composers of new entrance song texts should take the ancient tradition as the paradigm, while at the same time working to find new ways to properly “dispose the assembly.”
- All else being equal, the effective communication of the theology of an entrance song can be assumed to occur to the degree inculturation has been successfully achieved. Is, then, the song appropriate to its specific cultural context? If the song is newly-composed, it should avoid textual imagery or musical styles that might be considered oppressive<sup>149</sup> within its specific context, while at the same time taking the opportunity when it presents itself to challenge cultural characteristics that might be contrary to the Gospel (*Sacrosanctum Concilium* 37). Liturgical music both reflects and forms culture. This also means that, to be useful, theological reflection upon the

---

<sup>149</sup> For example, certain words or phrases might be considered racist, sexist, etc.; minority groups might associate a particular musical style with groups or cultures that oppress them or discriminate against them.

music of the liturgy must always be stated in terms relevant to the context of the music under consideration.<sup>150</sup>

*Is the Song Faithful to the Broad Tradition of the Roman Rite?: Creative Fidelity*

In larger churches where the resources permit, a more ample use should be made of the Church's musical heritage both ancient and modern, always ensuring that this does not impede the active participation of the faithful (*Paschalis solemnitatis* 42).

The pervasiveness throughout history of musical creativity couched in fidelity to tradition offers an over-arching criterion for choosing and composing entrance songs today. In its origins, the introit was an adaptation to imperial Roman liturgy and the basilica setting. Popular enthusiasm for the psalms also influenced the shape of the Roman Rite, including the proper chants of the Mass. Harmonic embellishment of the introit antiphon and psalm verses was common throughout history, beginning with improvised parallel harmonies, and eventually resulting in polyphonic settings by medieval and renaissance liturgical composers. Introit tropes of the Middle Ages are another example of creativity. After the decline of such creativity—which was itself a form of cultural adaptation—it makes sense that over time other types of music more accessible to the liturgical assembly have in practice come to replace the proper chants. But it is possible to utilize, adapt or derive from the proper chant tradition music that is both accessible *and* faithful to tradition.

The above examples of creative fidelity to tradition can act as a guide to such adaptation of the entrance song tradition in our present-day context. Not least, following their

---

<sup>150</sup> See K. Irwin, *Context and Text*, 54, 229, 251 on contextualization. One must ask, for example, how does this particular culture view and interpret this particular type of music. As Judith Kubicki explains, “The meaning mediated by music can be discovered when, like all symbols, it is interpreted in relationship with the whole of which it is a part. Hence the importance of accounting for context, cultural codes and the experience-domain of the community, as individuals, and as a social group.” Kubicki, *Liturgical Music as Ritual Symbol*, 192.



lead allows the entrance song to be an outlet for the musical creativity and genius of our own age. The treasures of the Church's musical heritage should be utilized when possible,<sup>151</sup> but it is important to emphasize again that it is not useful or possible to return to an exclusive use of the introit in the present-day celebration of the Mass. The introit's original context is no longer our context, and other song traditions have since flowered that have by now also become customary and traditional.<sup>152</sup>

Nevertheless, the present-day entrance song is a genre or ritual unit by which to transmit the ancient introit tradition into twenty-first century contexts. It is especially useful to do so because this ancient tradition offers an example of effective entrance song practice, which might help the Church today through its confusion regarding the entrance song in the Roman Rite. Its musical form might be duplicated in new musical settings, its melodies adapted to vernacular translations, its proper texts—with their rich theological insights and festal particularity—might and should serve as the basis or inspiration for newly-composed entrance song texts. All of these characteristics of the introit offer not only a model for effective enactment, but also enable the official proper texts and melodies to function as a means of maintaining communion in the Roman Rite through a common textual and musical tradition. As Peter Jeffery and Margot Fassler advise:

---

<sup>151</sup> See *Paschalis solemnitatis* 42; and *Liturgiam authenticam* 62: "Certain liturgical texts of ecclesiastical composition are associated with ritual actions expressed by a particular posture, gesture, or the use of signs." On the other hand, the Consilium cautioned that "we cannot ask the people to learn a set of songs which, no matter how short and simple, is completely new each Sunday and feast day. The important thing, therefore, is that the chants maintain and underscore the concepts that inspire a season or feast rather than that the congregation be bound to a text proper to a particular melodic form with which is closely connected." Consilium, 6 November 1966, as quoted in Bugnini, *Reform of the Liturgy*, 895.

<sup>152</sup> See *Paschalis solemnitatis* 42.

Just as theology today cannot ignore the historical development of doctrine from the early church to the present, so our musical life will not be healthy if it is expected to operate in a historical vacuum cut off from the past. The continued study and performance of this treasury of sacred music are therefore not optional but essential, and would have the beneficial side-effect of dramatically improving the standards of quality expected of all the other kinds of music performed in modern worship.<sup>153</sup>

It is worthwhile, therefore, to plumb the depths of the entrance song tradition—the official introit texts and melodies as well as past forms of creative fidelity—for solutions to the contemporary pastoral problem.<sup>154</sup>

#### Choosing an Entrance Song for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper

To be sure, no one song or type of song can meet all of the above criteria. The choice of a song, furthermore, must always take into consideration the particular context in which it will be sung. Nevertheless, a few suggestions in the abstract can help to clarify the purpose of the functional, aesthetic, pastoral, and traditional characteristics of an ideal entrance song. The repertoire currently available is quite limited. One can hope that in the future composers will produce new settings that reflect even more creative solutions to the problem.

Anthony Corvaia's "Come, Let Us Glory" (2002)<sup>155</sup> meets all of the necessary criteria to some degree. Its particular musical form—a metrical refrain with verses—suits the function of an entrance song in that its length can vary with the length of the entrance procession. Pastorally, the song facilitates active participation; it is in the vernacular can be sung entirely by the assembly. The hymn tune, Wareham, is a melody from the eighteenth

---

<sup>153</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, "Christian Liturgical Music," 116.

<sup>154</sup> Other long-standing entrance song traditions such as the hymn also offer insights into a solution to the problem. See Ruff, *Sacred Music and Liturgical Reform*, 508-611.

<sup>155</sup> See Example 9 above.

century that has stood the test of time. The text is a fairly successful poetic translation, though the adaptation of the antiphon is more successful than of the psalm verses. This song uses the traditional text of the introit antiphon and psalm and thus passes on the ancient textual tradition of the Roman Rite.

Paul Ford has composed an English-language adaptation of both the text and melody of the *Nos autem gloriari* chant from the *Graduale Simplex* (1999).<sup>156</sup> Thus, it passes on not only the textual tradition, but also the melodic tradition of the Roman Rite.<sup>157</sup> Like Corvaia's setting, it mirrors the variable-length musical form of the Latin chant. The setting affords ample opportunity for active participation in that the antiphon is to be sung by the assembly, and the verses by a cantor or schola. The psalm verses are taken from the NRSV translation of the Bible, and thus are of high quality, though one could argue a more poetic translation of the Psalms such as the Grail would be more appropriate for singing.

Another setting of a vernacular translation of the traditional antiphon and psalm verses has been composed by the Collegeville Composers Group (2008).<sup>158</sup> Like Ford's setting, it has a variable-length musical form and utilizes the traditional text. This setting provides harmonization in its setting of the psalm verses—an embellishment that harkens to the ancient tradition of chant harmonization discussed in chapter one. It does not, however, adapt the *Graduale Simplex* melody, providing instead a metrical setting. In many contexts

---

<sup>156</sup> See Example 7 above.

<sup>157</sup> Of course, the melody in the *Graduale Simplex* is newly adapted to the *Nos autem gloriari* text, and not an adaptation of the ancient melody found in the *Graduale Romanum*. Nevertheless, the melody is itself ancient, and in a way normative in that it is contained in an official liturgical book.

<sup>158</sup> See Example 12 above. Recalling the fact that the antiphon text of the *Graduale Simplex* is a truncated version of the full antiphon text found in the *Graduale Romanum*, new vernacular settings that incorporate the entire antiphon text might prove useful.

this metrical setting might be more pastorally appropriate because assemblies are often more familiar with metrical music than with chant. The psalm verses are taken from the Grail translation, which when compared to the NRSV translation in Ford's setting seem much more aesthetically pleasing and singable.

Finally, in some contexts the entrance song on Holy Thursday evening might be sung by the choir alone. In this case, the repertoire is extremely limited. Here one must look mainly to the past to find musical settings, and to a future in which choral composers will again turn their attention to the proper texts of the Mass. One option would be for the choir to sing the entirety of the introit as found in the *Graduale Romanum*, which is too complex for congregational singing.<sup>159</sup> Alternatively, the choir could sing a polyphonic setting.<sup>160</sup> Annibale Stabile's (1525-1595) eight-voice setting of *Nos autem gloriari* (pub. 1607), while excellent, would require a choir comprised of highly skilled singers. The setting also utilizes *basso continuo*,<sup>161</sup> so would require one or more instrumentalists. Giovanni Pierluigi da Palestrina (1524-1594), a contemporary of Stabile, composed an unaccompanied setting of the proper text for four voices. This setting would be accessible to choirs of at least intermediate skill. The later Iberian composer Manuel Cardoso (1566-1650) also composed an unaccompanied setting of *Nos autem gloriari* for five voices of similar difficulty. A modern choral setting has been composed by Grayston Ives (1997). The motet is finely crafted, but perhaps too difficult and lengthy (almost five minutes) for liturgical use. In each

---

<sup>159</sup> See Example 5 above.

<sup>160</sup> See Appendix B of this study.

<sup>161</sup> An accompaniment typical of the early Baroque period in music (1600-1750) that provides harmonic structure and is realized (improvised) around a simple bass line provided in the score.

of these polyphonic settings, great care has been taken to ensure the comprehensibility of the text. Because most assemblies today do not understand Latin, however, a vernacular translation would need to be made available. In addition, their length is not variable, except in cases where the entrance procession is extremely long, allowing for the singing of psalm verses in between repetitions of the polyphony.

The task ahead is not a matter of prescribing or proscribing particular liturgical musical forms and texts for the entrance song. Such a task would be immense given the thousands of songs available, both ancient and contemporary, not to mention the fact that it would inevitably cause conflict between advocates of particular musical styles. Not only this, but the task would need to be repeated for every particular culture, making it daunting if not impossible. Rather, the task must be rooted in the functional, aesthetic, pastoral, and traditional criteria above. In order to effectively apply these criteria, one must immerse oneself in the wealth of the liturgical-musical tradition that has come down to us so far. Then, with a close familiarity of this wealth in hand, liturgists and directors of music must discern what within the tradition meets the criteria within their context. At the same time, liturgical composers must take tradition and the functional, aesthetic, pastoral, and traditional criteria into account when creating new texts and musical settings.

## Chapter 5

### Conclusion—A Way Forward

The instigating question of this entire study has been: What should Catholics of the Roman Rite sing at the beginning of Mass? The study, grounded in the methodological principles articulated in its introduction, has proceeded in two stages in its attempt to answer this question. First, the context of the entrance song was explored through a consideration of its history and its place in ecclesiastical documents. The historical picture of the entrance song is complex. Chapter one began by discussing the foundational contexts and origins of Christian music and early Christian singing. The precise origins of the introit are lost to history, even if certain historical *terminus post quem* and *terminus ante quem* for the development of a proper chant tradition in the West can be gleaned from the historical record. Evidence of a fully-developed introit are found in the *Ordines Romani*, and in later liturgical manuscripts. From these manuscripts it is clear that by the eighth century the introit tradition had developed into a stable and fixed corpus of liturgical chants. The chant texts make use of scripture and other textual traditions of the Church in a variety of ways. From at least the ninth century, it is clear that introit texts and melodies were embellished through harmonization and the addition of text, leading eventually to polyphonic settings of the introit texts.

Chapter one spoke of the “dis-integration” of the entrance song’s form, function and theology in the Middle Ages. It also spoke of the entrance song in terms of the liturgical reforms of the Council of Trent and liturgical developments of the nineteenth and early-twentieth centuries. Chapter two made clear the fact that—at least in terms of the principles

put forth by the post-Conciliar ecclesiastical documents—the form, function and theology of the entrance song has now been restored or “re-integrated.” This conclusion was reached, first, through a consideration of the nature, implementation, and sources of liturgical norms after the Second Vatican Council. These norms were then considered insofar as they apply to the entrance song. And from this consideration the chapter arrived at several foundational norms for the post-Conciliar entrance song: the importance of singing in the liturgy, the active participation of the faithful, the fact that certain texts by their very nature should be sung, the translation of Latin liturgical texts to the vernacular, and the composition of new texts.

The second section of the study shifted from context to practical application. Chapter three delineated five models of the entrance song for use in present-day celebrations of the Eucharist. Indeed, given the insights and conclusions of chapters one and two, it is clear that the “re-integrated” post-Conciliar entrance song can be effectively enacted in a variety of ways. Chapter four articulated a theology of the entrance song organized around three characteristics fundamental to any liturgical-ritual unit: function, text, and facilitation. In terms of *function*, the chapter explored what the entrance song does (or should do) within the celebration of the Eucharist. Through a consideration of the introit *Nos autem gloriari* from the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord’s Supper, conclusions were drawn as to the function of a particular entrance song *text*. This inquiry necessitated a study of the origins and history of the Holy Thursday feast and the Paschal Triduum, as well as the way in which *Nos autem gloriari* made use of scripture and the particular theological themes expressed in the chant. Finally, in terms of *facilitation*, the chapter explored how to choose an entrance

song for use in a particular context, and then more specifically for the Holy Thursday Evening Mass of the Lord's Supper. Here, criteria fell into four categories: functionality, aesthetic quality, pastoral effectiveness, and fidelity to the tradition of the Roman Rite.

As this study draws to a close, it is important to recall that Conciliar liturgical reforms often take some time to come to fruition. The musical-liturgical directives of the Council of Trent, for example, initially met with resistance, but eventually found advocates among the great composers of the day.<sup>1</sup> After periods of fervent creativity and exploration, it is not unusual if there comes, as Philip Cavanaugh states, “a development in sensitivity toward propriety in liturgical music.”<sup>2</sup> The renewed interest in the proper chants of the Mass of late, evidenced by the number of vernacular collections published recently,<sup>3</sup> and the fact that *Sing to the Lord* seeks a middle ground through its even-handed treatment of both ancient and modern forms of liturgical music<sup>4</sup> reflect this propriety to a degree. And certainly, whether or

---

<sup>1</sup> The parallel between the musical reforms of Trent and Vatican II are rough, but real, in terms of the move toward a renewed appreciation and re-appropriation of earlier musical forms after a period of intense creativity. Philip Cavanaugh states, “Perhaps the perseverance in setting Proper items in a period in which more affective texts seemed to be preferred can be attributed to a development in sensitivity toward propriety in liturgical music. It is not unreasonable to assume that the Council of Trent, by insisting upon the implementation of the earlier reforms . . . succeeded in encouraging composers to respond to liturgical needs in the latter half of the century. Indeed, some composers—Vincenzo Ruffo and Constanzo Porta, for example—began to advertise their compositions as complying with the spirit of the Council. It is evident that the many settings utilizing plainsong melodies went far in meeting the requirements for liturgical music suggested by the Council. Such settings admirably renewed the centuries-old spirit of the Church regarding propriety in liturgical music which traditionally had given first place to Sacred Chant. Allowing for the development of polyphony, the Church saw these chant settings as an unfolding of the original basic plan. Finally, composers undoubtedly were influenced by the spirit of the humanists who saw in the texts of the *Proprium* a return to ‘the clean, the unadulterated form’ of the liturgy as practiced in Rome up to the eleventh century.” Cavanaugh, “Early Sixteenth-Century Cycles of Polyphonic Mass Propers, 161.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> See chapter 3.

<sup>4</sup> See Edward Schaefer's critique of *Sing to the Lord* in *Catholic Music Through the Ages: Balancing the Needs of a Worshipping Church* (Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2008), 175-78.



not one favors the changes they require, the translation principles of *Liturgiam authenticam* reflect this trend.

Almost immediately after the implementation of the Vatican II liturgical reform began, two directions for the future of liturgical music were set in motion. One, the congregational singing of Gregorian chant, is rooted firmly in the late nineteenth- and early twentieth-century Liturgical Movement. The movement saw in the liturgical chant tradition (itself renewed and reformed at that time through the study of early manuscripts) as an effective means of promoting the spiritual development and active participation of the assembly. The other, what Fassler and Jeffery call an “openness to the worldwide spectrum”<sup>5</sup> of music, sought to make the post-Conciliar rites more accessible to local congregations, more reflective of local cultural traditions, and more open to culture-specific musical forms and texts. Now, more than a century removed from the beginning of the Liturgical Movement and nearly fifty years after the Second Vatican Council, these two directions have evolved into long-standing customs.

What is necessary is what Fassler and Jeffery refer to as a “new synthesis”<sup>6</sup> of the two directions of the post-Conciliar development of liturgical music.<sup>7</sup> Such a synthesis is

---

<sup>5</sup> Fassler and Jeffery, “Christian Liturgical Music,” 115.

<sup>6</sup> Fassler and Jeffery recount that “for the first half of the twentieth century, the promotion of congregational singing of Gregorian chant was a major goal of the liturgical movement. After Vatican II, however, the disappearance of Latin and the new openness to the worldwide spectrum of folk and popular music led to a general abandonment of Gregorian chant and to a polarization between those church musicians who wished to preserve chant, polyphony, and classical music and those who thought it more important to promote popular music in the renewed liturgy. After a quarter-century standoff, however, it is time to move to a new synthesis.” *Ibid.*, 115.

<sup>7</sup> In the midst of the healthy yet sometimes overwhelming post-Conciliar musical diversity, the forthcoming “directory or repertory of texts intended for liturgical singing” (*Liturgiam authenticam* 108) from the USCCB will be useful. The directory indicates that the USCCB will eventually formulate a “core repertoire” of about sixty to one hundred songs. J. Michael McMahon notes that “it is not intended as an exclusive list of songs . . .

impossible as long as the either-or dichotomy prevails between the two directions, but it is crucial if the Roman Church in the U.S. is to move beyond the “liturgy wars” and toward the requisite love and charity that is fundamental to our communion. Those committed to the first direction must remember that Gregorian chant is itself a result of cultural adaptation and a synthesis of at least two older chant traditions (Frankish and Old Roman), and that Renaissance choral polyphony is the creative response of sixteenth and seventeenth century composers to the proper chant tradition. Thus neither chant nor polyphony are inherently unchangeable, superior, universally appropriate, or sacred (it is their liturgical context that makes them so). Those committed to the second direction, on the other hand, are sometimes so fervently opposed to anything that hints of liturgical traditionalism that they instinctively reject the use of Gregorian chant and polyphony, forgetting that even the most contemporary liturgical music is based upon centuries-old formal and tonal systems. To be sure, a complete separation from the musical traditions of the past is in reality impossible. Their unflinching advocacy of the liturgical principles of Vatican II is a great service to the Church, but disregard for the Church’s musical heritage—in the case of the proper chants of the Mass—is

---

but rather as a core set of selections that would appear in any published hymnal, service book, or periodical worship aid.” J. Michael McMahon, “Establishing Criteria for Liturgical Songs: The Directory for Music and Liturgy,” *Pastoral Music* 31:6 (August-September 2007): 18-19. Though it has not yet received the *recognitio*, the Directory will be helpful, especially because it seeks to guide, rather than restrict, musical creativity. It could serve as a wide and low-banked channel through which to direct the continuing renewal and future development of liturgical music in the Roman Rite in the U.S. The Holy See has called for such a collection since 1964. See Hermans, “Directory of Liturgical Songs in the Vernacular,” 55-61; Consilium, Epistle (25 March 1964); Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction *Constitutione apostolica* (20 October 1969), no. 12; Congregation for Divine Worship, Instruction *Liturgicae instaurationes* (5 September 1970), no. 3; Congregation for Bishops, Directory *Ecclesiae imago* (22 February 1973), no. 90; and the current *General Instruction of the Roman Missal* 48. The *Directory for Music and the Liturgy for use in the Dioceses of the United States of America* was approved by the USCCB in November 2006, and then submitted to the Holy See for *recognitio*. The document notes that liturgical songs “should be consonant with Catholic teaching and free from doctrinal error,” and that, taken together, the songs of a local repertoire “should reflect the full spectrum of the Catholic faith.” J. M. McMahon, “Establishing Criteria for Liturgical Songs,” 17-18.

to disregard the official texts of the Roman Rite and thus to diminish the pastoral effectiveness of the celebration of the liturgy, which is this second direction's most fundamental aim.

The synthesis is crucial to an integral implementation of the principles of the post-Conciliar liturgy, which demand *both* the preservation of our musical and textual tradition *and* active participation and cultural adaptation, not either-or (see *Sacrosanctum Concilium* 14, 37-40). Thus, the liturgical reform requires that these two post-Conciliar customs be put into conversation (a dialectic of customs). The criteria put forth in chapter four can serve as a foundation for this synthesis. And Christian charity, along with quality musical formation, can be the tools to instigate and guide the necessary conversation.

In this dialectic of customs, one must recognize the inherent multivalent nature of liturgical symbols, rites, and texts. Indeed, as Margaret Mary Kelleher notes, it is this “ambiguity of symbols which allows them to be multivocal.”<sup>8</sup> The entrance song at the celebration of the Eucharist is among these multivocal ritual elements and is thus able to mediate “meaning within and among such diverse collective subjects.”<sup>9</sup> The implications of this are at least fourfold. First, *orthopraxis*—involving such things as quality performance and active participation—and *orthodoxy*—which requires theologically sound and high-quality texts—are both crucial. The message communicated must not be foreign to the (admittedly broad) Catholic theological tradition and the song must be successfully sung if it

---

<sup>8</sup> Kelleher, “Liturgy: An Ecclesial Act of Meaning,” 496.

<sup>9</sup> *Ibid.*

is to put forward its multivalent message.<sup>10</sup> Second, cultural adaptation and music formation are essential. If a song is foreign to a particular context, or has not been made familiar through formation, it cannot achieve its purpose. Third, if liturgical symbols, rites, and texts are truly multivocal and multivalent, no entrance song is inherently incompatible with a particular culture. This fact can temper any trend toward cultural hyper-specificity in the choice of liturgical music. Fourth and finally, this dialectic of customs needs to be operative in the choice and creation of musical settings and texts. It is a complex task, continually to be worked out in practice, but it promises to bear fruit in more effective celebrations of the liturgy.

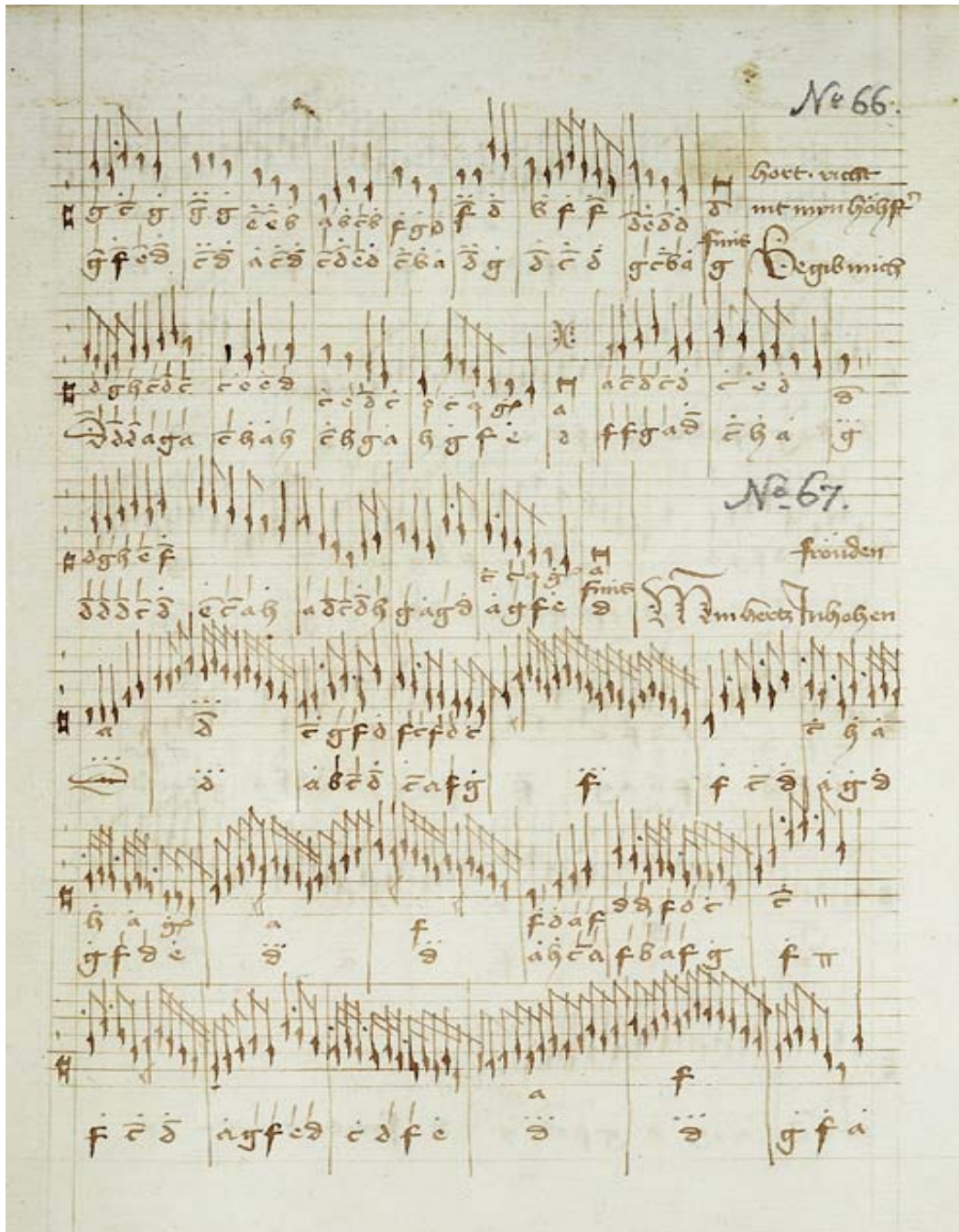
The liturgical reform of the Second Vatican Council is still a work in progress. Indeed, such a sweeping reform can *only* be worked out through the repeated experience of the enacted liturgy over time. For while the principles of the Council and the directives of post-Conciliar liturgical books and ecclesiastical documents can and must serve to guide the reform, their application is necessarily left to the celebration of the liturgy in particular parish communities. The Eucharist, which is celebrated again and again following Jesus' command to "do this in remembrance of me," provides ample opportunity for finding the way forward. A new stage in the reform of the music of the Roman Rite is underway, from which we can grasp the opportunity to develop ever-more effective means of enacting the entrance song. This study has sought to point us in the requisite direction.

---

<sup>10</sup> The meaning of text and music "may be altered or repressed in the performance." Kelleher, "Liturgy and the Christian Imagination," 135.

## APPENDIX A: INSTRUMENTAL INTROITS

### Example 15 Organ Mass Introit Versets from the *Buxheimer Orgelbuch* (c. 1470)<sup>1</sup>



<sup>1</sup> Mus. ms. 3725, fol. 169r. Image is in the Public Domain. See also E. Southern, *The Buxheim Organ Book* (Brooklyn, NY, 1963); and H. R. Zöbele, *Die Musik des Buxheimer Orgelbuchs: Spielvorgang, Niederschrift, Herkunft, Faktur* (Tutzing: Schneider, 1964).

**Example 16** Organ Mass Introit Versets from Girolamo Frescobaldi's *Fiori Musicali* (1635)<sup>2</sup>

TOCCATA  
Avanti la Messa  
della Domenica<sup>2)</sup>

Adasio<sup>2)</sup>

24  
TOCCATA  
avanti la Messa  
delli Apostoli<sup>2)</sup>

TOCCATA  
avanti la Messa  
della Madonna<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Girolamo Frescobaldi, *Orgel und Klavierwerke Gesamtausg. Nach dem Urtext hrsg. von Pierre Pidoux*, vol. 5 (Kassel: Barenreiter-Verlag, 1957).



**Example 17** Improvisatory Organ Introit from Olivier Messiaen's *Messe de la Pentecôte* (1949-50)<sup>3</sup>

# I. ENTRÉE (Les langues de feu)

"Des langues de feu se posèrent sur chacun d'eux" (Actes des Apôtres)

R: bourdon 16 et cymbale | Pos: quintaton 16 et 3<sup>e</sup> | G: montre 8 et 5<sup>e</sup> | Péd: clavier 4 seul |

**Modéré** (rythmes grecs traités en valeurs irrationnelles)

MAN. Pos. *dr. mf legato* *f legato* *3 (pour 2)* *5^A*

PED. *legato più f* *5 (pour 4)* *5 (pour 2)* *3 (pour 2)* *mf non legato*

Pos. *3 (pour 2)* *5 (pour 4)* *5 (pour 2)* *3 (pour 2)* *legato sempre*

<sup>3</sup> Olivier Messiaen, *Messe de la Pentecôte* (Paris: Alphonse Leduc, 1951).







## APPENDIX B: POLYPHONIC SETTINGS OF *NOS AUTEM GLORIARI*

**Example 18** Polyphonic Setting of *Nos autem gloriari* from Giovanni Pierluigi da Palestrina's *Motecta festorum totius anni cum Communi sanctorum quarternis vocibus liber primus* (1563)<sup>1</sup>

The musical score is for a four-part polyphonic setting of the motet "Nos autem gloriari" by Giovanni Pierluigi da Palestrina. It is written for four voices: Cantus (Soprano), Altus (Alto), Tenor, and Bassus. The key signature is G major (one sharp, F#), and the time signature is 4/4. The score is presented in three systems. The lyrics are: "Nos au - tem glo-ri - á - ri o - pór - tet, o - pór - tet, nos au - tem glo-ri - á - ri o - pór - tet, o - pór - tet, nos au - tem glo-ri - á - ri o - pór - tet, o - pór - tet, in cru -". The Cantus part begins with a melodic line, while the other parts enter later, creating a polyphonic texture. The lyrics are written below the corresponding staves.

<sup>1</sup> Anthony Monata, ed. Choral Public Domain Library, [www.cpd.org](http://www.cpd.org).

19

- - - tet, in cru - ce Dó-mi-ni no - stri

- tet, in cru - ce Dó - mi-ni no - stri Je-su Chri -

in cru - ce Dó - mi-ni no - stri Je - su Chri -

ce Dó - mi-ni no - stri,

25

Je-su Chri - sti, Je - su Chri - sti,

- - - sti, in cru - ce Dó-mi-ni

- - sti, in cru - ce Dó - mi-ni no - stri Je - su Chri -

in cru - ce Dó-mi-ni no - stri Je - su Chri -

31

in cru - ce Dó-mi-ni no - stri Je - su Chri -

no - stri Je-su Chri - sti, Je - su Chri - sti:

- sti, in cru - ce Dó-mi-ni no - stri Je - su Chri -

sti, Je - su Chri - sti, Dó - mi-ni no - stri Je - su Chri -

37

sti: in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta, et re-sur-ré-cti - o no -

in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta, et re-sur-ré-cti - o no -

sti: in quo est sa-lus, vi - ta, et re-sur-ré-cti - o,

sti: in quo est sa - lus,

43

- - - - - stra, in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta,

- - - - - stra, et re-sur-ré-cti-o no -

et re-sur-ré-cti - o no -

vi - ta, et re-sur-ré-cti - o no -

49

et resur-ré-cti-o no - - - - - stra, et resurré-cti - o no -

stra, in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta, et resur-ré-cti - o no -

- - - - - stra, in quo est sa - lus, vi -

- - - - - stra; in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta,

55

stra, et resur-ré-cti-o, et resur-ré-cti-o no - - - stra: per

stra, et re-sur-ré-cti-o no - - - stra: per

ta, et resur-ré-cti-o no - - - stra:

et resur-ré-cti-o no - - - stra: et resur-ré-cti-o no - - - stra:

62

quem sal-vá - ti et li-be - rá - ti su - - -

quem sal-vá - ti et li-be - rá - ti su - - -

per quem sal - vá - ti et li - be -

per quem sal - vá - ti

68

mus, per quem sal-vá ti, mus, per quem sal-vá rá-ti su mus, per quem sal-vá et li-be-rá-ti su - mus, per quem sal-vá

74

per quem sal - vá - ti, et li - be - rá - ti su - - - -

ti, et li - be - rá - - ti su - - - -

ti, per quem sal - vá - ti, et li - be -

ti

79

- mus, et li - be - rá - ti su - mus.

- mus, su - - - mus, et li - be - rá - ti su - mus.

rá - ti su - - - mus, et li - be - rá - ti su - mus.

et li - be - rá - ti su - mus, et li - be - rá - ti su - mus.

**Example 19** Polyphonic Setting of *Nos autem gloriari* from Manuel Cardoso's *Libro de varios motetes* (1648)<sup>2</sup>

Superius S

Altus 1 A1

Altus 2 A2

Tenor T

Bassus B

Nos au - tem glo - ri - á - ri o -

tem glo - ri - á - ri o - pór - tet, nos au -

pór - tet, glo - ri - á - ri

Nos au - tem glo - ri -

glo - ri - á - ri o - pór -

glo - ri - á - ri o -

<sup>2</sup> Ivan Moody, ed. and transcriber, Series A: Spanish & Portuguese Church Music 82. Lochs, Scotland: Vanderbeek & Imrie Ltd, 1993. © Vanderbeek & Imrie Ltd. Used with permission.



10

- tem glo - ri - á - ri o - pór - tet,  
o - pór - tet, nos au - tem  
- á - ri o - pór - tet, glo - ri - á -  
- tet, nos au - tem glo -  
- pór - tet, nos au - tem glo - ri -

15

nos au - tem glo - ri - á -  
glo - ri - á - ri, nos  
- ri, nos au - tem glo - ri -  
- ri - á - ri o - pór tet, glo - ri -  
- á - ri o - pór - tet, nos au -

20

- ri o - pór - tet in  
au - tem glo - ri - á - ri o - pór - tet,  
- á - ri, nos au - tem glo - ri - á - ri o - pór -  
- á - ri, glo - ri - á - ri o - pór -  
- tem glo - ri - á - ri o -

25

cru - ce Dó - mi - ni no - stri le - su Chri - sti, in cru - ce Dó -

in cru - ce Dó - mi - ni no - stri le - su Chri - sti, in

- tet in cru - ce Dó - mi - ni

- tet, in cru - ce Dó - mi - ni, in cru - ce Dó - mi - ni no -

- pór - tet in cru - ce Dó - mi - ni no - stri le -

30

- mi - ni no - - stri le - su Chri -

cru - ce Dó - mi - ni no - stri le - su Chri - sti,

no - stri le - su Chri - sti, in quo est sa -

- stri le - su Chri - sti, in quo est

- su Chri - sti, le - su Chri - sti,

34

- sti, le - su Chri - sti, in quo est

in quo est sa -

- lus, vi - ta, vi - ta,

sa - lus, vi - ta, - ta, vi - ta,

in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta,

38

sa - lus, in quo est sa - lus, vi - ta, et  
 - lus, vi - ta, et re - sur -  
 et re - sur - ré - cti - o no - stra,  
 et re - sur - ré - cti - o no -  
 et re - sur - ré - cti - o no -

43

re - sur - ré - cti - o no - stra, no - stra.  
 - ré - cti - o no - stra, et re - sur - ré - cti - o no - stra.  
 no - stra, et re - sur - ré - cti - o no - stra, no - stra.  
 - stra, et re - sur - ré - cti - o no - stra.  
 - stra, et re - sur - ré - cti - o no - stra.

## Bibliography

- Achtemeier, Paul. "Omne Verbum Sonat: The New Testament and the Oral Environment of Late Western Antiquity." *Journal of Biblical Literature* 109:1 (1990): 3-27.
- Adam, Adolf. *The Eucharistic Celebration: The Source and Summit of Faith*. Translated by Robert C. Schultz. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1994.
- . *Foundations of Liturgy*. Translated by Matthew O'Connell. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1992.
- . *The Liturgical Year: Its History and Meaning After the Reform of the Liturgy*. Translated by Matthew J. O'Connell. New York: Pueblo, 1981.
- Ainslie, John, ed. *The Simple Gradual for Sundays and Holy Days: Full Music Edition for Cantor, Choir and Organist*. Texts of antiphons and refrains by The International Committee on English in the Liturgy. London: Geoffrey Chapman, 1969.
- Alberigo, Giuseppe, ed. *The History of Vatican II*. 5 vols. Translated by Matthew J. O'Connell. English version edited by Joseph A. Komonchak. Louvain: Peeters, 1995-2006.
- Alesandro, John A. "General Introduction." In *The Code of Canon Law: A Text and Commentary*. Edited by James A. Coriden, Thomas J. Green, and Donald E. Heintschel. New York and Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1985.
- Alexander, J. Neil, ed. *Time and Community*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.
- . *With Ever Joyful Hearts: Essays on Liturgy and Music Honoring Marion J. Hatchett*. New York: Church, 1999.
- Alföldy, Géza. *The Social History of Rome*. Translated by David Braund and Frank Polluck. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1989.
- Amalorpavadass, D. S. "Theological Reflections on Inculturation." *Studia Liturgica* 20 (1990): 36-54, 116-136.

- Anderson, E. Byron. *Worship and Christian Identity: Practicing Ourselves*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2003.
- Anderson, Roberta, and Dominic Aidan Bellenger, eds. *Medieval Worlds: A Sourcebook*. New York: Routledge, 2003.
- Andrieu, Michel, ed. *Le pontifical romain au moyen-âge*. 4 vols. Studi e Testi 86-88, 99. Vatican City, 1938-1940, 1941.
- . *Les "Ordines Romani" du haut moyen âge*. 5 vols. Spicilegium sacrum Lovaniense 11, 23-24, 28-29. Louvain, 1931, 1948-51, 1956-61.
- Anglès, Higini. "The Various Forms of Chant Sung by the Faithful in the Ancient Roman Liturgy." In *Scripta Musicologica*, 1:57-75. 3 vols. Edited by José López-Caló. Rome: Edizioni Storia e Letteratura, 1975.
- Apel, Willi. *Gregorian Chant*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1958. Reprint, 1990.
- Apostolos-Cappadona, Diane, ed. *Art, Creativity, and the Sacred*. New York: Crossroad, 1984.
- Arbuckle, Gerald A. *Earthing the Gospel: An Inculturation Handbook for Pastoral Workers*. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis; London: Geoffrey Chapman, 1990. Reprint, Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock, 2002.
- Archdiocese of Milwaukee. *The Milwaukee Symposia for Church Composers: A Ten-Year Report*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press; Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1992.
- Arlt, W. and G. Björkvall, eds. *Recherches nouvelles sur les tropes liturgiques*. Studia Latina Stockholmiensia 36. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1993.
- Atkinson, Charles M. "Glosses on Music and Grammar and the Advent of Music Writing in the West." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 199-216. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate, 2003.
- Augustine [Bachofen], Charles. *Liturgical Law: A Handbook of the Roman Liturgy*. St. Louis: B. Herder, 1931.
- Austin, Gerard. "The Church as Worshipping Community." In *The Gift of the Church: A Textbook on Ecclesiology*, 177-92. Edited by Peter C. Phan. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.

———, ed. *Fountain of Life*. In memory of Niels K. Rasmussen. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1991.

Austin, Gerard, et al. *Eucharist: Toward the Third Millennium*. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1997.

Bailey, Terence. *The Processions of Sarum and the Western Church*. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1971.

Baldovin, John F. "The Body of Christ in Celebration: On Eucharistic Liturgy, Theology, and Pastoral Practice." In *Source and Summit: Commemorating Josef A. Jungmann, S.J.*, 49-61. Edited by Joanne M. Pierce and Michael Downey. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.

———. "Kyrie Eleison and the Entrance Rite of the Roman Eucharist." *Worship* 60 (July 1986): 334-47.

———. *Liturgy in Ancient Jerusalem*. Alcuin/GROW Liturgical Study 9. Grove Liturgical Study 57. Bramcote, UK: Grove Books Limited, 1989.

———. "The Urban Character of Christian Worship in Jerusalem, Rome, and Constantinople from the Fourth to the Tenth Centuries: The Origins, Development, and Meaning of Stational Liturgy." PhD diss., Yale University, 1982.

———. *The Urban Character of Christian Worship: The Origins, Development, and Meaning of Stational Liturgy*. Orientalia Christiana Analecta 228. Rome: Pontifical Institute of Oriental Studies, 1987.

———. "The Uses of Liturgical History." *Worship* 82:1 (January 2008): 2-18.

———. *Worship: City, Church and Renewal*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1991.

Bangert, Mark P. "Liturgical Music, Culturally Tuned." In *Liturgy and Music: Lifetime Learning*, 360-83. Edited by Robin A. Leaver and Joyce Ann Zimmerman. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.

Barba, Maurizio. *La riforma Conciliare dell "Ordo Missae": Il percorso storico-redazionale dei riti d'ingresso, di offertorio e di comunione*. Bibliotheca Ephemerides Liturgicae. Subsidia 120. Rome: CLV-Edizioni Liturgiche, 2002.

Barnes, Andrew E. "Religious Reform and the War against Ritual." *Journal of Ritual Studies* 4 (1990): 127-33.

- Barrett, Sam. "Music and Writing: On the Compilation of Paris Bibliothèque National Lat 1154." *Early Music History* 16 (1997): 55-96.
- Baumstark, Anton. *Comparative Liturgy*. Revised by Bernard Botte. Edited and translated by F. L. Cross. Westminster, MD: Newman Press, 1958.
- Bayer, Oswald. "Theology in the Conflict of Interpretations—Before the Text." Translated by Gwen Griffith-Dickson. *Modern Theology* 16:4 (October 2000): 495-502.
- Beal, John P., James A. Coriden, and Thomas J. Green, eds. *New Commentary on the Code of Canon Law: An Entirely New and Comprehensive Commentary by Canonists from North America and Europe, with a Revised English Translation of the Code*. Commissioned by the Canon Law Society of America. New York and Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 2000.
- Beardslee, William A. "Poststructuralist Criticism." In *To Each Its Own Meaning: An Introduction to Biblical Criticisms and Their Application*, 253-67. Edited by Stephen L. McKenzie and Stephen R. Haynes. Louisville, KY: Westminster/John Knox Press, 1993.
- Beckwith, R. T. "The Jewish Background to Christian Worship." In *The Study of Liturgy*, 68-79. Rev. ed. Edited by Cheslyn Jones, Geoffrey Wainwright, and Edward Yarnold. New York: Oxford University Press; London: SPCK, 1992.
- Begbie, Jeremie. *Resounding Truth: Christian Wisdom in the World of Music*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Academic, 2007.
- . *Theology, Music, and Time*. Cambridge Studies in Christian Doctrine 4. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Béhague, Gerard, ed. *Performance Practice: Ethnomusicological Perspectives*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1984.
- Békés, G. and G. Farnedi, eds. *Lex Orandi. Lex Credendi: Miscellanea in onore di P. Cipriano Vagaggini*. Studia Anselmiana 79. Sacramentum 6. Rome: Editrice Anselmiana, 1980.
- Bell, Catherine. *Ritual: Perspectives and Dimensions*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- . *Ritual Theory, Ritual Practice*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1992.

- Bell, John L. *The Singing Thing: A Case for Congregational Song*. Chicago: G.I.A. Publications, 2000.
- Berger, Teresa. "The Challenge of Gender for Liturgical Tradition." *Worship* 82:3 (May 2008): 243-61.
- . "'Doxology' – 'Jubilate' – 'Liturgical Theology' Zum Verhältnis von Liturgie und Theologie: Publikationen aus dem englischsprachigen Raum." *Archiv für Liturgiewissenschaft* 28 (1986): 247-55.
- . "Lex orandi – lex credendi – lex agendi. Auf dem Weg zu einer ökumenisch konsensfähigen, Verhältniesbestimmung von Liturgie, Theologie und Ethik." *Archiv für Liturgiewissenschaft* 27 (1985): 425-32.
- . "Liturgy – a Forgotten Subject Matter of Theology?" *Studia Liturgica* 17 (1987): 10-18.
- . "Liturgy and Theology – An Ongoing Dialogue." *Studia Liturgica* 19 (1989): 14-16.
- . *Theology in Hymns: A Study of the Relationship of Doxology and Theology According to a Collection of Hymns for the Use of People Called Methodists (1780)*. Translated by Timothy E. Kimbrough. Nashville: Abingdon Press, 1995.
- Bernard, P. "L'origine des chants de la messe selon la tradition musicale du chant romain ancien improprement dit «chant vieux-romain»." In *L'Eucharistie: célébrations, rites, piétés*, 19-97. Edited by A. M. Triacca and A. Pistoia. Bibliotheca Ephemerides Liturgicae. Subsidia. 79. Rome: C.L.V. – Edizioni Liturgiche, 1995.
- Berry, Mary. *Cantors: A Collection of Gregorian Chants*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1979.
- Bevans, Stephen B. *Models of Contextual Theology*. Faith and Cultures Series. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books, 1992.
- Bevil, Jack. "Centonization and Concordance in the American Southern Uplands Folksong Melody: A Study of the Musical Generative and Transmittive Processes of an Oral Tradition." PhD diss., North Texas State University, 1984.
- Binford-Walsh, Hilde Marga. "The Melodic Grammar of Aquitanian Tropes." PhD diss., Stanford University, 1992.
- Bischoff, Bernard. *Latin Paleography: Antiquity and the Middle Ages*. Translated by Dáibhí Croínin and David Ganz. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989.



- Björkvall, G., Gunilla Iversen, and Ritva Jonsson, eds. *Tropes du propre de la messe 2. Cycle de Pâques*. Edition critique des textes. Corpus Troporum 3. Studia Latina Stockholmiensia 25. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1982.
- Blacking, John. "The Biology of Music-Making." In *Ethnomusicology: An Introduction*. Edited by Helen Myers. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., 1992.
- Blackwell, Albert. *The Sacred in Music*. Louisville: Westminster / John Knox Press, 1999.
- Blijlevens, Ad. "Zeitgemäße Liturgie und klassische Polyphonie." In *Omnes Circumstantes: Contributions Towards a History of the Role of the People in the Liturgy*, 279-89. Edited by Charles Caspers and Marc Schneiders. Kampen, The Netherlands: J. H. Kok, 1990.
- Bobertz, Charles A. "Prolegomena to a Ritual/Liturgical Reading of the Gospel of Mark." In *Reading in Christian Communities: Essays on Interpretation in the Early Church*, 174-87. Edited by Charles A. Bobertz and David Brakke. Christianity and Judaism in Antiquity Series 14. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 2002.
- Boccardi, Donald. *The History of Catholic Hymnals Since Vatican II*. Chicago: GIA Publications, 2001.
- Boe, John. "Old Roman Votive-Mass Chants in Florence, Biblioteca Riccardiana, MSS 299 and 300 and Vatican City, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, Archivio San Pietro F 11: A Source Study." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 261-318. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- Bolinger, Dwight. *Intonation and Its Uses: Melody in Grammar and Discourse*. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1989.
- Bornet, Roger. "Pour une interprétation comparative de la réforme liturgique." *Questions Liturgiques* 67 (1986): 1-32.
- Bouma-Prediger, Steven. *The Greening of Theology: The Ecological Models of Rosemary Radford Ruether, Joseph Stiller, and Jürgen Moltmann*. American Academy of Religion Academy Series 91. New York: Oxford University Press, 1995.
- Bradshaw, Paul F. "Ancient Church Orders: A Continuing Enigma." In *Fountain of Life*, 3-22. Edited by Gerard Austin. In memory of Niels K. Rasmussen. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1991.

- . “The Changing Face of Early Liturgy.” *Music and Liturgy* 33:1-2 (2007): 23-26, 7-9.
- . “Difficulties in Doing Liturgical Theology.” *Pacifica* 11 (June 1998): 181-94.
- . *Eucharistic Origins*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004.
- . “The Homogenization of Christian Liturgy – Ancient and Modern: Presidential Address.” *Studia Liturgica* 26:1 (1996): 1-15.
- , ed. *Liturgical Space*. *Studia Liturgica* 24:1 (1994): 1-126.
- , ed. *Liturgical Theology*. *Studia Liturgica* 30:1 (2000): 1-128.
- Bradshaw, Paul F. *The Search for the Origins of Christian Worship: Sources and Methods for the Study of Early Liturgy*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.
- . “The Use of the Bible in Liturgy: Some Historical Perspectives.” *Studia Liturgica* 22:1 (1992): 35-52.
- Bradshaw, Paul F., Maxwell E. Johnson, and L. Edward Phillips. *The Apostolic Tradition: A Commentary*. Edited by Harold W. Attridge. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 2002.
- Brans, Eugene. “The Liturgical Function of Music: Music in Its Relationship to the Texts of the Liturgy.” PhD diss., University of Heidelberg, 1959.
- Brightman, F. E. “Apostolic Constitutions 8.” In *Liturgies: Eastern and Western*. Vol. 1. *Eastern Liturgies*, 4-13. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1896.
- Brocato, Francis William. “The Vernacular Chant of St. Meinrad Archabbey.” PhD diss., University of Minnesota, 1986.
- Brown, Howard Mayer, and Stanley Sadie, eds. *Performance Practice: Music Before 1600*. Norton/Grove Handbooks in Music. New York: W. W. Norton, 1990.
- Brown, Frank Burch. *Religious Aesthetics: A Theological Study of Making and Meaning*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Brundage, James A. *Medieval Canon Law*. London: Longman Publishing Group, 1995.
- Bugnini, Annibale, ed. *Documenta Pontificia ad Instaurationem Liturgicam Spectantia*. 2 vols. Rome: Edizioni Liturgiche, 1953, 1959.

- Bugnini, Annibale. *The Reform of the Liturgy (1948-1975)*. Translated by Matthew J. O'Connell. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990.
- Bugnini, Annibale, and Carlo Braga, eds. *The Commentary on the Constitution and on the Instruction on the Sacred Liturgy*. New York: Benzinger, 1964.
- Bullough, D. A., and Alice L. H. Corr  a. "Texts, Chants and the Chapel of Louis the Pious." In *Charlemagne's Heir: New Perspectives on the Reign of Louis the Pious (814-840)*, 489-508. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1990.
- Burdon, Adrian. "'Till in Heaven'—Wesleyan Models for Liturgical Theology." *Worship* 71 (July 1997): 309-17.
- Caccamo, James F. "The Listener as Musician: The Importance of Audience in the Moral Power of Music." In *God's Grandeur: The Arts and Imagination in Theology*, 59-79. Edited by David C. Robinson. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books, 2007.
- Caglio, Ernest Moneta. "Sacred Music." In *The Commentary on the Constitution and the Instruction on the Sacred Liturgy*. Edited by Annibale Bugnini and Carlo Braga. New York: Benzinger Bros., 1965.
- Cain, Elizabeth Ann. "English Chant Tradition in the Late Middle Ages: The Introits and Graduals of the Temporale in the Sarum Gradual." PhD diss., Harvard University, 1982.
- Caldwell, John. *English Keyboard Music Before the Nineteenth Century*. Oxford, 1973.
- Call, Jerry, comp. *Census-catalogue of Manuscript Sources of Polyphonic Music 1450-1550*. 5 vols. Edited by Herbert Kellman and Charles Hamm. University of Illinois Renaissance Manuscript Studies 1. Neuhausen and Stuttgart: H  nssler-Verlag, 1979-88.
- Campbell, Stanislaus. *From Breviary to Liturgy of the Hours: The Structural Reform of the Roman Office, 1964-1971*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1995.
- Capelle, Bernard. "Regnavit a ligno." In *Travaux liturgiques de doctrine et d'histoire*, vol. 3, 211-14. Louvain: Abbaye du Mont C  sar, 1967.
- Cardine, Eug  ne. "De l'  dition critique du Graduel: n  cessit  , avantages, m  thode." *Revue gr  gorienne* 29 (1950): 202-8.
- . "La psalmodie des intro  ts." *Revue gr  gorienne* 26 (1947): 172-77, 229-36; 27 (1948): 16-25.

- Carlin, Patrick I. "An Analysis of the Liturgical Music of the St. Louis Jesuits." PhD diss., New York University, 1982.
- Carminati, Giancarlo. "Una teoria semiologica del linguaggio liturgico: una verifica sul "Ordo Missae." *Ephemerides Liturgicae* 102 (1988): 184-233.
- Carr, Ephrem. "Liturgical Families in the East." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:11-24. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Carroll, Catherine A. *A History of the Pius X School of Liturgical Music: 1916-1969*. St. Louis: Society of the Sacred Heart, 1989.
- Carroll, Thomas K. and Thomas Halton, eds. *Liturgical Practice in the Fathers*. Message of the Fathers of the Church 21. Wilmington, DE: Michael Glazier, 1988.
- Casey, Sara Gibbs. "Songs for the Peregrini: Proper Chants for Irish Saints as Found in Continental Manuscripts of the Middle Ages." PhD diss., University of Pittsburgh, 2003.
- Casson, Lionel. *Everyday Life in Ancient Rome*. Rev. exp. ed. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1999.
- Catella, Alcestis, Ferdinandus Dell'Oro and Aldus Martini, eds. *Liber Sacramentorum Paduensis (Padova, Biblioteca Capitolare, Cod. D 47)*. Biblioteca "Ephemerides Liturgicae" – Subsidia. Monumenta Italiae Liturgica III. Rome: CLV Edizioni Liturgiche, 2005.
- Catela, Alceste. "Theology of the Liturgy." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3:3-28. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- Cavanaugh, Philip. "Early Sixteenth-Century Cycles of Polyphonic Mass Propers, An Evolutionary Process or the Result of Liturgical Reforms?" *Acta Musicologica* 48:2 (July-December 1976): 151-65.
- Chandler, Michael. *An Introduction to the Oxford Movement*. New York: Church Publishing, 2003.
- Chapman, Raymond. "Linguistics and Liturgy." *Theology* 76 (November 1973): 594-99.
- Chase, Steven. *The Tree of Life: Models of Christian Prayer*. Ada, MI: Baker Academic, 2005.

- Chavasse, Antoine. *Les ancêtres du Missale Romanum (1570)*. Analecta Liturgica 20. Studia Anselmiana 118. Rome: Centro Studi S. Anselmo, 1995.
- . “Cantatorium et antiphonale missarum: quelques procédés de confection, dimanches après la Pentecôte graduels du sanctoral.” *Ecclesia Orans* 1 (1984): 15-55.
- . “Évangélaire, épistolier, antiphonaire et sacramentaire: les livres romains de la messe aux VII<sup>e</sup> au VIII<sup>e</sup> siècle.” *Ecclesia Orans* 6 (1989): 177-255.
- . “La formation de l’*Antiphonale missarum*.” *Bulletin du Comité des Etudes de Saint-Sulpice* 32 (1961): 29-41.
- . “Les plus anciens types du lectionnaire et de l’antiphonaire romains de la messe.” *Revue bénédictine* 62 (1952): 3-94.
- . “La Préparation de la Pâque, à Rome, avant le V<sup>e</sup> siècle, jeûne et organisation liturgique.” In *Memorial J. Chaine*, 5:61-80. Lyon: Facultés Catholiques, 1950.
- . *Le Sacramentaire Gelasian*. Tournai, 1958.
- Chupungco, Anscar J. *The Cosmic Elements of Christian Passover*. Studia Anselmiana 72. Analecta Liturgica 3. Rome: Editrice Anselmiana, 1977.
- . *Cultural Adaptation of the Liturgy*. New York: Paulist Press, 1982.
- . “Greco-Roman Culture and Liturgical Adaptation. *Notitiae* 15 (1979): 202-18.
- , ed. *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*. 5 vols. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997-2001.
- Chupungco, Anscar J. “History of the Liturgy Until the Fourth Century.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:95-114. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . “History of the Roman Liturgy Until the Fifteenth Century.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:131-52. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . *Liturgical Inculturation: Sacramentals, Religiosity, and Catechesis*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1992.
- . *Liturgies of the Future: The Process and Method of Inculturation*. New York: Paulist Press, 1989.

- . *Shaping the Easter Feast*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1992.
- . “The Translation of Liturgical Texts.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:381-98. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Clarke, Eric F. “Generative Principles in Music Performance.” In *Generative Processes in Music: The Psychology of Performance, Improvisation and Composition*, 1-26. Edited by John A. Sloboda. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1988.
- Clauss, Manfred. *The Roman Cult of Mithras: The God and His Mysteries*. New York: Routledge, 2001.
- Claussen, M.A. *The Reform of the Frankish Church: Chrodegang of Metz and the Regula canonicorum in the Eighth Century*. Cambridge Studies in Medieval Life and Thought, Fourth Series 60. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2005.
- Clooney, Francis X. “Liturgical Theology in a Comparative Context: Some Hindu Perspectives on *Lex Orandi / Lex Credendi*.” *Worship* 63 (July 1989): 341-50.
- Clothey, Fred W. “Toward a Comprehensive Interpretation of Ritual.” *Journal of Ritual Studies* 2:2 (1988): 147-61.
- Cobb, Peter G. “The Liturgy of the Word in the Early Church.” In *The Study of Liturgy*, 219-29. Rev. ed. Edited by Cheslyn Jones, et al. London: SPCK; New York: Oxford, 1992.
- Coelho, Ivo. *Hermeneutics and Method: The ‘Universal Viewpoint’ in Bernard Lonergan*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2000.
- Collegeville Composers Group. *Psallite: Sacred Song for Liturgy and Life*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008.
- Collins, Mary. “An Adventuresome Hypothesis: Women as Authors of Liturgical Change.” In *Proceedings of the North American Academy of Liturgy* (1993).
- . *Contemplative Participation: Sacrosanctum Concilium Twenty-five Years Later*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990.
- . “Critical Questions for Liturgical Theology.” *Worship* 53 (July 1979): 302-17.
- . “Eucharist and Christology Revisited: The Body of Christ.” *Theological Digest* 39:4 (1992): 321-25.

- . “Liturgical Methodology and the Cultural Evolution of Worship in the United States.” *Worship* 49 (February 1975): 85-102.
- . “The Public Language of Ministry.” In *Official Ministry in a New Age*, 7-40. Edited by James H. Provost. Permanent Seminar Studies 3. Washington, DC: Canon Law Society of America, 1981.
- . *Worship: Renewal to Practice*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1987.
- Collins, Mary, and David N. Power, eds. *Liturgy: A Creative Tradition*. *Concilium* 162. New York: Seabury, 1983.
- Collins, Mary, David N. Power, and Mellonee Burnim, eds. *Music and the Experience of God*. *Concilium* 202. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1989.
- Collins, Raymond F. *Models of Theological Reflection*. Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 1984.
- Colloton, Paul H. “The Meaning of Our Signs: The Pastoral Theology of the *General Instruction*.” *Pastoral Music*. 27:5 (June-July 2003): 28-33, 36.
- Colombari, Bari and Michael R. Prendergast, eds. *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice. Essays in Honor of Father Virgil C. Funk*. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Combe, Pierre. *Histoire de la restauration of chant grégorienne d’après des documents inédits*. Solesmes: Abbaye de Solesmes, 1969.
- . *Justine Ward and Solesmes*. Washington, D.C.: Catholic University of America Press, 1987.
- Comotti, Giovanni. *Music in Greek and Roman Culture*. Translated by Rosaria V. Munson. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1991.
- Congar, Yves. “L’Ecclesia ou communauté chrétienne, sujet intégral de l’action liturgique.” In *La Liturgie après Vatican II*, 246-82. Edited by J. P. Jossua and Y. Congar. Paris: Les Editions du Cerf, 1967.
- Connell, Martin F. “On the U.S. Aversion to Ritual Behavior and the Vocation of the Liturgical Theologian.” *Worship* 78:5 (September 2004): 386-403.

- Connolly, Thomas H. "Introits and Archetypes: Some Archaisms of the Old Roman Chant." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 25 (1972): 157-174.
- Coquin, R. G. "Une reforme liturgique du concile de Nicea." *Comptes-rendus des séances de l'Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres*. 111:2 (1967): 178-92.
- Coriden, James A., et al., eds. *The Code of Canon Law: A Text and Commentary*. New York: Paulist Press, 1985.
- Cortese, Ennio. *Il diritto nella storia medievale*. 2 vols. Rome, 1995.
- Costa, Eugenio, Jr., "Tropes et séquences dans le cadre de la vie liturgique au moyen âge. DTS diss., Institut Catholique de Paris, 1975.
- Crainshaw, Jill Y. *Wise and Discerning Hearts: An Introduction to Wisdom Liturgical Theology*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.
- Crichton, J. D. *The Liturgy of Holy Week*. Dublin: Veritas Publications, 1983. Reprint, 1987.
- Crocker, Richard L. "Gregorian Studies in the Twenty-First Century." *Plainsong and Medieval Music* 4 (1995): 33-86.
- . *An Introduction to Gregorian Chant*. Guildford and Kings Lynn, UK: Biddles Ltd, 2000.
- Cuming, Geoffrey J. "The Early Eucharistic Liturgies in Recent Research." In *The Sacrifice of Praise: Studies on the Themes of Thanksgiving and Redemption in the Central Prayers of the Eucharistic and Baptismal Liturgies*, 65-69. Edited by Bryan D. Spinks. Bibliotheca Ephemerides Liturgicae, Subsidia 19. Rome: C.L.V. – Edizioni Liturgiche, 1981.
- . *Hippolytus: A Text for Students, with Introduction, Translation, Commentary and Notes*. Bramcote, UK: Grove Books Ltd, 1987. Reprint, 1991.
- Cuneo, Michael W. *The Smoke of Satan: Conservative and Traditionalist Dissent in Contemporary American Catholicism*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1999.
- Curran, John R. *Pagan City and Christian Capital: Rome in the Fourth Century*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 2000.
- Cutter, Paul F. *Musical Sources of the Old-Roman Mass*. Musicological Studies and Documents 36. Stuttgart: American Institute of Musicology, 1979.



Dalmais, I. H. *Introduction to the Liturgy*. Translated by Roger Capel. Baltimore: Helicon, 1961.

———. “La liturgie comme lieu théologique.” *La Maison-Dieu* 78 (1964): 97-106.

———. “Le Mysterion, contribution a une théologie de la liturgie.” *La Maison-Dieu* 158 (1984): 14-50.

———. “Note sure la sociologie des processions.” *La Maison-Dieu* 43 (1955): 37-43.

———. “Symbolique liturgique et theologique de l’art romain.” *La Maison-Dieu* 123 (1975): 135-48.

———. “Theology of Liturgical Celebration.” In *Principles of the Liturgy*, 229-80. *The Church At Prayer*, vol. 1. Translated by Matthew J. O’Connell. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1987.

Damian, Ronald. “A Historical Study of the Caecilian Movement in the United States.” DMA diss., The Catholic University of America, 1984.

Davies, John Gordon. *The Early Christian Church*. History of Religions Series. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1965.

———. *Holy Week: A Short History*. Ecumenical Studies in Worship 11. London: Lutterworth Press, 1963.

Davis, Raymond, ed. and trans. *The Book of Pontiffs (Liber Pontificalis): The Ancient Biographies of the First Ninety Roman Pontiffs to AD 715*. Translated Texts for Historians, Latin Series 5. Liverpool, 1989.

Davison, Nigel. “So Which Way Round Did They Go? The Palm Sunday Procession at Salisbury.” *Music and Letters* 61:1 (January 1980): 1-14.

De Benedictis, Elaine. “The ‘Schola Cantorum’ in Rome During the High Middle Ages.” PhD diss., Bryn Mawr College, 1983.

De Blaauw, Sible. “Architecture and Liturgy in the Late Antique and the Middle Ages: Traditions and Trends in Modern Scholarship.” *Archiv für Liturgiewissenschaft* 33 (1991): 1-34.

———. “The Solitary Celebration of the Supreme Pontiff. The Lateran Basilica as the New Temple in the Medieval Liturgy of Maundy Thursday.” In *Omnes Circumadstantes*:

- Contributions towards a History of the Role of the People in the Liturgy*, 120-43. Edited by Charles Caspers and Marc Schneiders. Kampen, The Netherlands: J. H. Kok, 1990.
- De Clerck, Paul. "Improvisation et livre liturgique, leçons d'une histoire." *Communautés et liturgie* 60 (1978): 109-26.
- . "'Lex orandi lex credendi,' sens originel et avatars historiques d'un adage équivoque." *Questions Liturgiques* 59 (1978): 193-212.
- . "'L'«Ordo Missae» de Vatican II: ses innovations et sa réception." In *L'Eucharistie: célébrations, rites, piétés*, 183-201. Edited by A. M. Triacca and A. Pistoia. Bibliotheca Ephemerides Liturgicae Subsidia 79. Rome: C.L.V. – Edizioni Liturgiche, 1995.
- Deiss, Lucien. *Spirit and Song of the New Liturgy*. New rev. ed. Translated by Lyla L. Haggard and Michael L. Mazza. Cincinnati: World Library Publications, 1976.
- . *Springtime of the Liturgy: Liturgical Texts of the First Four Centuries*. Translated by Matthew J. O'Connell. Classics in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1979.
- . *Visions of Liturgy and Music for a New Century*. Translated by Jan M.-A. Burton. English text edited by Donald Molloy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996.
- Dekkers, Eloi. "Créativité et orthodoxie dans la 'lex orandi.'" *La Maison-Dieu* 111 (1972): 23-30.
- Delattre, Roland A. "Ritual Resourcefulness and Cultural Pluralism." *Soundings* 61 (1978): 281-301.
- Delling, Gerhard. *Worship in the New Testament*. Translated by Percy Scott. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1962.
- Demacopoulos, George E. *Models of Spiritual Direction in the Early Church*. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 2006.
- Deshusses, J. "Chronologie des grands sacramentaires de Saint-Amand." *Revue bénédictine* 87 (1977): 230-37.
- , ed. *Le sacramentaire grégorien: Ses principales formes d'après les plus anciens manuscrits*. 3 vols. Spicilegium friburgense 16, 24, 28. Fribourg, 1971, 1979, 1982.

- The Didache: Text, Translation, Analysis, and Commentary.* Aaron Milavec, ed. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2003.
- The Didache: A Commentary.* Kurt Niedermeyer, ed. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Translated by Linda M. Maloney. Edited by Harold W. Attridge. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1998.
- The Didache: Its Jewish Sources and Its Place in Early Judaism and Christianity.* Huub Van de Sandt and David Flusser, eds. *Compendia Rerum Iudaicarum ad Novum Testamentum*, Section III, Jewish Traditions in Early Christian Literature 5. Minneapolis: Fortress Press; Assen: Royal Van Gorcum, 2002.
- Didascalia Apostolorum. The Syriac Version Translated and Accompanied by the Verona Latin Fragments.* Edited and translated by R. Hugh Connolly. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1929.
- Dobszay, László. "Concerning a Chronology for Chant." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 217-30. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- . "Experiences in the Musical Classification of Antiphons." In *Cantus planus: Papers Read at the Third Meeting, Tihany, Hungary, 19-24 September 1988*, 143-56. Edited by L. Dobszay, et al. Budapest: Hungarian Academy of Sciences Institute for Musicology, 1990.
- . "The Types of Antiphons in Ambrosian and Gregorian Chant." In *Chant and Its Peripheries: Essays in Honour of Terence Bailey*, 50-61. Edited by Bryan Gillingham and Paul Merkley. *Musicological Studies* 72. Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998.
- Doran, Carol and Thomas H. Troeger. "Recognizing an Ancient Unity: Music and Liturgy as Complementary Disciplines." *Worship* 60:5 (September 1986): 386-98.
- Dourthe, Pierre. "How Liturgical Space was Organized in a Rural Paleo-Christian Basilica." *Studia Liturgica* 24 (1994): 66-70.
- Downey, Michael, and Richard Fraggomeni, eds. *A Promise of Presence: Studies in Honor of David N. Power, O.M.I.* Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1992.
- Duchesne, Louis. *Christian Worship, Its Origins and Evolution. A Study of the Latin Liturgy up to the Time of Charlemagne.* 5<sup>th</sup> ed. Translated by M. L. McClure. London: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge / New York: Macmillan, 1949.

———, ed. *Le Liber Pontificalis texte, introduction et commentaire*. Vols 1 and 2. Paris, 1886, 1892. Vol. 3. Edited by C. Vogel. Paris, 1957.

Duchesneau, C. “Musique Sacree, Musique d’Église, Musique Liturgique: changement de mentalité?” *Notitiae* 23 (1987): 1189-99.

Dulles, Avery. *Models of the Church*. New York: Doubleday, 1974.

———. *Models of Revelation*. New York: Doubleday, 1983.

Dyer, Joseph. “The Desert, the City and Psalmody in the Late Fourth Century.” In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 11-44. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.

———. “The Introit and Communion Psalmody of Old Roman Chant.” In *Chant and Its Peripheries: Essays in Honour of Terence Bailey*, 110-42. Edited by Bryan Gillingham and Paul Merkley. Musicological Studies 72. Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998.

*Egeria: Diary of a Pilgrimage*. Translated and annotated by George E. Gingras. Ancient Christian Writers: The Works of the Fathers in Translation 38. New York: Newman Press, 1970.

*Egeria’s Travels to the Holy Land. Newly translated with supporting documents and notes*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. John Wilkinson, ed. Warminster, UK: Aris & Phillips, 1999.

Eisenhofer, Ludwig and Joseph Lechner. *The Liturgy of the Roman Rite*. New York: Herder & Herder, 1961.

Ekenberg, A. *Cur Cantatur? Die Funktionen des liturgischen Gesanges nach den Autoren der Karolingerzeit*. Bibliotheca Theologiae Practicae. Kyrkovetenskapliga studier 41. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1987.

Elich, Tom. “Using Liturgical Texts in the Middle Ages.” In *Fountain of Life*, 69-83. Edited by Gerard Austin. In memory of Niels K. Rasmussen. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1991.

Empereur, James. *Models of Liturgical Theology*. Bramcote: Grove Books, 1987.

———. *Worship: Exploring the Sacred*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1987.

*Encyclopedia of Early Christianity*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. 2 vols. Edited by Everett Ferguson. New York: Garland Publishing, 1997.

- Erdö, Péter. *Storia della scienza del diritto canonico: Una introduzione*. Rome: Editrice Pontificia Università Gregoriana, 2000.
- Erian, Nabila Meleka. "Coptic Music – An Egyptian Tradition." PhD diss., University of Maryland, 1986.
- Escudier, Denis. "Les manuscrits musicaux du moyen âge (du IX<sup>e</sup> au XII<sup>e</sup> siècles): essai de typologie." *Codicologica* 3 (1980): 34-35.
- Fagerberg, David W. "Traditional Liturgy and Liturgical Tradition." *Worship* 72 (November 1998): 482-501.
- . *What is Liturgical Theology?: A Study in Methodology*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1992.
- Falconer, Keith. "The Modes Before the Modes: Antiphon and Differentia in Western Chant." In *The Study of Medieval Chant: Paths and Bridges, East and West*, 131-46. Edited by Peter Jeffery. Rochester, NY: Boydell Press, 2001.
- Farr, David. "Newly-composed Eucharistic Entrance Antiphons, with Commentary." PhD diss., Graduate Theological Union, Berkeley, 1986.
- Fassler, Margot and Peter Jeffery. "Christian Liturgical Music from the Bible to the Renaissance." In *Sacred Sound and Social Change: Liturgical Music in Jewish and Christian Experience*, 84-123. Edited by Lawrence A. Hoffman and Janet Walton. Two Liturgical Traditions 3. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 1992.
- Faulkner, Quentin. *Wiser Than Despair: The Evolution of Ideas in the Relationship of Music and the Christian Church*. Contributions to the Study of Music and Dance 40. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1996.
- Fellerer, K. G. "Church Music and the Council of Trent." *Musical Quarterly* 39:4 (October 1953): 576-94.
- . *The History of Catholic Church Music*. Translated by F. A. Brunner. Baltimore, Helicon Press, 1961.
- Ferguson, Everett. "Psalm-Singing at the Eucharist: A Liturgical Controversy in the Fourth Century." *Austin Seminary Bulletin* 98 (1983): 52-77.

- Ferme, Brian Edwin. *Introduzione alla storia del diritto canonico*. Vol. 1. *Il diritto antico fino al decretum di Graziano*. Quaderni di Apollinaris 1. Vatican City: Pontificia Università Lateranense, 1998.
- Fernandez, Pedro. "Liturgia y teologia. Historia de un problema metodologico." *Ecclesia Orans* 6 (1989): 261-83.
- Ferreira, Manuel Pedro. "Music at Cluny: The Tradition of Gregorian Chant for the Proper of the Mass. Melodic Variants and Microtonal Nuances." 2 vols. PhD diss., Princeton University, 1997.
- Fink, Peter E. "Three Languages of Christian Sacraments." *Worship* 52 (November 1978): 561-75.
- . "Towards a Liturgical Theology." *Worship* 47 (December 1973): 601-9.
- Finn, Peter and ICEL. "Translation of the *Missale Romanum*, *editio tertia*. Questions and Issues Related to the Translation of the Antiphons." Unpublished study. Washington, DC, 2004.
- Finney, Paul Corby. "Early Christian Architecture: The Beginnings (A Review Article)." *Harvard Theological Review* 81:3 (1988): 319-39.
- Fisch, Thomas, ed. *Primary Readings on the Eucharist*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2004.
- Fish, Stanley. *Is There a Text in This Class? The Authority of Interpretive Communities*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1980.
- Flanagan, Kieran. "Liturgy, Ambiguity, and Silence: The Ritual Management of Real Absence." *British Journal of Sociology* 36:2 (June 1985): 193-223.
- . "Liturgy as Play: A Hermeneutics of Ritual Re-presentation." *Modern Theology* 4 (July 1988): 345-72.
- Flanigan, C. Clifford, Kathleen Ashley, and Pamela Sheingorn. "Liturgy as Social Performance: Expanding the Definitions." In *The Liturgy of the Medieval Church*, 695-714. Edited by Thomas J. Heffernan and E. Ann Matter. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 2001.
- Flynn, William T. "Paris, Bibliotheque de L'Arsenal, MS 1169: The Hermeneutics of Eleventh-Century Burgundian Tropes, and Their Implications for Liturgical Theology." PhD diss., Duke University, 1992.

- Foley, Edward. Review of James W. McKinnon, *The Advent Project*. *Theological Studies* 63:1 (March 2002): 197-98.
- . *Foundations of Christian Music: The Music of Pre-Constantinian Christianity*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996.
- . “Liturgical Music: A Bibliographic Essay.” In *Liturgy and Music: Lifetime Learning*, 411-52. Edited by Robin A. Leaver and Joyce Ann Zimmerman. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- . “Music in Catholic Worship: A Critical Reappraisal.” *Liturgy* 90 (February-March 1991): 8-12.
- . *Ritual Music: Studies in Liturgical Musicology*. Beltsville, MD: Pastoral Press, 1995.
- . “The Structure of the Mass, Its Elements and Its Parts.” In *A Commentary on the General Instruction of the Roman Missal: Developed under the Auspices of the Catholic Academy of Liturgy and Cosponsored by the Federation of Diocesan Liturgical Commissions*. Edited by Edward Foley, Nathan D. Mitchell and Joanne M. Pierce. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2007.
- , ed. *Worship Music: A Concise Dictionary*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.
- Foley, Edward, and Mary McGann. *Music and the Eucharistic Prayer*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1988.
- Foley, Edward, Nathan D. Mitchell, and Joanne M. Pierce, eds. *A Commentary on the General Instruction of the Roman Missal: Developed under the Auspices of the Catholic Academy of Liturgy and Cosponsored by the Federation of Diocesan Liturgical Commissions*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2007.
- Folsom, Cassian. “Liturgical Books of the Roman Rite.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:245-314. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Ford, Paul. F. *By Flowing Waters: Chant for the Liturgy. A Collection of Unaccompanied Song for Assemblies, Cantors, and Choirs*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- Ford, Terence. “Index to the Facsimiles of Polyphonic Music Before 1600 Published in *Die Musik in Geschichte und Gegenwart*.” *Notes* 39 (1983): 283-315.

- Fortescue, Adrian. *The Ceremonies of the Roman Rite Described*. 10 editions. 3<sup>rd</sup> and following with J. B. O'Connell. London, 1917-58.
- . *The Holy Week Book. Compiled By Authority from the Roman Missal and Breviary as Reformed by Order of Pope Pius X*. London: Burns & Oates Ltd, 1916.
- . *The Mass: A Study of the Roman Liturgy*. London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1937.
- Francis, Mark. *Liturgy in a Multicultural Community*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1991.
- . *Shaping a Circle Ever Wider: Liturgical Inculturation in the United States*. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2000.
- . "Uncluttering the Eucharistic Vestibule: The Entrance Rites through Time." *Liturgical Ministry* 3 (1994): 1-12.
- . "Well Begun Is Half Done: The New Introductory Rites in the Revised Sacramentary." In *Liturgy for the New Millennium: A Commentary on the Revised Sacramentary*, 65-76. Edited by Mark R. Francis and Keith F. Pecklers. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.
- Francis, Mark R., and Keith F. Pecklers, eds. *Liturgy for the New Millennium: A Commentary on the Revised Sacramentary. Essays in Honor of Anscar J. Chupungco, O.S.B.* Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.
- Franquesa, A. "Antifonas del Introito y de la Comunión en las Misas sin Canto." *Notitiae* (1970): 213-21
- Frend, William H. C. *Archaeology and History in the Study of Early Christianity*. London: Variorum Reprints, 1988.
- . *The Archaeology of Early Christianity: A History*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1996.
- . *The Early Church from the Beginning to 461*. Third edition. London, 1991.
- Frere, Walter. *Graduale Sarisburiense: A Reproduction in Facsimile of a manuscript of the Thirteenth Century, with a Dissertation and Historical Index Illustrating Its Development from the Gregorian Antiphonale Missarum*. London: Quartich, 1894.



- . *The Winchester Troper, from Mss. of the X<sup>th</sup> and XI<sup>th</sup> Centuries, with other documents illustrating the history of tropes in England and France*. Henry Bradshaw Society 8. London: Harrison, 1984.
- Frescobaldi, Girolamo. *Fiori musicali 1635*. Vol. 5. *Organ and Keyboard Works*. Complete Edition edited from the original by Pierre Pidoux. Kassel, Germany: Bärenreiter, 1954.
- Froger, J. “Le chant de l’introït.” *Ephemerides Liturgicae* 21 (1948): 248-55.
- . “Les chants de la messe aux VIII<sup>e</sup> et IX<sup>e</sup> siècles.” *Revue grégorienne* 26 (1947): 165-72.
- . “The Critical Edition of the Roman Gradual by the Monks of Solesmes.” *Journal of the Plainsong and Mediaeval Music Society* 10 (1987): 1-14.
- Fryxell, Regina. *Introits and Graduals for the Church Year Set to Music*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press, 1966-69.
- Funk, Virgil C., ed. *Music in Catholic Worship (Bishops’ Committee on the Liturgy). The NPM Commentary: A Collection of Articles First Published in Pastoral Music Magazine*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1983.
- Gallagher, Clarence. *Church Law and Church Order in Rome and Byzantium: A Comparative Study*. Birmingham Byzantine and Ottoman Monographs 8. Aldershot, England: Ashgate, 2002.
- Gallagher, Sean, et al., eds. *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- Galliardetz, Richard T. “North American Culture and the Liturgical Life of the Church: The Separation of the Quests for Transcendence and Community.” *Worship* 68 (September 1994): 403-16.
- Gamber, Klaus. *Codices liturgici latini antiquiores*. Spicilegii friburgensis Subsidia 1. Universitätsverlag Freiburg Schweiz, 1963, 1964. *Supplementum, Ergänzungs- und Registerband*. Spicilegii friburgensis Subsidia 1A. Freiburg, 1988.
- Gaudemet, Jean. *Les sources du droit de l’Église en Occident du II<sup>e</sup> au VII<sup>e</sup> siècle*. Paris: Éditions du Cerf / Éditions du C.N.R.S., 1985.
- . *Les sources du droit canonique, VIII<sup>e</sup>–XX<sup>e</sup> siècle: Repères canoniques, sources occidentales*. Paris: Éditions du Cerf, 1993.

- Gaudemet, Jean, with Gabriel Le Bras, eds. *Histoire du droit et des institutions de l'Église en Occident*. Several volumes. Paris: Cujas, 1955–.
- Gauthier, Albert. *Roman Law and its Contribution to the Development of Canon Law*. Ottawa: Saint Paul University, 1996.
- Geertz, Clifford. *The Interpretation of Cultures*. New York: Basic Books, 1973.
- . . “Thick Description: Toward an Interpretive Theory of Culture.” In *The Interpretation of Cultures: Selected Essays*. New York: Basic Books, 1973.
- Gelineau, Joseph. *The Grail Gelineau Psalter: 150 Psalms and 18 Canticles*. Chicago: G.I.A., 1972.
- . *Liturgical Assembly, Liturgical Song*. Translated by Paul Inwood and Bernadette Gasslein. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland: Pastoral Press, 2002.
- . “Music and Singing in the Liturgy.” In *The Study of Liturgy*, 493-507. Rev. ed. Edited by Cheslyn Jones, et al. New York: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- . “The Path of Music.” In *Music and the Experience of God*, 135-47. Edited by Mary Collins, David N. Power, and Mellonee Burnim. *Concilium* 202. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1989.
- . “Les psaumes à l’époque patristique.” *La Maison-Dieu* 135 (1978): 99-116.
- . *Voices and Instruments in Christian Worship: Principles, Laws, Applications*. Translated by Clifford Howell. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1964.
- Gerber, Rebecca L., ed. and introd. *Sacred Music From the Cathedral at Trent. Trent, Museo Provinciale D’arte, Codex 1375 (OLIM 88)*. Monuments of Renaissance Music 12. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007.
- Gerbert, Martin. *Monumenta veteris Liturgiae Alemannicae*. St. Blaise, 1779.
- Gilbert, Harold W. *Introits and Graduals for the Church Year Set to Music and Pointed for Speech Rhythm Singing*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press, 1964.
- Gillingham, Bryan, and Paul Merkley, eds. *Chant and Its Peripheries: Essays in Honour of Terence Bailey*. Musicological Studies 72. Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998.

- Glen, Genevieve. "Mediator Dei (1947)." In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice. Essays in Honor of Father Virgil C. Funk*, 9-11. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Godlovitch, Stan. "Performance Authenticity: Possible, Practical, Virtuous." In *Performance and Authenticity in the Arts*, 154-74. Edited by Salim Kemal and Ivan Gaskell. Cambridge Studies in Philosophy and the Arts. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1999.
- Gold, Barbara K., and John F. Donahue, eds. *Roman Dining. American Journal of Philology* special edition (2005).
- Gómez, Raúl R. "Beyond Serapes and Maracas: Liturgical Theology in a Hispanic/Latino Context." *Journal of Hispanic/Latino Theology* 8:2 (November 2000): 55-72.
- Gordon, Ignatius. "Constitutio de Sacra Liturgia et Canones 1256-1257." *Periodica* 54 (1965): 89-140, 352-405, 517-82.
- The Grail. *The Psalms: A New Translation*, 1963.
- Grant, Robert M. *Augustus to Constantine: The Rise and Triumph of Christianity in the Roman World*. Rev. ed. Foreword by Margaret M. Mitchell. Louisville, KY: Westminster John Knox Press, 2004.
- Grimes, Ronald. "Emerging Ritual." In *Proceedings of the North American Academy of Liturgy*. Valparaiso, IN: North American Academy of Liturgy, 1990.
- . "Liturgical Supinity, Liturgical Erectitude: On the Embodiment of Ritual Authority." *Studia Liturgica* 23:1 (1993): 51-69.
- . *Reading, Writing and Ritualizing: Ritual in Fictive, Liturgical, and Public Places*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1993.
- . "Victor Turner's Definition, Theory and Sense of Ritual." In *Victor Turner and the Construction of Cultural Criticism: Between Literature and Anthropology*, 141-46. Edited by Kathleen M. Ashley. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1990.
- Grisbrooke, W. Jardine. "An Orthodox Approach to Liturgical Theology: The Work of Alexander Schmemmann." *Studia Liturgica* 23:2 (1993): 140-57.
- Guéranger, Prosper. *Institutions liturgiques*. 3 vols. Paris: Le Mans, 1940-51.

- . *Institutions liturgiques. Extraits*. Montréal: Éditions de Chiré, 1977.
- . *The Liturgical Year. Passiontide and Holy Week*. Translated by Laurence Shepherd. Westminster, MD: Newman Press, 1949.
- Gushee, Marion. "The Polyphonic Music of the Medieval Monastery, Cathedral and University." In *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*, 143-69. Edited by James W. McKinnon. Music and Society Series. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- Gy, Pierre-Marie. "The Different Forms of Liturgical 'Libelli.'" In *Fountain of Life*, 22-34. Edited by Gerard Austin. In memory of Niels K. Rasmussen. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1991.
- . "La géographie des tropes dans la géographie liturgique du moyen âge carolingien et postcarolingien." In *Tradizione dei tropi liturgici*, 13-24. Edited by Claudio Leonardi and Enrico Menestò. Spoleto: Centro italiano di studi sull'alto medioevo, 1990.
- . "Les tropes dans l'histoire de la liturgie et de la théologie." In *Research on Tropes*, 7-16. Edited by Gunilla Iversen. Konferenser 8. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1983.
- Haar, James. "Monophony and the Unwritten Tradition." In *Performance Practice: Music before 1600*. Edited by Howard Mayer Brown and Stanley Sadie. The Norton/Grove Handbooks in Music. New York: W. W. Norton, 1990.
- Habinek, Thomas. *The World of Roman Song: From Ritualized Speech to Social Order*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2005.
- Hall, D. J. *Thinking the Faith: Christian Theology in a North American Context*. Minneapolis: Augsburg Press, 1989.
- Haller, Robert B. "Early Dominican Mass Chants: A Witness to Thirteenth Century Chant Style." PhD diss., The Catholic University of America, 1986.
- Halmo, Joan. *Antiphons for Paschal Triduum—Easter in the Medieval Office*. Musicological Studies 64. Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1995.
- . "Hymns for the Paschal Triduum." *Worship* 25 (March 1981): 137-59.
- Halmo, Joan, and Todd Ridder. "Liturgical Musicology." *Worship* 64 (1990): 460-62.

- Hambye, Edouard R. "An Antiphon of the East Syrian Liturgy and Some Patristic Sources." In *Studia Patristica*, 10:345-50. Berlin: Akademie Verlag, 1970.
- Hameline, J.-Y. "Éléments d'anthropologie, de sociologie historique et de musicologie du culte chrétien." *Recherches de Sciences religieuses* 78 (1990): 297-424.
- Hamman, A. "Valeur et signification des renseignements liturgiques de Justin." *Studia Patristica* 13 (1975): 364-74.
- Hansen, James. "Divini Cultus (1928): In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice. Essays in Honor of Father Virgil C. Funk*, 5-7. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Hanssens, J. M., ed. *Liber officialis*. In Amalarii Episcopii Opera Liturgica Omnia. 3 vols. Studi e testi 138-40. Vatican City, 1948-50.
- Happel, Stephen. "Prayer and Sacrament: A Role in Foundational Theology." *The Thomist* 45 (1981): 243-61.
- . "The Structure of Our Utopian *Mitsein* (life-together)." In *Heaven*. Edited by Edward Schillebeeckx and Bas Van Iersel. *Concilium* 123. New York: Seabury, 1979.
- . "Worship as a Grammar of Social Transformation." In *The Linguistic Turn and Contemporary Theology: Essays on a Theme*. Edited by George Kilcourse. Current Issues in Theology 2. The Catholic Theological Society of America, 1987.
- Harmon, Kathleen Anne. "Liturgical Singing as Ritual Enactment of the Paschal Mystery." PhD diss., Drew University, 2001.
- . *The Mystery We Celebrate, the Song We Sing: A Theology of Liturgical Music*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008.
- Harper, John. *The Forms and Orders of Western Liturgy from the Tenth to the Eighteenth Century: A Historical Introduction and Guide for Students and Musicians*. Oxford: Clarendon Press; New York: Oxford University Press, 1991. Reprints, 1993, 1994.
- Harting-Correa, Alice, ed. trans. *Walahfried Strabo's Libellus de exordiis et incrementis quarundam in observationibus ecclesiasticis rerum: A Translation and Liturgical Commentary*. Mittellalteinische Studien und Texte 19. Leiden, 1996.

- Hastings, Thomas J. *Practical Theology and the One Body of Christ: Toward a Missional-Ecumenical Model*. Studies in Practical Theology. Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 2007.
- Hausreither, J. *Semiotik des liturgischen Gesanges: Ein Beitrag zur Entwicklung einer integralen Untersuchungsmethode de Liturgiewissenschaft*. Liturgia Condenda 16. Louvain: Peeters, 2004.
- Häussling, Angelus. "Die kritische Funktion der Liturgiewissenschaft." In *Liturgie und Gesellschaft*, 103-30. Edited by Hans Meyer. Innsbruck: Tyrolia Verlag, 1970.
- Hawkins, Judith Adele. "Formal Implications of Music and the Revised Rite of the Roman Catholic Eucharistic Celebration." D.M.A. dissertation, New York University, 1994.
- Hayburn, Robert F. *Papal Legislation on Sacred Music 95 A.D. to 1977 A.D.* Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1979.
- Hebert, Thomas J., and E. Ann Matter, eds. *The Liturgy of the Medieval Church*. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 2001.
- Hellreigel, Martin B. "Holy Week in the Parish." *Worship* 30:4 (1956): 234-57.
- Hen, Yitzhak, and Rob Meens. *The Bobbio Missal: Liturgy and Religious Culture in Merovingian Gaul*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2004.
- Hermans, Jo. "The Directory of Liturgical Songs in the Vernacular: Background and Liturgical Criteria." *Antiphon* 11:1 (2007): 46-64.
- Herzo, Anthony Marie. "Five Aquitanian Graduals: Their Mass Propers and Alleluia Cycles." PhD diss., University of Southern California, 1967.
- Hesbert, R. J. *Antiphonale Missarum Sextuplex, d'après les Graduel de Monza et les Antiphonaires de Rheinau, du Mont-Blandin, de Compiègne, de Corbie, et de Senlis*. Brussels: Vromant, 1935. Reprint, Rome: Herder, 1967.
- Hesselgrave, David J. and Edward Rommen. *Contextualization: Meanings, Methods, and Models*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Book House, 1989. Reprint, Pasadena, CA: William Cary Library, 2003.
- Higginbottom, Edward. "Organ Music and the Liturgy." In *The Cambridge Companion to the Organ*, 130-47. Edited by G. Webber and N. Thistlewaite. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1999.

- Hiley, David. "Cluny, Sequences and Tropes." In *Tradizione dei tropi liturgici*, 125-38. Edited by Claudio Leonardi and Enrico Menestò. Spoleto: Centro Italiano di studi sull'alto medioevo, 1990.
- . "Plainchant Transfigured: Innovation and Reformation through the Ages." In *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*, 120-42. Edited by James W. McKinnon. Music and Society Series. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- . *Western Plainchant: A Handbook*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1993.
- Hiscock, Nigel, ed. *The White Mantle of Churches: Architecture, Liturgy, and Art around the Millennium*. International Medieval Research 10. Art History Subseries 2. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 2003.
- Hoffman, Lawrence A. *Beyond the Text: A Holistic Approach to Liturgy*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1987.
- . "Does God Remember? A Liturgical Theology of Memory." In *Memory and History in Christianity and Judaism*, 41-72. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 2001.
- . "Liturgy, Drama, and Readership Strategies: Avoiding Alienation from Our Rites." *Liturgical Ministry* 2 (Spring 1993): 49-55.
- Hoffman, Lawrence A., and Janet R. Walton, eds. *Sacred Sound and Social Change: Liturgical Music in Jewish and Christian Experience*. Two Liturgical Traditions 3. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 1992.
- Holleman, A. W. J. "Early Christian Liturgical Music." *Studia Liturgica* 8 (1992): 185-92.
- . "The Oxyrhynchus Papyrus 1786 and the Relationship between Ancient Greek and Early Christian Music." *Vigiliae Christianae* 26 (1972): 1-17.
- Houssiau, Albert. "La liturgie." In *Initiation à la pratique de la théologie*, 5:155-201. Paris: Éditions du Cerf, 1983.
- . "La liturgie, lieu privilégié de la théologie sacramentaire." *Questions Liturgiques* 54 (1973): 7-12.
- . "The Rediscovery of the Liturgy by Sacramental Theology." *Studia Liturgica* 15 (1982-1983): 158-77.

- Howell, Clifford. "From Trent to Vatican II." In *The Study of Liturgy*, 285-93. Rev. ed. Edited by Cheslyn Jones, et al. New York: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- Howell, Peter, Ian Cross, Robert West, eds. *Musical Structure and Cognition*. London: Academic Press, 1985.
- Hsia, R. Po-chia. *The World of Catholic Renewal 1540-1770*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. New Approaches to European History 30. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2005.
- Hucke, Helmut. "Die Entwicklung des christlichen Kultgesangs zum Gregorianischen Gesang." *Römische Quartalschrift* 48 (1953): 147-94.
- . "Musical Requirements of Liturgical Reform." *The Church and the Liturgy*, 45-74. *Concilium* 1. New York: Paulist Press, 1966.
- . "Toward a New Historical View of Gregorian Chant." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 33:3 (Autumn 1980): 437-67.
- Huels, John M. "Canonical Observations on *Redemptionis Sacramentum*." *Worship* 78:5 (September 2004): 404-20.
- . "The Interpretation of Liturgical Law." *Worship* 55 (May 1981): 218-37.
- . *Liturgical Law: An Introduction*. American Essays in Liturgy 4. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1987.
- . *One Table, Many Laws: Essays in Catholic Eucharistic Practice*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1986.
- Hughes, Andrew. *Medieval Manuscripts for Mass and Office: A Guide to Their Organization and Terminology*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1982. Reprints, 1986, 1995.
- Hughes, David G. "From the Advent Project to the Late Middle Ages: Some Issues of Transmission." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 181-98. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- Hughes, Graham. *Worship as Meaning: A Liturgical Theology for Late Modernity*. Cambridge Studies in Christian Doctrine 10. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2003.



- Huglo, Michel. "L'antiphonaire: archétype ou répertoire originel?" In *Grégoire le Grand*, 661-69. Colloques internationaux du Centre national de recherche scientifique. Paris: Éditions du C.N.R.S., 1986.
- . "Centres de composition des tropes et cercles de diffusion." In *Tradizione dei tropi liturgici*, 139-44. Edited by Claudio Leonardi and Enrico Menestò. Spoleto: Centro italiano di studi sull'alto medioevo, 1990.
- . "L'édition critique de l'antiphonaire grégorien." *Scriptorium* 39 (1985): 130-38.
- . "Les *libelli* de tropes et les premiers tropaires-prosaïques." In *Pax et Sapientia: Studies in Text and Music of Liturgical Tropes and Sequences*, 13-22. *Studia Latina Stockholmiensia* 29. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1986.
- . *Les livres de chant liturgique*. Typologie des sources du Moyen Âge occidental 52. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 1988.
- . *Les tonaires: Inventaire, analyse, comparaison*. Paris: Société Française de Musicologie, 1971.
- Huijbers, Bernard. *The Performing Audience: Six and a Half Essays on Music and Song in the Liturgy*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Cincinnati: North American Liturgy Resources, 1974.
- Hunt, E. D. *Holy Land Pilgrimage in the Later Roman Empire A.D. 312-460*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1984.
- Hunt, Emily J. *Christianity in the Second Century: The Case of Tatian*. New York: Routledge, 2003.
- Hurd, Robert. "Liturgiam Authenticam (2001)." In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 75-77. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. *Studies in Church Music and Liturgy*. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- . "A More Organic Opening: Ritual Music and the New Gathering Rite." *Worship* 72 (1998): 290-315.
- Husmann, H. *Die Tropen- und Sequenzhandschriften*. International Inventory of Musical Sources (RISM) 5. Munich, 1964.
- Hutchings, Arthur. *Church Music in the Nineteenth Century*. London: Herbert Henkins, 1967.

- Ilmitchi, Gabriela. "The Music of the Liturgy." In *The Liturgy of the Medieval Church*, 645-72. Edited by Thomas J. Heffernan and E. Ann Matter. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 2001.
- International Commission on English in the Liturgy. *Documents on the Liturgy 1963-1979: Conciliar, Papal, and Curial Texts*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1982.
- . *The Simple Gradual: An English Translation of the Antiphons and Responsories of the Graduale Simplex for Use in English-speaking Countries*. Washington, DC, 1968.
- Irwin, Joyce, ed. "Sacred Sound: Music in Religious Thought and Practice." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion Thematic Studies* 50:1 (1983): 1-172.
- Irwin, Kevin W. *Context and Text: Method in Liturgical Theology*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1994.
- . "The Critical Task of Liturgical Theology: Prospects and Proposals." In *Eucharist: Toward the Third Millennium*, 65-80. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1997.
- . "Critiquing Recent Liturgical Critics." *Worship* 74 (January 2000): 2-19.
- . *Easter: A Guide to the Eucharist and Hours*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1991.
- . "Liturgical Method: Issues for the Third Millennium." *Theology Digest* 44 (Spring 1997): 43-54.
- . *Liturgical Theology: A Primer*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990.
- . "Liturgical Theology: What do the East and West Have to Say to Each Other?" *Studia Liturgica* 30:1 (2000): 94-111.
- . "Method in Liturgical Theology: Context is Text." *Église et Théologie* 20:3 (1989): 407-24.
- . *Models of the Eucharist*. Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 2005.
- . Review of *La riforma Conciliare dell "ordo Missae": Il percorso storico-redazionale dei riti d'ingresso, di offertorio e di comunione*, by Maurizio Barba. *Worship* 77:5 (Sept 2004): 473-76.

- . “A Sacramental World—Sacramentality as the Primary Language of Sacraments.” *Worship* 76:3 (May 2002): 197-210.
- Isaac, Heinrich. *Choralis Constantinus I*. Edited by Emil Bezecny and Walter Rabl. Denkmäler der Tonkunst in Österreich. Graz: Akademische Druck-U. Verlagsanstalt, 1959.
- . *Choralis Constantinus II*. Edited by Anton von Webern. Denkmäler der Tonkunst in Österreich. Graz: Akademische Druck-U. Verlagsanstalt, 1959.
- . *Choralis Constantinus III*. Transcribed from the Formschneider First Edition (Nürnberg, 1555) by Louise Cuyler. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1950.
- Iverson, Gunilla. “*Cantans—orans—exultans*: Interpretations of Chants of the Introit Liturgy.” In *Labore fratres in unum: Festschrift László Dobszay zum 60 Geburtstag*, 125-50. Edited by Janka Szendrei and David Hiley. Hildesheim: Georg Olms Verlag, 1995.
- . “*Pax et Sapientia*. A Thematic Study on Tropes from Different Traditions.” In *Pax et Sapientia: Studies in Text and Music of Liturgical Tropes and Sequences*, 23-58. *Studia Latina Stockholmiensia* 29. Stockholm: Almquist & Wiksell, 1986.
- , ed. *Research on Tropes*. Konferenser 8. Stockholm: Almquist & Wiksell, 1983.
- Ivey, Paul Eli. Review of *Theology in Stone: Church Architecture from Byzantium to Berkeley* by Richard Kieckhefer. *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 73:2 (June 2005): 47-50.
- Jacobsson, Ritva, ed. *Pax et Sapientia: Studies in Text and Music of Liturgical Tropes and Sequences*. *Studia Latina Stockholmiensia* 29. Stockholm: Almquist & Wiksell, 1986.
- Jacobsson, Ritva, and Leo Treitler. “Tropes and the Concept of Genre.” In *Pax et Sapientia: Studies in Text and Music of Liturgical Tropes and Sequences*, 59-90. *Studia Latina Stockholmiensia* 29. Stockholm: Almquist & Wiksell, 1986.
- Jattiez, Jean-Jacques. *Music and Discourse: Toward a Semiology of Music*. Translated by Carolyn Abbate. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Jeanrond, Werner G. *Text and Interpretation as Categories of Theological Thinking*. Translated by Thomas J. Wilson. New York: Crossroad, 1988.
- . *Theological Hermeneutics: Development and Significance*. New York: Crossroad, 1991.

- . “Theology in the Context of Pluralism and Postmodernity: David Tracy's Theological Method.” In *Postmodernism, Literature and the Future of Theology*, 143-63. New York: St. Martin's Press; London: Macmillan, 1993.
- Jeffery, Peter. “Chant East and West: Toward a Renewal of the Tradition.” In *Music and the Experience of God*, 20-29. Edited by Mary Collins, David N. Power, and Mellonee Burnim. *Concilium* 202. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1989.
- . “The Earliest Christian Chant Repertory Recovered: The Georgian Witnesses to Jerusalem Chant.” *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 47:1 (Spring 1994): 1-38.
- . “The Earliest Oktoechnoi: The Role of Jerusalem and Palestine in the Beginnings of Modal Ordering.” In *The Study of Medieval Chant: Paths and Bridges, East and West*, 147-210. Edited by Peter Jeffery. Rochester, NY: Boydell Press, 2001.
- . “The Introduction of Psalmody into the Roman Mass by Pope Celestine I (422-432): Reinterpreting a Passage in the *Liber Pontificalis*.” *Archiv für Liturgiewissenschaft* 26:2 (1984): 147-65.
- . “The Lost Chant Tradition of Early Christian Jerusalem: Some Possible Melodic Survivals in the Byzantine and Latin Chant Repertories.” *Early Music History* 11 (1992): 151-90.
- . “The Meanings and Functions of *Kyrie Eleison*.” In *The Place of Christ in Liturgical Prayer: Trinity, Christology, and Liturgical Theology*, 127-94. Edited by Bryan D. Spinks. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008.
- . “Monastic Reading and the Emerging Roman Chant Repertory.” In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 45-104. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- . “The Musical Heritage of Two Great Cities in the Formation of the Medieval Chant Traditions.” In *Cantus Planus*, 163-74. Edited by L. Dobszay, et al. Budapest, 1992.
- . “The Oldest Sources of the Graduale: A Preliminary Checklist of MSS Copied before about 900 A.D.” *The Journal of Musicology* 2:3 (Summer 1983): 316-21.
- . *Re-Envisioning Past Musical Cultures: Ethnomusicology in the Study of Gregorian Chant*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1992.

- . Review of James W. McKinnon, *The Advent Project*. *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 56:1 (Spring 2003): 169-79.
- . "Rome and Jerusalem: From Oral to Written Repertory in Two Ancient Liturgical Centers." In *From Rome to the Passing of the Gothic: Western Chant Repertories and the Influence on Early Polyphony*. Edited by G. Boone. Isham Library Papers 4. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Department of Music, 1995.
- , ed. *The Study of Medieval Chant: Paths and Bridges, East and West*. Rochester, NY: Boydell Press, 2001.
- Jeffery, Peter. *Translating Tradition: A Chant Historian Reads Liturgiam Authenticam*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2006.
- Jennings, Theodore W. "Ritual Studies and Liturgical Theology: An Invitation to Dialogue." *Journal of Ritual Studies* 1 (1987): 35-56.
- Johnson, Cuthbert. *Prosper Guéranger (1805-1875): A Liturgical Theologian*. *Analecta Liturgica* 9. Rome: Studia Anselmiana, 1984.
- . *Sources of the Roman Missal (1975)*. *Notitiae* 32 (1996): 105.
- Johnson, Maxwell E. "Can We Avoid Relativism in Worship? Liturgical Norms in the Light of Contemporary Liturgical Scholarship." *Worship* 74:2 (March 2000): 135-55.
- . *Images of Baptism*. Forum Essays 6. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2001.
- Joncas, Jan Michael. *From Sacred Song to Ritual Music: Twentieth-century Understandings of Roman Catholic Worship Music*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . "Giorgio Bonaccorso's Semiotic Approach to Liturgical Studies: A Review of *Introduzione allo Studio della Liturgia*." *Questions Liturgiques* 73 (1992): 161-69.
- . "Hymnum Tuae Gloriae Canimus. Toward an Analysis of the Vocal Expression of the Eucharistic Prayer in the Roman Rite: Tradition, Principles, Method." Thesis ad Lauream 168. S.L.D. dissertation, Pontifical Liturgical Institute, San Anselmo, 1991.
- . "The *Institutio Generalis Missalis Romani* 2002: An Overview." *Worship* 77:1 (January 2003): 42-51.
- . "Joyce Ann Zimmerman's 'Text Hermeneutics' Approach to Liturgical Studies: A Review and Some Methodological Reflections." *Questions Liturgiques* 74 (1993): 208-20.

- . “Lawrence A. Hoffman’s ‘Holistic’ Approach to Liturgical Studies.” *Questions Liturgiques* 72 (1991): 89-107.
- . “Liturgical Music as Music: The Contribution of the Human Sciences.” In *Liturgy and Music: Lifetime Learning*, 220-30. Edited by Robin A. Leaver and Joyce Ann Zimmerman. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- . “Liturgical Musicology and Musical Semiotics: Theoretical Foundations and Analytic Techniques.” *Ecclesia Orans* 8 (1991): 181-206.
- . “Liturgy and Music.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 2:281-322. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- . “Musical elements in the *Ordo Missae* of Paul VI.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3: 209-44. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- . “Musical Semiotics and Liturgical Musicology: Theoretical Foundations and Analytic Techniques.” *Ecclesia Orans* 8 (1991): 181-206.
- . “Reforming and Renewing the Music of the Roman Rite.” *Pastoral Music* 18 (August-September 1994): 29-36.
- . “Re-reading *Musicam Sacram*: Twenty-five Years of Development in Roman Rite Liturgical Music.” *Worship* 66 (May 1992): 212-31.
- . “Semiotics and the Analysis of Liturgical Music.” *Liturgical Ministry* 3 (Fall, 1994): 144-54.
- . “A Tale of Two Acclamations: The Priestly Function of Liturgical Music.” *Pastoral Music* 28:6 (August-September 2004): 13-20.
- Jones, Cheslyn, Geoffrey Wainwright, Edward Yarnold, and Paul Bradshaw, eds. *The Study of Liturgy*. Rev. ed. London: SPCK; New York: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- Jonsson, Ritva. “The Liturgical Function of the Tropes.” In *Research on Tropes*, 99-123. Edited by Gunilla Iversen. Konferenser 8. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1983.
- Jonsson, Ritva and Leo Treitler. “Medieval Music and Language: A Reconsideration of the Relationship.” In *Music and Language*. Studies in the History of Music 1. New York: Broude, 1983.

- Jörns, Klaus-Peter. "Proklamation und Akklamation: Die antiphonische Grundordnung des frühchristlichen Gottesdienstes nach der Johannesoffenbarung." In *Liturgie und Dichtung*. Vol. 1. EOS Verlag Erzabtei St. Ottilien, 1983.
- Jungmann, Josef A. *The Early Liturgy to the Time of Gregory the Great*. Translated by Francis A. Brunner. University of Notre Dame Liturgical Studies VI. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 1959.
- . *The Mass of the Roman Rite: Its Origins and Development*. 2 vols. Translated by F. A. Brunner. Benzinger Bros., 1951. Reprint, Allen, TX: Christian Classics, 1986.
- . *The Place of Christ in Liturgical Prayer*. Translated by A. Peeler. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1989.
- Karp, Theodore. *Aspects of Orality and Formularity in Gregorian Chant*. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University Press, 1998.
- Kartsovnik, Viatcheslav. "Proper Tropes in the Old Roman Gradual of Santa Cecilia in Trastevere (A.D. 1071)." In *Chant and Its Peripheries*, 62-109. Edited by Bryan Gillingham and Paul Merkley. Musicological Studies 72. Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998.
- Kavanagh, Aidan. *Elements of Rite: A Handbook of Liturgical Style*. New York: Pueblo, 1982.
- . *On Liturgical Theology*. New York: Pueblo, 1984. Reprint, Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1992.
- . "Primary Theology and Liturgical Act." *Worship* 57 (July 1983): 323-24.
- Keifer, Ralph A. "Liturgical Text as Primary Source for Eucharistic Theology." *Worship* 51 (May 1977): 186-96.
- . "Our Cluttered Vestibule: The Unreformed Entrance Rite." *Worship* 48:5 (1974): 270-77.
- . "Translating Theology into Pastoral Music: A View from the Pew." *Pastoral Music* 10 (October-November 1985): 34-40.
- Kelleher, Margaret Mary. "The Communion Rite: A Study of Roman Catholic Liturgical Performance." *Journal of Ritual Studies* 5:2 (1991): 99-122.

- . "Hermeneutics in the Study of Liturgical Performance." *Worship* 67 (July 1993): 292-318.
- . "Liturgical Theology: A Task and a Method." *Worship* 62:1 (1988): 2-25.
- . "Liturgy and the Christian Imagination." *Worship* 66:2 (March 1992): 148.
- . "Liturgy as an Ecclesial Act of Meaning." *Worship* 59 (1985): 482-97.
- . "Liturgy as an Ecclesial Act of Meaning: Foundations and Methodological Consequences for a Liturgical Spirituality." PhD diss., Catholic University of America, 1983.
- . "Liturgy as Source for Sacramental Theology." *Questions Liturgiques* 72 (1991): 25-42.
- . "Ritual Studies and the Eucharist: Paying Attention to Performance." In *Eucharist: Toward the Third Millennium*, 51-64. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1997.
- . "Sacraments and the Ecclesial Mediation of Grace." *Louvain Studies* 23 (1998): 180-97.
- Kelly, Columba. *Entrance and Communion Antiphons for Sundays and Feasts*. Oregon Catholic Press, 2008.
- . "De Musica Sacra et Sacra Liturgia (1958)." In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 13-15. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Kelly, Joseph F. *The World of the Early Christians*. Message of the Fathers of the Church. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Kelly, Walter J. "The Authority of Liturgical Laws." *The Jurist* 28 (1968): 397-424.
- Kieckhefer, Richard. *Theology in Stone: Church Architecture from Byzantium to Berkeley*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004.
- Kilmartin, Edward J. *Christian Liturgy: Theology and Practice*. Vol. 1. *Systematic Theology of Liturgy*. Kansas City: Sheed and Ward, 1988.
- . *The Eucharist in the West: History and Theology*. Edited by Robert J. Daly. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.



- . “Liturgical Theology.” *Worship* 50 (July 1976): 312-15.
- . *The Particular Liturgy of the Individual Church: The Theological Basis and Practical Consequences*. Placid Lecture Series 7. Bangalore: Dharmaram Publications, 1987.
- . “Sacraments as Liturgy of the Church.” *Systematic Theology*. Edited by Walter J. Burghardt. *Theological Studies* 50 (September 1989): 419-570.
- Kirby, Marc-Daniel. “The Proper Chants of the Paschal Triduum: A Study in Liturgical Theology.” STL thesis, Catholic University of America, 1996.
- . “Sung Theology: The Liturgical Chant of the Church.” In *Beyond the Prosaic: Renewing the Liturgical Movement*, 127-48. Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1998.
- Klauser, Theodor. *Die konstantinschen Altäre der Lateranbasilika*. RQ 43 (1935): 179-86.
- . *A Short History of the Western Liturgy*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. London, 1979.
- Klemm, David E. and William Schweiker, eds. *Meanings in Texts and Actions: Questioning Paul Ricoeur*. Charlottesville: University Press of Virginia, 1993.
- Kloppers, Elizabeth Catharina. “Liturgical Music as Communicative Act in a Postmodern Age.” DTh diss., University of South Africa, 1998.
- Kockelmans, Joseph J. “Why Is It Impossible in Language to Articulate the Meaning of a Work of Music?” In *Performance and Authenticity in the Arts*, 175-94. Edited by Salim Kemal and Ivan Gaskell. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1999.
- Kodály, Zoltan. *Missa Brevis*. New York: Boosey & Hawkes, 1956.
- Kodell, Jerome. *The Eucharist in the New Testament*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1991.
- Komonchak, Joseph A. “The Church in the United States Today.” In *The Spirit Moving in the Church in the United States*, 1-31. Edited by Francis A. Eigo. Villanova: Villanova University Press, 1989.
- . “The Local Realization of the Church.” In *The Reception of Vatican II*. Edited by Giuseppe Albergo, Jean-Pierre Jossua, and Joseph Komonchak. Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 1987.

- . “The Theology of the Local Church: State of the Question.” In *The Multicultural Church: A New Landscape in U. S. Theologies*, 35-49. Edited by William Cenkner. New York: Paulist Press, 1996.
- Krautheimer, Richard. *Early Christian and Byzantine Architecture*. 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Rev. by R. Krautheimer and Slobodan Curcic. Pelican History of Art. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1986.
- . “Introduction to an ‘Iconography of Medieval Architecture.’” *JWCI* 5. 1942, 1-33. Also in *Studies* (as n. 25).
- . *Rome: Profile of a City, 312-1308*. Rev. ed. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2000.
- Krautheimer, Richard, et al. *Corpus basilicarum Christianarum Romae: The Early Christian Basilicas of Rome (IV-IX Centuries)*. 5 vols. Vatican City: Pontificio istituto di archeologia cristiana, 1937-77.
- Krochalis, Jeanne E., and E. Ann Matter. “Manuscripts of the Liturgy.” In *The Liturgy of the Medieval Church*, 433-72. Edited by Thomas J. Heffernan and E. Ann Matter. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 2001.
- Kroesen, J. E. A., and R. Steensma. *The Interior of the Medieval Village Church*. Louvain: Peeters, 2004.
- Kubicki, Judith Marie. “How Does Music Evangelize in the Liturgy?” *Pastoral Music* 28:5 (June-July 2004): 20-22.
- . “Jacques Berthier's Taizé Music: A Case Study of Liturgical Music as Ritual Symbol.” PhD diss., Catholic University of America, 1997.
- . *Liturgical Music as Ritual Symbol: A Case Study of Jacques Berthier's Taizé Music*. Liturgia codenda 9. Louvain: Peeters, 1999.
- . “Tra le Sollecitudini (1903).” In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 1-3. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Kunnie, Julian. *Models of Black Theology: Issues in Class, Culture, and Gender*. Philadelphia: Trinity Press International, 1994.
- La Croix, Richard R., ed. *Augustine on Music*. Studies in the History and Interpretation of Music 6. Lewiston, NY: Edwin Mellen Press, 1988.

LaCugna, Catherine Mowry. "Can Liturgy Ever Again Be a Source for Theology?" *Studia Liturgica* 19 (1989): 1-16.

Ladrière, Jean. "The Performativity of Liturgical Language." Translated by John Griffiths. *Concilium* 9/1 (1973): 50-62.

Lamb, J. A. *The Psalms in Christian Worship*. London: Faith Press, 1962.

Lamberts, J. "Active Participation As the Gateway Towards an Ecclesial Liturgy." In *Omnes Circumadstantes: Contributions towards a History of the Role of the People in the Liturgy*, 234-61. Edited by Charles Caspers and Marc Schneiders. Kampen: Uitgeversmaatschappij J. H. Kok, 1990.

———, ed. *La Participation Active: 100 ans après Pie X et 40 ans après Vatican II*. Louvain: Peeters, 2004.

Lampe, Peter. *From Paul to Valentinus: Christians at Rome in the First Two Centuries*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press; London: Continuum, 2003.

Landwehr-Melnicki, Margaret, transcrib. *Die Gesänge des altrömischen Gradual Vat Lat. 5319*. Introduced and edited by Bruno Stäblein. Monumenta monodica Medii Aevi 2. Kassel: Bärenreiter, 1970.

Lardner, Gerald V. "Communication Theory and Liturgical Research." *Worship* 51 (July 1977): 299-307.

Larrainzar, Carlos. *Introducción al derecho canonico*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Instituto de Derecho Europeo Clasico, Serie B: Monografías. Santa Cruz de Tenerife, Canary Islands: Idecsa, 1991.

Lathrop, Gordon W. *Holy People: A Liturgical Ecclesiology*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1999.

———. *Holy Things: A Liturgical Theology*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1993.

LaVerdiere, Eugene. *The Eucharist in the New Testament and the Early Church*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996.

Lawrence, Frederick. "Method and Theology as Hermeneutical." In *Creativity and Method: Essays in Honor of Bernard Lonergan*, 79-104. Edited by M. Lamb. Milwaukee: Marquette University Press, 1981.

- Leaver, Robin A. "Christian Liturgical Music in the Wake of the Protestant Reformation." In *Sacred Sound and Social Change: Liturgical Music in Jewish and Christian Experience*, 124-46. Edited by Lawrence A. Hoffman and Janet Walton. Two Liturgical Traditions 3. Notre Dame & London: University of Notre Dame Press, 1992.
- Leaver, Robin A., and Joyce Ann Zimmerman, eds. *Liturgy and Music: Lifetime Learning*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- Leeb, Helmut. *Die Gesänge im Gemeindegottesdienst von Jerusalem vom 5. bis 8. Jahrhundert*. Vienna: Herder, 1970.
- Leech-Wilkinson, Daniel. "Ars Antiqua – Ars Nova – Ars Subtilior." In *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*, 218-40. Edited by James W. McKinnon. Music and Society Series. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- Leichtentritt, H. "The Reform of Trent and Its Effect on Music." *Musical Quarterly* 30:3 (July 1944): 319-28.
- Leonard, John K. "Liturgical Singing: A Case for *Theologia Prima*." In *Source and Summit*, 225-41. Edited by Joanne M. Pierce and Michael Downey. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- Levy, Kenneth. "Charlemagne's Archetype of Gregorian Chant." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 40:1 (Spring 1987): 1-30.
- . *Gregorian Chant and the Carolingians*. Princeton University Press, 1998.
- . "On Gregorian Orality." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 43:2 (Summer 1990): 185-227.
- Lewars, Ralph. *Musical Settings for the Introits and Graduals of the Church Year*. Philadelphia: Muhlenberg College, 1948.
- Liderbach, Daniel. *Christ in the Early Christian Hymns*. Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1998.
- Lindsey, Mack Clay, III. "Klosterneuburg, Augustinechorherrenstift, Codices 69 and 70: Two Sixteenth-Century Choirbooks, Their Music, and Its Liturgical Use." PhD diss., Indiana University, 1981.
- Liszt, Franz. "Introitus." In *Orgelkompositionen Franz Liszt*. Vol. 1. Edited by Karl Straube. New York: Peters, 1910.

- . *Requiem für Männerstimmen. Messen und Requiem mit Orgel. Kirchliche und Geistliche Gesangswerke Band III. Franz Liszts Musikalische Werke V.* Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1966.
- The Liturgy Documents: A Parish Resource.* 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> eds. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1991, 2004.
- Loewe, William P. *The College Student's Introduction to Christology.* Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996.
- Logan, F. Donald. *A History of the Church in the Middle Ages.* London & New York: Routledge, 2002. Reprint, 2003.
- Löhr, Aemiliana. *The Great Week: An Explanation of the Liturgy of Holy Week.* Translated by D. T. H. Bridgehouse. London: Longmans; Westminster, MD: Newman Press, 1958.
- Loneragan, Bernard. *Method in Theology.* London: Darton Longman & Todd Ltd, 1973. Reprint, Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1996.
- . "Revolution in Catholic Theology." In *A Second Collection*, 231-38. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1975.
- Lossky, N. "Principes théologiques de la musique liturgique." In *L'Eucharistie: célébrations, rites, piétés*, 259-65. Edited by A. M. Triacca and A. Pistoia. Bibliotheca Ephemerides Liturgicae, Subsidia 79. Rome: C.L.V. – Edizioni Liturgiche, 1995.
- Lotrecchiano, Gaetano R. "Ethnomusicology and the Study of Musical Change: An Introduction and Departure for Ethnoliturgyology." *Liturgical Ministry* 6 (Summer 1997): 108-19.
- Lukken, Gerard M. "Die architektonischen Dimensionen des Rituals." *LI* 39 (1989): 19-36.
- . "La liturgie comme lieu theologique irremplaçable." *Questions liturgiques* 56 (1975): 97-112.
- . "Liturgy and Language: An Approach from Semiotics." *Questions liturgiques* 73 (1992): 36-52.
- . *Per Visibilia ad Invisibilia: Anthropological, Theological and Semiotic Studies on the Liturgy and the Sacraments.* Edited by Louis van Tongereren and Charles Caspers. Kampen: Pharos, 1994.

- . “Plaidoyer pour une approche intégrale de la liturgie comme lieu théologique: un défi à toute la théologie.” *Questions liturgiques* 68 (1987): 242-55.
- . *Rituals in Abundance; Critical Reflections on the Place, Form and Identity of Christian Ritual in Our Culture*. Liturgia Condenda 17. Louvain: Peeters, 2004.
- . “Les transformations du rôle liturgique du peuple: la contribution de la sémiotique à l’histoire de la liturgie.” In *Omnes Circumadstantes: Contributions towards a History of the Role of the People in the Liturgy*, 15-30. Edited by Charles Caspers and Marc Schneiders. Kampen: Uitgeversmaatschappij J. H. Kok, 1990.
- . “The Unique Expression of Faith in the Liturgy.” In *Liturgical Experience of Faith*, 11-21. *Concilium* 82. Edited by Herman Schmidt and David N. Power. New York: Herder and Herder, 1973.
- Lukken, Gerard M., and Mark Searle. *Semiotics and Church Architecture: Applying the Semiotics of A. J. Greimas and the Paris School to the Analysis of Church Buildings*. Liturgia Codenda 1. Kampen: Kok Pharos, 1993.
- Lütolf, Max, ed. *Das Graduale von Santa Cecilia in Trastevere (1071): (Cod. Bodmer 74)*. 2 vols. Cologny-Geneva: Fondation Martin Bodmer, 1987.
- MacMullen, Ramsey. *Christianizing the Roman Empire (A.D. 100-400)*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1984.
- Maggiani, Silvano. “Liturgy and Aesthetics.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 2:263-80. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- Maiani, Bradford Charles. “The Responsory-Communions: Toward a Chronology of Selected Proper Chants.” PhD diss., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, 1996.
- Maldonado, Luis and David N. Power, eds. *Liturgy and Human Passage*. *Concilium* 112. New York: Seabury Press, 1978.
- Mannion, M. Francis. “The Need for an Adequate Liturgical Musicology.” *Worship* 64 (1990): 78-81.
- Marini, Piero. *A Challenging Reform: Realizing the Vision of the Liturgical Renewal 1963-1975*. Edited by Mark R. Francis, John R. Page and Keith F. Pecklers. Collegeville, Minnesota: Liturgical press, 2007.

- . “Elenco degli ‘Schemata’ del ‘Consilium’ et della Congregazione per il Culto Divino (Marzo 1964-Luglio 1975).” *Notitiae*, 195-96 (1982): 455-772.
- Marshall, Paul V. “Reconsidering ‘Liturgical Theology’: Is There a *Lex orandi* for All Christians?” *Studia Liturgica* 25:2 (1995): 129-50.
- Marsili, Salvatore. “Dalle origini Liturgia cristiana alla caratterizzazione rituale.” In *Anamnesis*, 2:11-54. Edited by S. Marsili, et al. Turin: Marietti, 1978.
- . *I Segni del Mistero di Cristo*. Rome: Edizione Liturgiche, 1987.
- . “La Liturgia: Momento storico della Salvezza.” In *Anamnesis*, 1:33-156. Edited by B. Neunheuser, et al. Turin: Marietti, 1974.
- . *Mistero di Cristo e Liturgia nello Spirito*. Edited by Maria Anselma Abignente. Vatican City: Libreria Editrice Vaticana, 1986.
- . “Teologia della celebrazione dell’ eucaristia.” In *Anamnesis*, 3/2:11-186. Edited by S. Marsili, et al. Turin: Marietti, 1983.
- Martimort, Aimé-Georges. *Les “Ordines,” les ordinaires et les cérémoniaux*. Typologie des sources du Moyen Âge occidental 56. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 1991.
- Mason, Paul. “The Pastoral Implications of John Paul II’s Chirograph for the Centenary of the *Motu Proprio* ‘Tra Le Sollecitudini’ on Sacred Music.” *Worship* 82:5 (Sept 2008): 386-413.
- Matthews, E. “The Use of Hymns in the Churches: Roman Catholic Tradition,” and “Sing Hymns or Sing Liturgy.” In *Singing the Faith: Essays by Members of the Joint Liturgical Group on the Use of Hymns in Liturgy*. Edited by Charles Robertson. Norwich: Canterbury Press, 1990.
- Matthews, Thomas F. *The Early Churches of Constantinople: Architecture and Liturgy*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1971.
- . “An Early Roman Chancel Arrangement and Its Liturgical Function.” *Rivista di archeologia cristiana* 38 (1962): 71-95.
- Mauriac, François. *Holy Thursday: An Intimate Remembrance*. Manchester, NH: Sophia Institute Press, 1991. First English edition entitled *The Eucharist*. New York: Longmans, Green Publishing Company, 1944.

- Mazza, Enrico. *The Celebration of the Eucharist: The Origin of the Rite and the Development of Its Interpretation*. Translated by Matthew J. O'Connell. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- . "The Eucharist in the First Four Centuries." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3:9-60. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- McLeod, Norma, and Marcia Herndon, eds. *The Ethnography of Musical Performance*. Norwood, PA: Norwood Editions, 1980.
- McFague, Sally. *Metaphoric Theology: Models of God in Religious Language*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press, 1982.
- . *Models of God: Theology for an Ecological, Nuclear Age*. Minneapolis: Augsburg Fortress, 1987.
- McGann, Mary E. *Exploring Music as Worship and Theology*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2002.
- . "Interpreting the Ritual Role of Music in Christian Liturgical Practice." PhD diss., Graduate Theological Union, Berkeley, 1996.
- . *A Precious Fountain: Music in the Worship of an African American Catholic Community*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2004.
- McKay, Heather A. *Sabbath and Synagogue: The Question of Sabbath Worship in Ancient Judaism*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1994.
- McKenna, Edward J. "Chronicle: Use of Music in the Roman Sacramentary." *Worship* 65 (January 1991): 65-68.
- McKinnon, James. *The Advent Project: The Later-Seventh-Century Creation of the Roman Mass Proper*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2000.
- , ed. *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*. Music and Society Series. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- McKinnon, James. "Antoine Chavasse and the Dating of Early Chant." *PMM* 1 (1992): 123-47.
- . "The Book of Psalms, Monasticism, and the Western Liturgy." In *The Place of the Psalms in the Intellectual Culture of the Middle Ages*, 43-58. Edited by Nancey Van Deusen. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.



- . “Christian Antiquity.” In *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*, 68-87. Edited by James W. McKinnon. Music and Society Series. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- . “Compositional Planning in the Roman Mass Proper.” *Studia Musicologica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 39: 2/4 (1998): 241-45.
- . “Desert Monasticism and the Later Fourth-Century Psalmodic Movement.” *Music & Letters* 75:4 (November 1994): 505-21.
- . “Early Western Civilisation.” In *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*, 1-44. Edited by James W. McKinnon. Music and Society. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- . “The Emergence of Gregorian Chant in the Carolingian Era.” In *Antiquity and the Middle Ages: From Ancient Greece to the 15<sup>th</sup> Century*, 88-119. Edited by James W. McKinnon. Music and Society Series. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991.
- . “The Exclusion of Musical Instruments from the Ancient Synagogue.” *Proceedings of the Royal Musical Association* 106 (1979-80): 77-87.
- . “Festival, Text and Melody: Chronological Stages in the Life of Chant?” In *Chant and Its Peripheries*, 1-11. Edited by Bryan Gillingham and Paul Merkley. Musicological Studies 72. Ottawa: Institute of Medieval Music, 1998.
- . “The Fourth-Century Origin of the Gradual.” *Early Music History* 7 (1987): 91-106.
- . “Gregorius presul composuit hunc libellum musicae artis.” In *The Liturgy of the Medieval Church*, 673-94. Edited by Thomas J. Heffernan and E. Ann Matter. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 2001.
- . “Lector Chant vs. Schola Chant: A Question of Historical Plausibility.” In *Labore fratres in unum: Festschrift László Dobszay zum 60 Geburtstag*, 201-11. Edited by Janka Szendrei and David Hiley. Hildesheim: Georg Olms Verlag, 1995.
- . “Liturgical Psalmody in the Sermons of St. Augustine: An Introduction.” In *The Study of Medieval Chant: Paths and Bridges, East and West*, 7-24. Edited by Peter Jeffery. Rochester, NY: Boydell Press, 2001.
- . “The Meaning of the Patristic Polemic against Musical Instruments.” *Current Musicology* 1 (1985): 69-82.

- . *Music in Early Christian Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1987.
- . “On the Question of Psalmody in the Ancient Synagogue.” *Early Music History* 6 (1986): 159-91.
- . “Properization: The Roman Mass.” In *Cantus planus*, 15-22. Edited by László Dobszay. Budapest, 1993.
- . *The Temple, the Church Fathers, and Early Western Chant*. Brookfield, VT: Ashgate, 1998.
- McMahon, J. Michael. “Establishing Criteria for Liturgical Songs: The Directory for Music and Liturgy.” *Pastoral Music* 31:6 (August-September 2007): 18-19.
- . “General Instruction of the Roman Missal (2003).” In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 87-90. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- McManus, Frederick R. “The Church at Prayer: Going beyond Rubrics to the Heart of the Church’s Worship.” *The Jurist* 53:2 (1993): 263-83.
- . “Gregorian Chant in Official Documents.” In *Gregorian Chant in Pastoral Ministry Today*, 13-33. Washington, DC: Center for Ward Method Studies, 1986.
- . “Liturgical Law.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:399-420. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . “Liturgical Law and Difficult Cases.” *Worship* 48 (1974): 347-66.
- . *Liturgical Participation: An Ongoing Assessment*. American Essays in Liturgy 10. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1988.
- . *The Rites of Holy Week: Ceremonies, Preparations, Music, Commentary*. Paterson, NJ: St. Anthony Guild Press, 1956.
- McMichael, Ralph N. “The Redemption of Creation: A Liturgical Theology. In *Creation and Liturgy*, 145-60. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1993.
- McNapsy, Clement J. “The Sacral in Liturgical Music.” In *Revival of the Liturgy*, 163-90. Edited by Frederick R. McManus. New York: Herder and Herder, 1963.

- Meeks, Wayne A. *The First Urban Christians: The Social World of the Apostle Paul*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1983.
- Megivern, James J., ed. *Official Catholic Teachings: Worship and Liturgy*. Wilmington, NC: Consortium Books, 1978.
- Messenger, Ruth Ellis. "Processional Hymnody in the Later Middle Ages." *Transactions and Proceedings of the American Philological Association* 81 (1950): 185-99.
- Messiaen, Olivier. *Messe de la Pentecôte*. Paris: Alphonse Leduc, 1951.
- Metzger, Marcel. "The History of the Eucharistic Liturgy in Rome." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3:103-32. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- Metzinger, Joseph P. "The Liturgical Function of the Entrance Song: An Examination of the Introits and Introit Tropes of the Manuscript Piacenza, Archivio Capitolare, 65." D.M.A. diss., Catholic University of America, 1993.
- Meyer, Ben F. "The Primacy of the Intended Sense of Texts." In *Lonergan's Hermeneutics*, 81-119. Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 1989.
- Migne, Jacques Paul, ed. *Patrologia Græca*. Paris: Migne, 1857-66.
- . *Patrologia Latina*. Rome: Typis Vaticanis, 1906-8.
- Milner, Anthony. "The Instruction on Sacred Music." *Worship* 41 (1967): 322-33.
- Missale Romanum. Editio princeps (1570)*. Monumenta liturgica Concilii Tridentini 2. Vatican City: Libreria Editrice Vaticana, 1998.
- Mitchell, Leonel L. "The Liturgical Roots of Theology." In *Time and Community*, 243-54. Edited by J. Neil Alexander. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.
- Mitchell, Nathan D. "Celebrating the *Constitution on the Sacred Liturgy*." *Pastoral Music* 28:1 (October-November 2003): 19-27.
- . *Liturgy and the Social Sciences*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- . "Ritual as Reading." In *Source and Summit*, 161-81. Edited by Joanne M. Pierce and Michael Downey. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.

- . “Sacrosanctum Concilium (1963).” In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 17-20. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- . “Silent Music.” *Worship* 67 (May 1993): 261-68.
- Mitchell, Nathan D., and John F. Baldovin, eds. *Rule of Prayer, Rule of Faith*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1996.
- Mohlberg, Leo Cunibert, ed. *Liber Sacramentorum Romanae Ecclesiae Ordinis Anni Circuli (Cod. Vat. Reg. lat. 316 / Paris Bibl. Nat. 7193, 41/56) (Sacramentarium Gelasianum)*. Rome: Herder, 1960.
- Mohrmann, Christine. “Les origines de la latinité chrétienne à Rome.” *Vigiliae Christianae* 3:3 (July, 1949): 163-83.
- Möller, H. “Research on the Antiphonar: Problems and Perspectives.” *Journal of the Plainsong and Mediaeval Music Society* 10 (1987): 1-14.
- Mooney, Christopher F. *Theology and Scientific Knowledge: Changing Models of God’s Presence in the World*. Notre Dame, IN: University of Notre Dame Press, 1996.
- Morin, G. “Le plus ancien lectionnaire ou Comes de l’Eglise romaine.” *Revue bénédictine* 27 (1910): 41-74.
- Morozowich, Mark. “Holy Thursday in the Jerusalem and Constantinopolitan Traditions: The Liturgical Celebrations from the Fourth to the Fourteenth Centuries.” SEOD diss., Pontifical Oriental Institute, 2002.
- Morrill, Bruce T. and Andrea Goodrich. “Liturgical Music: Bodies Proclaiming and Responding to the Word of God.” In *Bodies of Worship*, 157-72. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- Mullett, Michael A. *The Catholic Reformation*. New York: Routledge, 1999.
- Murphy, Roland E. “Reflections on Contextual Interpretation of the Psalms.” In *The Shape and Shaping of the Psalter*, 21-28. Sheffield: JSOT Press, 1993.
- Murrett, John C. *The Message of the Mass Melodies*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1960.
- Music, D. W. *Hymnology: A Collection of Source Readings*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 1996.

Myers, Helen, ed. *Ethnomusicology: An Introduction*. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., 1992.

Neunheuser, Burkhard. "Roman Genius Revisited." In *Liturgy for the New Millennium: A Commentary on the Revised Sacramentary*, 35-48. Edited by Mark R. Francis and Keith F. Pecklers. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.

*New Catholic Encyclopedia*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Edited at The Catholic University of America. Farmington Hills, MI: Gale, 2002.

*New Dictionary of Sacramental Worship*. Ed. Peter E. Fink. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990.

*New Grove Dictionary of Music and Musicians*. Edited by Stanley Sadie. London: Macmillan, 1980. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. edited by Stanley Sadie and John Tyrrell. London: Macmillan, 2001.

*New Oxford Dictionary of Music: Early Medieval up to 1300*. Ed. Anselm Hughes. London: Oxford, 1954.

Newman, David R. "Observations on Method in Liturgical Theology." *Worship* 57 (July 1983): 377-84.

Nichols, Bridget. "The Bible in the Liturgy: A Hermeneutical Discussion of Faith and Language." *Studia Liturgica* 27:2 (1997): 200-16.

———. *Liturgical Hermeneutics: Interpreting Liturgical Rites in Performance*. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang, 1996.

Nketia, J. H. Kwabena. "Musical Interaction in Ritual Events." In *Music and the Experience of God*, 111-24. Edited by Mary Collins, David Power, and Mellonee Burnim. *Concilium* 202. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1989.

Nock, A. D. *Conversion: The Old and New in Religion from Alexander the Great to Augustine of Hippo*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1998.

Noirot, Marcel. "La 'rationabilitas' des usages contraires aux lois liturgiques depuis la promulgation du Code de droit canonique." *L'Année Canonique* 1 (1952): 129-40.

———. "Réflexions canoniques sur des lois liturgiques depuis la promulgation du Code de droit canonique." *Maison-Dieu* 46 (1956): 137-53.

- Nowacki, Edward. "Reading the Melodies of the Old Roman Mass Proper: A Hypothesis Defended." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 319-30. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- O'Connell, J. B. *The Celebration of Mass: A Study of the Rubrics of the Roman Missal*. 3 vols. Milwaukee: Bruce, 1940-41.
- O'Grady, John F. *Models of Jesus*. Garden City, NY: Doubleday, 1981.
- . *Models of Jesus Revisited*. Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1994.
- O'Keefe, John J., and R. R. Reno. *Sanctified Vision: An Introduction to Early Christian Interpretation of the Bible*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2005.
- Örsy, Ladislav. "Ecclesiastical Laws." In *The Code of Canon Law: A Text and Commentary*. Edited by James A. Coriden, Thomas J. Green, and Donald E. Heintschel. New York: Paulist Press, 1985.
- . "The Interpretation of Laws: New Variations on an Old Theme." *Studia Canonica* 17 (1983): 107-11.
- . "The Interpreter and His Art." *The Jurist* 40 (1980): 27-56.
- . *Theology and Canon Law: New Horizons for Legislation and Interpretation*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990.
- Ostdiek, Gilbert, ed. *Finding a Voice to Give God Praise: Essays in the Many Languages of Liturgy*. Introduction by Kathleen Hughes. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2002.
- Ostdiek, Gilbert. "Ritual and Transformation: Reflections on Liturgy and the Social Sciences." *Liturgical Ministry* 2 (1993): 38-48.
- Palazzo, Eric. "Confrontation du répertoire des tropes et du cycle iconographique du tropaire d'Autun." In *Tradizione dei trope*, 95-123.
- . *A History of Liturgical Books from the Beginning to the Thirteenth Century*. Translated by Madeleine Beaumont. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- . "Le rôle des *libelli* dans la pratique liturgique du haut Moyen Age: Histoire et typologie." *Revue Mabillon* 62 (1990): 9-36.

- Parker, Elizabeth C. "Architecture as Liturgical Setting." In *The Liturgy of the Medieval Church*, 273-326. Edited by Thomas J. Heffernan and E. Ann Matter. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 2001.
- Parsons, Mark David. "Text, Tone, and Context: A Methodological Prolegomenon for a Theology of Liturgical Song." *Worship* 79:1 (January 2005): 54-69.
- . "“With Sighs Too Deep for Words’: Liturgical Song as Metaphor. Ph.D. diss., Graduate Theological Union, 2003.
- Pass, David B. *Music and the Church: A Theology of Church Music*. Nashville: Broadman Press, 1989.
- Pecklers, Keith F. *Dynamic Equivalence: The Living Language of Christian Worship*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2003.
- . "History of the Roman Liturgy from the Sixteenth until the Twentieth Centuries." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:153-78. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . *The Unread Vision: The Liturgical Movement in the United States of America 1926-1955*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- Pennington, Kenneth. "A Short History of Canon Law." <http://faculty.cua.edu/pennington/Canon%20Law/ShortHistoryCanonLaw.htm>.
- Perrot, Charles. "Music in the Primitive Church." In *Liturgy: A Creative Tradition*, 3-9. *Concilium* 162. Mary Collins and David N. Power, eds. New York: Seabury, 1983.
- Phan, Peter C. "Contemporary Theology and Inculturation in the United States." In *The Multicultural Church: A New Landscape in U. S. Theologies*, 109-30. Edited by William Cenkner. New York: Paulist Press, 1996.
- . "How Much Uniformity Can We Stand? How Much Unity Do We Want? Church and Worship in the Next Millennium." *Worship* 72 (May 1998): 194-210.
- . "The Liturgy of Life as the ‘Summit and Source’ of the Eucharistic Liturgy: Church Worship as Symbolization of the Liturgy of Life?" In *Incongruities: Who We Are and How We Pray*, 5-33. Edited by Timothy Fitzgerald and David Lysik. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.

- Pierce, Joanne M., and Michael Downey, eds. *Source and Summit: Commemorating Josef A. Jungmann, S.J.* Foreword by Balthasar Fischer. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- Pietri, Charles. "Liturgy, Culture and Society: The Example of Rome at the End of the Ancient World (Fourth-Fifth Centuries)." In *Liturgy: A Creative Tradition*, 38-45. *Concilium* 162. Mary Collins and David N. Power, eds. New York: Seabury, 1983.
- Piil, Mary Alice. "The Local Church as the Subject of the Action of the Eucharist." In *Shaping English Liturgy*, 173-96. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.
- Pinell i Pons, Jordi. "History of the Liturgies of the Non-Roman West." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:179-98. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Pirrotta, Nino. *Music and Culture in Italy from the Middle Ages to the Baroque: A Collection of Essays*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1984.
- . "The Oral and Written Traditions of Music." In *Music and Culture in Italy from the Middle Ages to the Baroque: A Collection of Essays*, 72-79. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1984.
- Planchart, Alejandro Enrique. "On the Nature of Transmission and Change in Trope Repertories." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 41 (Summer 1988): 214-15, 220.
- . *The Repertory of Tropes at Winchester*. 2 vols. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1977.
- Pond, Edward Wiatt. "A Select Study of the Liturgical Music of Bernard Huijbers: The Theological Principles Which Are Fundamental to His Music, and the Means by Which He Translated These Principles into Music for the Assembly." DMA diss., Catholic University of America, 1991.
- Pontifical Biblical Commission. *The Interpretation of the Bible in the Church*. Boston: Pauline Books and Media, 1993.
- Pottie, Charles. *A More Profound Alleluia: Gelineau and Routley on Music in Christian Worship*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1984.
- Power, Brian Edward. "The Polyphonic Introits of 'Trento, archivio capitolare, MS 93': A Stylistic Analysis." PhD diss., University of Toronto, 1999.



- Power, David N. "Cult to Culture: The Liturgical Foundation of Theology." *Worship* 54 (November 1980): 482-95.
- . *The Eucharistic Mystery: Revitalizing the Tradition*. New York: Seabury, 1992. Reprint, New York: Crossroad, 1997.
- . "Liturgical Praxis: A New Consciousness at the Eye of Worship." *Worship* 61:4 (July 1987): 290-304.
- . "Liturgy as an Act of Communication and Communion: Cultural and Practical Implications in an Age Becoming Digital." *Mission* 3:1 (1996): 43-62.
- . "People at Liturgy." In *Twenty Years of Concilium – Retrospect and Prospect*, 8-14. *Concilium* 170. Edited by P. Brand, E. Schillebeeckx, and A. Weiler. Edinburgh: T. and T. Clark, 1983.
- . *Sacrament: The Language of God's Giving*. A Herder and Herder Book. New York: Crossroad, 1999.
- . *The Sacrifice We Offer: The Tridentine Dogma and Its Reinterpretation*. Edinburgh: T. and T. Clark, 1987.
- . "Theology of Eucharistic Celebration." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3:321-66. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- , ed. *The Times of Celebration*. *Concilium* 142. New York: Seabury, 1981.
- Power, David N. "Two Expressions of Faith: Worship and Theology." *Liturgical Experience of Faith*, 95-103. *Concilium* 82. Edited by H. Schmidt and David Power. New York: Herder and Herder, 1973.
- . "Unripe Grapes: The Critical Function of Liturgical Theology." *Worship* 52 (September 1978): 386-99.
- . *Unsearchable Riches: The Symbolic Nature of Liturgy*. New York: Pueblo Publishing Company, 1984.
- . *"The Word of the Lord": Liturgy's Use of Scripture*. Maryknoll: Orbis, 2001.
- . *Worship, Culture and Theology*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.
- . "Worship in a New World: Some Theological Considerations." In *The Changing Face of Jewish and Christian Worship in North America*, 161-83. Edited by Paul F.

- Bradshaw and Lawrence A. Hoffman. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 1991.
- Power, David N., and Herman Schmidt, eds. *Liturgical Experience of Faith. Concilium* 82. Edited by H. Schmidt and David Power. New York: Herder and Herder, 1973.
- . *Politics and Liturgy. Concilium* 92. New York: Herder & Herder, 1974.
- Quasten, J. *Music and Worship in Pagan and Christian Antiquity*. Translated by Boniface Ramsey. NPM Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Washington, DC: National Association of Pastoral Musicians, 1983.
- Quinn, Franck C. "Ministers, Music, and the New Sacramentary." *Pastoral Music* 18 (February-March 1994): 17-22.
- . "Music in Catholic Worship: The Effect of Ritual on Music and Music on Ritual." *Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the North American Academy of Liturgy* (1989): 161-76.
- Qureshi, Regula Burckhardt. "Musical Sound and Contextual Input: A Performance Model for Musical Analysis." *Ethnomusicology* 31:1 (1987): 56-86.
- Rahner, Karl. "Towards a Fundamental Theological Interpretation of Vatican II." *Theological Studies* 40 (1979): 716-27.
- Ramis, Gabriel. "The Eucharistic Celebration in the Non-Roman West." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3:245-62. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- . "Liturgical Books of the Non-Roman West." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:315-30. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . "Liturgical Families in the West." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:25-32. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Rasmussen, Niels K. *Les Pontificaux du haut Moyen Âge: Genèse du livre liturgique de l'évêque*. Spicilegium sacrum lovaniense. Lovain, 1998.
- . "Quelques réflexions sur la théologie des tropes." In *Research on Tropes*, 77-88. Edited by Gunilla Iversen. Konferenser 8. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1983.

- Ray, Walter. "Toward a Narrative-Critical Approach to Early Liturgy." In *Studia Liturgica Diversa*. Edited by Maxwell E. Johnson and L. Edward Philipps. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2004.
- Regan, Patrick. "The Three Days and the Forty Days." *Worship* 54:1 (1980): 2-18.
- Reid, Duncan. *Energies of the Spirit: Trinitarian Models in Eastern Orthodox and Western Theology*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- Reier, Ellen Jane. "The Introit Trope Repertory at Nevers: MSS Paris B.N. Lat. 9449 and Paris B.N. N.A. Lat. 1235." 3 vols. PhD diss., University of California, Berkeley, 1981.
- Rendler-McQueeney, Elaine. "Music in Catholic Worship (1972): and Liturgical Music Today (1982)." In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 25-27. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Renoux, Athanase. *Le Codex arménien Jérusalem 121*. Volume 2. *Édition comparée du texte et de deux autres manuscrits*. *Patrologia Orientalis* 36.2:168. Turnhout, 1969.
- Reynolds, Roger. "The Organisation, Law and Liturgy of the Western Church, 700–900." In *The New Cambridge Medieval History*, 2:587-621. Edited by Rosamond McKitterick. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1991.
- Rice, Timothy. "Toward the Remodeling of Ethnomusicology." *Ethnomusicology* 31:3 (1987): 469-88.
- Richstatter, Thomas. "Changing Style of Liturgical Law." *The Jurist* 38 (1978): 415-25.
- . *Liturgical Law Today: New Style, New Spirit*. Chicago: Franciscan Herald Press, 1977.
- . "Obedience to Liturgical Law: A Historical Study of the Theological Context of Roman Catholic Liturgical Law before and after the Second Vatican Council." DST diss., Institut Catholique de Paris, 1976.
- Ricoeur, Paul. *Interpretation Theory: Discourse and the Surplus of Meaning*. Fort Worth: Texas Christian University Press, 1976.
- . "The Model of the Text: Meaningful Action Considered as a Text." In *Hermeneutics and the Human Sciences: Essays on Language, Action and Interpretation*, 197-221.

- Edited and translated by John B. Thompson. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1981.
- Ridder, R. Todd. "Antiphons for Paschal Triduum-Easter in the Medieval Office." *Worship* 70 (March 1996): 187-89.
- . "Musical and Theological Patterns Involved in the Transmission of Mass Chants for the Five Oldest Marian Feasts: An Examination of Proper Chants and Tropes in a Select Group of Medieval Manuscripts." 2 vols. PhD diss., Catholic University of America, 1993.
- Righetti, Mario. *Manuale di Storia Liturgica*. 4 vols. Milan: Editrice Ancora, 1950-56.
- Roederer, Charlotte Dianne. "Eleventh-century Aquitanian Chant: Studies Relating to a Local Repertory of Processional Antiphons." PhD diss., Yale University, 1971.
- Romita, Fiorenzo. *Codex Juris Musicae Sacrae*. Rome: Desclée, 1952.
- . *Ius musicae liturgicae*. Turin: Marietti, 1936.
- Routley, Erik. *Christian Hymns Observed*. London: A. R. Mowbray, 1983.
- . *Church Music and Theology*. Philadelphia: Muhlenberg Press, 1960.
- . *Words, Music and the Church*. Nashville: Abingdon Press, 1968.
- Rouwhorst, Gerard. "La célébration de l'eucharistie selon les Actes de Thomas." In *Omnes Circumstantes: Contributions towards a History of the Role of the People in the Liturgy*. Edited by Charles Caspers and Marc Schneiders. Kampen: Uitgeversmaatschappij J. H. Kok, 1990.
- Rowley, H.H. *Worship in Ancient Israel: Its Forms and Meaning*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press; London: SPCK, 1967.
- Ruff, Anthony. "The Music 'Specially Suited to the Roman Liturgy': On the One Hand . . . ." *Pastoral Music* 32:5 (June-July 2008): 15-16.
- . *Sacred Music and Liturgical Reform: Treasures and Transformations*. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2007.
- Saliers, Don E. "The Integrity of Sung Prayer." *Worship* 55 (July 1981): 290-303.
- . *Music and Theology*. Horizons in Theology. Nashville: Abingdon Press, 2007.

———. *Worship as Theology: Foretaste of Glory Divine*. Nashville: Abingdon Press, 1994.

———. *Worship Come to Its Senses*. Nashville: Abingdon Press, 1996.

Saxer, Victor. "L'utilisation pour la liturgie de l'espace urbain et suburbain, l'exemple de Rome dans l'Antiquité et le haut Moyen Age." *Actes du XI<sup>e</sup> Congrès international d'Archéologie Chrétienne*. Rome, 1989.

Schaefer, Edward. *Catholic Music Through the Ages: Balancing the Needs of a Worshipping Church*. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2008.

Schaefer, Mary M. "Latin Mass Commentaries from the Ninth through the Twelfth Centuries: Chronology and Theology." In *Fountain of Life*. Edited by Gerard Austin. In memory of Niels K. Rasmussen. Washington, Pastoral Press, 1991.

Schillebeeckx, Edward. "Liturgy and Theology." In *Revelation and Theology*. Volume 1. New York: Sheed and Ward, 1967.

Schmemmann, Alexander. *The Eucharist: The Sacrament of the Kingdom*. Crestwood: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1988.

———. *Introduction to Liturgical Theology*. London: Faith Press, 1966.

———. "Liturgical Theology: Its Task and Method." *St. Vladimir's Seminary Quarterly* 1: 4 (October 1957): 16-27.

———. "Liturgy and Theology." *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 17 (Spring 1972): 86-100.

———. *Liturgy and Tradition: Theological Reflections of Alexander Schmemmann*. Edited by Thomas Fisch. Crestwood: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1990.

———. "Theology and Liturgical Tradition." In *Worship in Scripture and Tradition*. Edited by Massey Shepherd. New York: Oxford University Press, 1963. 165-78.

Schmidt, Hermanus A. P. *Hebdomada Sancta*. 2 vols. Rome: Herder, 1956-57.

Schmitz, Walter J. *The New Holy Week Ordo*. STD diss. abstract. The Catholic University of America Studies in Sacred Theology (Second Series) 96. Washington, DC: The Catholic University of America Press, 1956.

Schubart, Wilhelm, and Carl Schmidt, eds. *Acts of Paul*. Hamburg: J. J. Augustin, 1936.

- Schueller, Herbert M. *The Idea of Music: An Introduction to Musical Aesthetics in Antiquity and the Middle Ages*. Early Drama, Art, and Music Monograph Series 9. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, 1988.
- Schutz, Alfred. "Making Music Together: A Study in Social Relationship." *Social Research* 18:1 (1951):76-97
- Schweibert, Jonathan. "Evading Rituals in New Testament Studies." *CSSR Bulletin* 33:1 (February 2004): 10-13.
- Scicolone, Ildebrando. "La Memoria dell'Istituzione dell'Eucaristia." In *La Celebrazione del Triduo Pasquale: Anamnesis e Mimesis*, 55-69. Studia Anselmiana 102. Analecta Liturgica 14. Edited by Ildebrando Scicolone. Rome: Pontificio Ateneo S. Anselmo, 1990.
- Searle, Mark. "Fons vitae: A Case Study in the Use of Liturgy as a Theological Source." In *Fountain of Life*. Edited by Gerard Austin. In memory of Niels K. Rasmussen. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1991.
- . "Introduction to the Semiotics of Liturgy." Presented to Ritual-Language-Action: Social Sciences Study Group of the North American Academy of Liturgy. Nashville. 2-5 January, 1990.
- . "New Tasks, New Methods: The Emergence of Pastoral Liturgical Studies." *Worship* 57:4 (1983): 291-308.
- . "Ritual and Music: A Theory of Liturgy and Implications for Music." *Assembly* 12 (1986): 314-17.
- . "Semper Reformanda: The Opening and Closing Rites of the Mass." In *Shaping English Liturgy*, 53-92. Edited by Peter C. Finn and James M. Schellman. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.
- Searle, Mark, and Gerard Lukken. *Semiotics and Church Architecture*. Kampen: Kok Pharos, 1993.
- Seasoltz, R. Kevin. "Anthropology and Liturgical Theology: Search for a Compatible Methodology." In *Liturgy and Human Passage*, 3-13. *Concilium* 112. Edited by David N. Power and Luis Maldonado. New York: Seabury, 1979.
- . *New Liturgy, New Laws*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1980.

- Seeger, Anthony. "Ethnography of Music." In *Ethnomusicology: An Introduction*. Edited by Helen Myers. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., Inc., 1992.
- Senn, Frank C. *Christian Worship and Its Cultural Setting*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press, 1983.
- . *The People's Work: A Social History of the Liturgy*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 2006.
- . "Worship, Doctrine, and Life: Liturgical Theology, Theologies of Worship, and Doxological Theology." *Currents in Theology and Mission* 9 (February 1982): 11-21.
- Shepherd, Massey H. "The Liturgical Reform of Damasus I." In *Kyriakon: Festschrift Johannes Quasten*, 2:847-63. Edited by Patrick Granfield and Josef A. Jungmann. Volume II. Aschendorff, Münster Westfalen, 1970.
- Sherman, Anthony F. "A New Resource: The *Pastoral Introduction to the Order of Mass*." *Pastoral Music*. 27:5 (June-July 2003): 40-42.
- Silagi, G. *Liturgische Tropen*. Münchener Beiträge zur Mediävistik und Renaissance-Forschung 36. Munich, 1986.
- Silbiger, Alexander. "The Roman Frescobaldi Tradition, c. 1640-1670." *Journal of the American Musicological Society*. 33:1 (Spring 1980): 42-87.
- Silverberg, Ann Louise. "Caecilian Reform in Baltimore, 1868-1903." PhD diss., University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 1992.
- de Simone, Oronzo, de. "De nozione et officio liturgici iuris." *Monitor Ecclesiasticus* 85 (1960): 151-59.
- Sirota, Victoria. "An Exploration of Music as Theology." *The Arts in Religious and Theological Studies* 5:3 (Summer 1993): 24-28.
- Skelley, Michael. *The Liturgy of the World: Karl Rahner's Theology of Worship*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1991.
- Slaa, Willibrod. *Liturgical Law: Existence, Exigency and Pastoral Dimension of Conciliar and Post Conciliar Liturgical Legislation*. JCD diss., Pontifical Urban University, 1983.
- Sloboda, John A., ed. *Generative Processes in Music: The Psychology of Performance, Improvisation, and Composition*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1988.

- Slough, Rebecca Jo. “‘Let Every Tongue, by Art Refined, Mingle Its Softest Notes with Mine’: An Exploration of Hymn-Singing Events and Dimensions of Knowing.” In *Religious and Social Ritual: Interdisciplinary Exploration*, 175-208. Edited by Michael B. Aune and Valerie De Martinis. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- . *A Method for Describing the Practice and Theology of Worship: A Study of Prayer in Three Free Church Congregations*. PhD diss., Graduate Theological Union, Berkeley, 1989.
- Sloyan, Gerard. “The Lectionary as a Context for Interpretation.” *Interpretation* 31 (1977): 131-38.
- Small, Christopher. *Musicking: The Meanings of Performing and Listening*. Hanover: University Press of New England, 1988.
- Smith, Dennis E. *From Symposium to Eucharist: The Banquet in the Early Christian World*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 2003.
- Smith, J. A., “The Ancient Synagogue, the Early Church, and Singing.” *Music and Letters* 65:1 (January 1984): 1-16.
- . “First-century Christian Singing and Its Relationship to Contemporary Jewish Religious Song.” *Music and Letters* 75 (February 1994): 1-15.
- Smith, William Sheppard. *Musical Aspects of the New Testament*. Amsterdam: Uitgeverij w. Ten Have N.V., 1962.
- Smolarski, Dennis C. *The General Instruction of the Roman Missal, 1969-2002: A Commentary*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2003.
- Smulders, Piet. “Sacramenta et Ecclesia, Ius Canonicum—Cultus—Pneuma.” *Periodica* 48 (1959): 3-53.
- The Snowbird Statement on Catholic Liturgical Music*. Salt Lake City: Madeleine Institute, 1995.
- Snyder, Gradon F. *Ante-Pacem: Archaeological Evidence of Church Life Before Constantine*. Rev. ed. Macon, GA: Mercer University Press, 2003.
- Sodi, Manlio, and Alessandro Toniolo. *Concordantia et indices Missalis Romani. Editio typica tertia*. Vatican City: Libreria Editrice Vaticana, 2002.



- Sodi, Manlio and Achille Maria Triacca, eds. *Missale Romanum Editio Princeps (1570)*. Vatican City: Libreria Editrice Vaticana, 1998.
- Söhngen, Oskar. "Music and Theology: A Systematic Approach." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion Thematic Studies* 50:1 (1983): 1-19.
- Southern, E. *The Buxheim Organ Book*. Brooklyn, NY, 1963.
- Sparksman, Brian Joseph. "The Minister of Music in the Western Church: A Canonical-Historical Study." JCD diss., Catholic University of America, 1981.
- Speelman, Willem Marie. *The Generation of Meaning in Liturgical Songs: A Semiotic Analysis of Five Liturgical Songs as Syncretic Discourses*. Kampen, The Netherlands: Kok Pharos, 1995.
- Spencer, Jon Michael. *Theological Music: Introduction to Theo-Musicology*. New York: Greenwood Press, 1991.
- Sperry-White, Grant, ed. *Testamentum Domini*. Cambridge: Grove Books Ltd, 1991.
- Spinks, Bryan D., ed. *The Place of Christ in Liturgical Prayer: Trinity, Christology, and Liturgical Theology*, 127-94. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008.
- Springer, Carl P. E. "Ambrose's *Veni redemptor gentium*: The Aesthetics of Antiphony." *Jahrbuch für Antike und Christentum* 34 (1991): 76-87.
- Stäblein, Bruno, ed. *Monumenta monodica medii aevi*. Kassel: Bärenreiter, 1956-.
- Stansbury-O'Donnell, Mark Douglas. "The Shape of the Church: The Relationship of Architecture, Art, and Liturgy at the Cathedral of Trier." 2 vols. PhD diss., Yale University, 1990.
- Stark, Rodney. *The Rise of Christianity: How the Obscure, Marginal Jesus Movement Became the Dominant Religious Force in the Western World in a Few Centuries*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.
- Stauffer, Anita, ed. *Worship and Culture in Dialogue*. Geneva: Lutheran World Federation, 1994.
- Stefani, Gino. "L'espressione vocale nella liturgia primitiva." *Ephemerides Liturgicae* 84 (1970): 97-112.

- Steiner, Ruth. "Epulari autem et gaudere oportebat." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 331-50. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003.
- . *Studies in Gregorian Chant*. Aldershot, UK: Ashgate, 1999.
- Stevenson, Kenneth. *The First Rites: Worship in the Early Church*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1989.
- . *Jerusalem Revisited: The Liturgical Meaning of Holy Week*. Washington: Pastoral Press, 1988.
- . "Lex orandi and lex credendi—Strange Bedfellows? Some Reflections on Worship and Doctrine." *Scottish Journal of Theology* 39 (1986): 225-41.
- . "A Liturgist's Response." In *The Interpretation of the Bible in the Church*, 156-63. London: SCM Press, 1995.
- . "On Keeping Holy Week." *Theology* 89 (January 1986): 32-38.
- Stewart-Sykes, Alistair, ed. *The Didascalia Apostolorum: An English Version with Introduction and Annotation*. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 2009.
- . *Hippolytus: On the Apostolic Tradition*. Crestwood, NY: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2001.
- Stoltzfus, Philip. *Theology as Performance: Music, Aesthetics, and God in Western Thought*. New York: T & T Clark, 2006.
- Strange, James Riley. *The Emergence of the Christian Basilica in the Fourth Century*. International Studies in Formative Christianity and Judaism. Binghamton, NY: Global Publications, 2000.
- Strickland, Amy Jill. "In Essentials, Unity: Liturgical Law and the *General Instruction*." *Pastoral Music*. 27:5 (June-July 2003). 37-39.
- Stringer, Martin D. "Liturgy and Anthropology: The History of a Relationship." *Worship* 63 (1989): 503-21.
- . "Text, Context and Performance: Hermeneutics and the Study of Worship." *Scottish Journal of Theology* 53:3 (2000): 365-79.

Stroik, Christopher V. *Path, Portal, Path: Architecture for the Rites*. Meeting House Essays 10. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 1999.

Studer, Basil. "Liturgical Documents of the First Four Centuries." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:199-224. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.

———. "Liturgy and the Fathers." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:53-80. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.

Swain, Joseph. "An Apology for the Hymn." *America* 156:19 (23 May 1987): 421-23.

Tabor, Jerry, ed. *Otto Laske: Navigating New Musical Horizons*. Contributions to the Study of Music and Dance 53. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1999.

Taft, Robert F. *Beyond East and West: Problems in Liturgical Understanding*. 2<sup>nd</sup> rev. enlarged ed. Rome: Edizioni Orientalia Christiana, 1997.

———. *The Byzantine Rite: A Short History*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1992.

———. "Liturgy as Theology." *Worship* 56 (March 1982): 113-17.

———. *The Liturgy of the Hours in East and West*. 2<sup>nd</sup> rev. ed. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1986.

———. "What Does Liturgy Do? Toward a Soteriology of Liturgical Celebration: Some Theses." *Worship* 66:3 (1992): 194-211.

Taft, Robert F., and Gabrielle Winkler, eds. *Comparative Liturgy Fifty Years after Anton Baumstark (1872-1948)*. Orientalia Christiana Analecta 265. Rome: Pontifical Oriental Institute, 2001.

Talley, Thomas J. "Afterthoughts on *The Origins of the Liturgical Year*." In *Western Plainchant in the First Millennium: Studies in the Medieval Liturgy and Its Music*, 1-10. Edited by Sean Gallagher, et al. Burlington, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 2003..

———. "The Future of the Past." In *Worship: Reforming Tradition*, 143-55. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.

———. "History and Eschatology in the Primitive Pascha." In *Worship: Reforming Tradition*, 75-86. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990.

- . “Liturgical Time in the Ancient Church: The State of Research.” In *Liturgical Time*, 34-51. Edited by Wiebe Vos and Geoffrey Wainwright. Rotterdam: Liturgical Ecumenical Center Trust, 1982. *Studia Liturgica* 14:2-4 (1982).
- . “The Liturgical Year: Pattern and Proclamation.” In *Worship: Reforming Tradition*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1990. 125-42.
- . *The Origins of the Liturgical Year*. 2<sup>nd</sup> emended ed. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1991.
- Tanner, Norman P. *The Councils of the Church: A Short History*. New York: Crossroad, 2001.
- , ed. *Decrees of the Ecumenical Councils*. London: Sheed & Ward / Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press, 1990.
- Tarchnischvili, Michel, ed. *Le grand lectionnaire de l'Église de Jérusalem (Ve-VIIIe siècle)*. Louvain : Secrétariat du Corpus SCO, 1959-60.
- Taylor, Joan E. *Christians and the Holy Places: The Myth of Jewish-Christian Origins*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1993.
- Taylor, Richard. *How to Read a Church: A Guide to Symbols, Images, and Rituals in Churches and Cathedrals*. Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 2005.
- Terrien, Samuel. *The Psalms: Strophic Structure and Theological Commentary*. Grand Rapids, MI: William B. Eerdmans, 2003.
- Thompson, Bard. *Liturgies of the Western Church*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press, 1980.
- Tietze, Christoph. *Hymn Introits for the Liturgical Year: The Origin and Early Development of the Latin Texts*. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2005.
- Treitler, Leo. 2003. *With Voice and Pen: Coming to Know Medieval Song and How It Was Made*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Troelsgård, Christian. “Methodological Problems in Comparative Studies of Liturgical Chant.” In *Comparative Liturgy Fifty Years after Anton Baumstark (1872-1948)*. Edited by Robert F. Taft and Gabriele Winkler. Orientalia Christiana Analecta 265. Rome: Pontifical Oriental Institute, 2001.

- Truitt, Gordon E. "Musicam Sacram (1967)." In *The Song of the Assembly: Pastoral Music in Practice*, 21-24. Edited by Bari Colombari and Michael R. Prendergast. Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Portland, OR: Pastoral Press, 2007.
- Turner, Paul. *Confirmation: The Baby in Solomon's Court*. Rev. and updated ed. Chicago: Liturgy Training Publications, 2006.
- Turner, Victor. "Liminality and Communitas." In *Readings in Ritual Studies*, 511-19. Edited by Ronald Grimes. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1995.
- . *The Ritual Process: Structure and Anti-Structure*. London: Routledge, 1969.
- . "Ritual, Tribal and Catholic." *Worship* 50 (1976): 504-26.
- Vagaggini, Cypriano. "Fede a dimensione pastorale della teologia." *Seminarium* 22 (1970): 908-23.
- . "Riflessioni in prospettiva teologica sui dieci anni di riforma liturgica e sulla aporia del problema liturgico in questo momento." *Rivista Liturgica* 41 (1974): 35-72.
- . *Theological Dimensions of the Liturgy: A General Treatise on the Theology of the Liturgy*. Translated by Leonard J. Doyle and W. A. Jurgens. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1976.
- Valenziano, Crispino. "Liturgy and Anthropology: The Meaning of the Question and the Method For Answering It." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 2:189-226. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- . "'Mimesis Anamnesis' spazio-temporale per il triduo pasquale." In *La Celebrazione del Triduo Pasquale: Anamnesis e Mimesis*, 13-54. *Studia Anselmiana* 102. *Analecta Liturgica* 14. Edited by Ildebrando Scicolone. Rome: Pontificio Ateneo S. Anselmo, 1990.
- Vallée, Gérard. *The Shaping of Christianity: The History and Literature of the Formative Centuries (100-800)*. Mahwah, NJ: Paulist Press, 1999.
- Van der Werf, H. *The Emergence of Gregorian Chant: A Comparative Study of Ambrosian, Roman, and Gregorian Chant*. Rochester, 1983.
- Van Deusen, Nancy, ed. *The Place of the Psalms in the Intellectual Culture of the Middle Ages*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.

- Van de Wiel, Constant. *History of Canon Law*. Louvain Theological and Pastoral Monographs 5. Louvain: Peeters, 1991.
- Van Dijk, S. J. P. "The Old-Roman Rite." In *Studia Patristica*, 5:185-205. Edited by F. L. Cross. Berlin: Akademie-Verlag, 1962.
- , ed. *Sources of the Modern Roman Liturgy. The Ordinals by Haymo of Faversham and Related Documents (1243-1307)*. 2 vols. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1963.
- Van Dijk, S. J. P. "The Urban and Papal Rites in Seventh and Eighth-Century Rome." *Sacris erudiri: Jaarboek voor Godsdienstwetenschappen* 12 (1961): 411-87.
- Van Dijk, S. J. P., and J. Hazelden Walker. *The Ordinal of the Papal Court from Innocent III to Boniface VIII and Related Documents*. Spicilegium Friburgense 22. Fribourg: University Press, 1975.
- . *The Origins of the Modern Roman Liturgy: The Liturgy of the Papal Court and the Franciscan Order in the Thirteenth Century*. Westminster, MD: Newman Press; London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1960.
- Van Wye, Benjamin. "Ritual Use of the Organ in France." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 33:2 (Summer 1980): 287-325.
- Vellian, Jacob, ed. *The Romanization Tendency*. The Syrian Churches Series 8. Kottayam, India: K. P. Press, 1975.
- Verheul, Ambrosius. *Introduction to the Liturgy: Towards a Theology of Worship*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1968.
- Vermes, G. *The Dead Sea Scrolls in English*. Revised complete edition. London: Penguin Books, 2004.
- Vidal, Theodore M. *Liturgy Wars: Ritual Theory and Protestant Reform in Nineteenth-Century Zurich*. New York: Routledge, 2003.
- Viladesau, Richard R. "Melody and Meaning: Music in Worship." *Church* 6 (Spring 1990): 19-23.
- . *Theology and the Arts: Encountering God through Music, Art and Rhetoric*. New York: Paulist Press, 2000.
- Vincie, Catherine. *Celebrating the Divine Mystery: A Primer in Liturgical Theology*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2008.

- Vogel, Cyrille. *Medieval Liturgy: An Introduction to the Sources*. Translated and revised by William. G. Storey and Niels. K. Rasmussen, with the assistance of John K. Brooks-Leonard. NPM Studies in Church Music and Liturgy. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1986.
- Vogel, Cyrille, and R. Elze. *Le Pontifical romano-germanique du X<sup>e</sup> siècle*. Studi e Testi 226, 227, 269. Vatican City, 1963-1972.
- Vogel, Dwight W., ed. *Primary Sources of Liturgical Theology: A Reader*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 2000.
- Volp, Rainer. "Space as Text: The Problem of Hermeneutics in Church Architecture." *Studia Liturgica* 24 (1994): 168-77.
- Wagner, Peter J. *Einführung in die gregorianischen Melodien: ein Handbuch der Choralwissenschaft. I: Ursprung und Entwicklung der liturgischen Gesangsformen bis zum Ausgang des Mittelalters*. Leipzig, 1901.
- . "Introduction to the Gregorian Melodies." *Caecelia* 84 (1957), 85 (1958).
- Wainwright, Geoffrey. "The Church as Worshipping Community." *Pro Ecclesia* 3:1 (1993): 56-67.
- . *Doxology: The Praise of God in Worship, Doctrine and Life. A Systematic Theology*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1980.
- . "Der Gottesdienst als 'Locus Theologicus,' oder: Der Gottesdienst als Quelle und Thema der Theologie." *Kerygma und Dogma* 28 (1982): 248-58.
- . "Tradition as a Liturgical Act." In *The Quadrilog: Tradition and the Future of Ecumenism*, 129-46. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1994.
- Walsh, P. G., trans. *Pliny: Complete Letters*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2009.
- Ward, Anthony. "Euchology for the Mass 'In Cena Domini' of the 2000 *Missale Romanum*." *Notitiae* 45:11-12 (2008): 611-34.
- Ward, Daniel J. "Liturgy and Law." *Proceedings of the Canon Law Society of America* 44 (1982): 184-97.
- Warren, F. E. *The Liturgy and Ritual of the Ante-Nicene Church*. London: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge; New York: E & J. B. Young & Co., 1897.

- Watson, J. R. "The Language of Hymns: Some Contemporary Problems." In *Language and the Worship of the Church*, 174-95. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1990.
- Weakland, Rembert G. . "The Song of the Church." *Origins* 23 (May 20, 1993): 12-16.
- . *Themes of Renewal*. Beltsville, MD: Pastoral Press, 1995.
- Wegman, Herman. *Christian Worship in East and West: A Study Guide to Liturgical History*. Translated by Gordon W. Lathrop. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1990.
- . "Procedere und Prozession: eine Typologie." *Liturgisches Jahrbuch* 27 (1977): 28-39;
- Weller, Philip. "Frames and Images: Locating Music in Cultural Histories of the Middle Ages." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 50:1 (Spring 1997): 7-54.
- Werner, Eric. *The Sacred Bridge: The Interdependence of Liturgy and Music in Synagogue and Church during the First Millennium*. London: Dobson; New York: Columbia University Press, 1959.
- Westerfield Tucker, Karen B. "Music as a Language of Faith." *Ecclesia Orans* 23 (2006): 81-98.
- Westermeyer, Paul. *Te Deum: The Church and Music*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1998.
- Wheelock, Wade T. "The Problem of Ritual Language: From Information to Situation." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 50 (1982): 49-71.
- White, James F. *Christian Worship in North America. A Retrospective: 1955-1995*. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- . *Documents of Christian Worship: Descriptive and Interpretive Sources*. Louisville, KY: Westminster / John Knox Press, 1992.
- . *Roman Catholic Worship: Trent to Today*. New York: Paulist Press, 1995.
- White, L. Michael. *The Social Origins of Christian Architecture*. 2 vols. Harvard Theological Studies 42. Valley Forge, PA: Trinity Press International, 1990, 1997.
- Willis, G. G. *A History of Early Roman Liturgy to the Death of Pope Gregory the Great*. London: Henry Bradshaw Society, 1994.



- Williams, Peter. *A New History of the Organ: From the Greeks to the Present Day*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1980.
- Wilmart, A. "Le Comes de Murbach." *Revue bénédictine* 30 (1913): 25-69.
- . "Le lectionnaire d'Alcuin." *Ephemerides Liturgicae* 51 (1937): 136-97.
- Wilson-Dickson, Andrew. *The Story of Christian Music: From Gregorian Chant to Black Gospel*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1992.
- Winter, Miriam Therese. "Catholic Prophetic Sound after Vatican II." In *Sacred Sound and Social Change: Liturgical Music in Jewish and Christian Experience*, 150-73. Edited by Lawrence A. Hoffman and Janet Walton. Two Liturgical Traditions 3. Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 1992.
- . "Vatican II in the Development of Criteria for the Use of Music in the Liturgy of the Roman Catholic Church in the United States and Their Theological Bases." PhD diss., Princeton Theological Seminary, 1983.
- . *Why Sing?: Toward A Theology of Catholic Church Music*. Washington, DC: Pastoral Press, 1984.
- Witczak, Michael G. "The Introductory Rites: Threshold of the Sacred, Entry into Community, or Pastoral Problem?" *Liturgical Ministry* 3 (Winter, 1994): 22-27.
- . "The Sacramentary of Paul VI." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 3:133-76. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- Wren, Brian. *Praying Twice: The Music and Words of Congregational Song*. Louisville: Westminster / John Knox Press, 2000.
- Wright, Stephen K. "Scribal Errors and Textual Integrity: The Case of Innsbruck Universitätsbibliothek Cod. 960." *Studies in Bibliography* 39 (1986):79-92.
- Wyndham, Thomas, ed. *Composition, Performance, Reception: Studies in the Creative Process in Music*. Preface by Jonathan Harvey. Brookfield, VT: Ashgate, 1998.
- Wyndham, Thomas. *The Temple, the Church Fathers, and Early Western Chant*. Brookfield, VT: Ashgate, 1998.
- Zan, Renato De. "Criticism and Interpretation of Liturgical Texts." In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:331-66. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.

- . “Liturgical Textual Criticism.” In *Handbook for Liturgical Studies*, 1:367-80. Edited by Anscar J. Chupungco. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1997.
- Zetterholm, Magnus. *The Formation of Christianity in Antioch: A Social-Scientific Approach to the Separation between Judaism and Christianity*. New York: Routledge, 2003.
- Zimmerman, Joyce Anne. “Liturgical Assembly: Who is the Subject of the Liturgy?” In *Liturgy and Music: Lifetime Learning*, 38-59. Edited by Robin A. Leaver and Joyce Ann Zimmerman. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1998.
- . “Liturgical Notes.” *Liturgical Ministry* 3 (Winter 1994): 35-6.
- . *Liturgy and Hermeneutics*. American Essays in Liturgy. Collegeville, MN: Liturgical Press, 1999.
- . *Liturgy as Language of Faith: A Liturgical Methodology in the Mode of Paul Ricoeur’s Textual Hermeneutics*. Lanham, New York: University Press of America, 1988.
- Zöbeley, H. R. *Die Musik des Buxheimer Orgelbuchs: Spielvorgang, Niederschrift, Herkunft, Faktur*. Tutzing: Schneider, 1964.